



Date: October 2022



Kernel Modeling Language (KerML)

Version 1.0

Release 2022-09

Submitted in partial response to Systems Modeling Language (SysML®) v2 RFP (ad/2017-12-02) by:

88Solutions Corporation	Lockheed Martin Corporation
Dassault Systèmes	MITRE
GfSE e.V.	Model Driven Solutions, Inc.
IBM	PTC
INCOSE	Simula Research Laboratory AS
Intercax LLC	Thematix Partners

Copyright © 2019-2022, 88Solutions Corporation
Copyright © 2019-2022, Airbus
Copyright © 2019-2022, Aras Corporation
Copyright © 2019-2022, Association of Universities for Research in Astronomy (AURA)
Copyright © 2019-2022, BigLever Software
Copyright © 2019-2022, Boeing
Copyright © 2021-2022, Commissariat à l'énergie atomique et aux énergies alternatives (CEA)
Copyright © 2019-2022, Contact Software GmbH
Copyright © 2019-2022, Dassault Systèmes (No Magic)
Copyright © 2019-2022, DSC Corporation
Copyright © 2020-2022, DEKonsult
Copyright © 2020-2022, Delligatti Associates, LLC
Copyright © 2019-2022, The Charles Stark Draper Laboratory, Inc.
Copyright © 2020-2022, ESTACA
Copyright © 2022, Galois, Inc.
Copyright © 2019-2022, GfSE e.V.
Copyright © 2019-2022, George Mason University
Copyright © 2019-2022, IBM
Copyright © 2019-2022, Idaho National Laboratory
Copyright © 2019-2022, INCOSE
Copyright © 2019-2022, Intercax LLC
Copyright © 2019-2022, Jet Propulsion Laboratory (California Institute of Technology)
Copyright © 2019-2022, Kenntnis LLC
Copyright © 2020-2022, Kungliga Tekniska högskolan (KTH)
Copyright © 2019-2022, LightStreet Consulting LLC
Copyright © 2019-2022, Lockheed Martin Corporation
Copyright © 2019-2022, Maplesoft
Copyright © 2021-2022, MID GmbH
Copyright © 2020-2022, MITRE
Copyright © 2019-2022, Model Alchemy Consulting
Copyright © 2019-2022, Model Driven Solutions, Inc.
Copyright © 2019-2022, Model Foundry Pty. Ltd.
Copyright © 2019-2022, On-Line Application Research Corporation (OAC)
Copyright © 2019-2022, oose Innovative Informatik eG
Copyright © 2019-2022, Østfold University College
Copyright © 2019-2022, PTC
Copyright © 2020-2022, Qualtech Systems, Inc.
Copyright © 2019-2022, SAF Consulting
Copyright © 2019-2022, Simula Research Laboratory AS
Copyright © 2019-2022, System Strategy, Inc.
Copyright © 2019-2022, Thematix Partners, LLC
Copyright © 2019-2022, Tom Sawyer
Copyright © 2022, Tucson Embedded Systems, Inc.
Copyright © 2019-2022, Universidad de Cantabria
Copyright © 2019-2022, University of Alabama in Huntsville
Copyright © 2019-2022, University of Detroit Mercy
Copyright © 2019-2022, University of Kaiserslautern
Copyright © 2020-2022, Willert Software Tools GmbH (SodiusWillert)

Each of the entities listed above: (i) grants to the Object Management Group, Inc. (OMG) a nonexclusive, royalty-free, paid up, worldwide license to copy and distribute this document and to modify this document and distribute copies of the modified version, and (ii) grants to each member of the OMG a nonexclusive, royalty-free, paid up,

worldwide license to make up to fifty (50) copies of this document for internal review purposes only and not for distribution, and (iii) has agreed that no person shall be deemed to have infringed the copyright in the included material of any such copyright holder by reason of having used any OMG specification that may be based hereon or having conformed any computer software to such specification.

Table of Contents

0 Submission Introduction	1
0.1 Submission Overview	1
0.2 Submission Submitters	1
0.3 Submission - Issues to be discussed	1
0.4 Language Requirement Tables	2
1 Scope	3
2 Conformance	5
3 Normative References	7
4 Terms and Definitions	9
5 Symbols	11
6 Introduction	13
6.1 Language Architecture	13
6.2 Document Organization	13
6.3 Acknowledgements	14
7 Language Description	17
7.1 Language Description Overview	17
7.2 Root	17
7.2.1 Root Overview	17
7.2.2 Elements and Relationships	17
7.2.2.1 Elements and Relationships Overview	17
7.2.2.2 Elements	18
7.2.2.3 Relationships	19
7.2.3 Annotations	20
7.2.3.1 Annotations Overview	21
7.2.3.2 Comments and Documentation	21
7.2.3.3 Textual Representations	22
7.2.4 Namespaces	23
7.2.4.1 Namespaces Overview	23
7.2.4.2 Namespace Declaration	24
7.2.4.3 Root Namespaces	25
7.2.4.4 Imports	25
7.3 Core	28
7.3.1 Core Overview	28
7.3.2 Types	28
7.3.2.1 Types Overview	28
7.3.2.2 Type Declaration	29
7.3.2.3 Specialization	30
7.3.2.4 Conjugation	31
7.3.2.5 Disjoining	32
7.3.2.6 Feature Membership	32
7.3.2.7 Unioning, Intersecting, and Differencing	33
7.3.3 Classifiers	33
7.3.3.1 Classifiers Overview	33
7.3.3.2 Classifier Declaration	34
7.3.3.3 Subclassification	34
7.3.4 Features	34
7.3.4.1 Features Overview	35
7.3.4.2 Feature Declaration	35
7.3.4.3 Feature Typing	37
7.3.4.4 Subsetting	38
7.3.4.5 Redefinition	39

7.3.4.6 Feature Chaining	40
7.3.4.7 Feature Inverting	41
7.3.4.8 Type Featuring	42
7.4 Kernel	42
7.4.1 Kernel Overview	42
7.4.2 Data Types	43
7.4.3 Classes	44
7.4.4 Structures	44
7.4.5 Associations	45
7.4.6 Connectors	46
7.4.6.1 Connectors Overview	46
7.4.6.2 Connector Declaration	47
7.4.6.3 Binding Connector Declaration	50
7.4.6.4 Succession Declaration	51
7.4.7 Behaviors	51
7.4.7.1 Behaviors Overview	51
7.4.7.2 Behavior Declaration	52
7.4.7.3 Step Declaration	53
7.4.8 Functions	53
7.4.8.1 Functions Overview	53
7.4.8.2 Function Declaration	54
7.4.8.3 Expression Declaration	55
7.4.8.4 Predicate Declaration	56
7.4.8.5 Boolean Expression and Invariant Declaration	56
7.4.9 Expressions	57
7.4.9.1 Expressions Overview	57
7.4.9.2 Operator Expressions	58
7.4.9.3 Primary Expressions	60
7.4.9.4 Base Expressions	62
7.4.9.5 Literal Expressions	63
7.4.10 Interactions	63
7.4.10.1 Interactions Overview	63
7.4.10.2 Interaction Declaration	64
7.4.10.3 Item Flow Declaration	64
7.4.11 Feature Values	65
7.4.12 Multiplicities	67
7.4.13 Metadata	68
7.4.14 Packages	70
8 Metamodel	73
8.1 Metamodel Overview	73
8.2 Concrete Syntax	73
8.2.1 Concrete Syntax Overview	74
8.2.2 Lexical Structure	75
8.2.2.1 Line Terminators and White Space	75
8.2.2.2 Notes and Comments	76
8.2.2.3 Names	76
8.2.2.4 Numeric Values	77
8.2.2.5 String Value	78
8.2.2.6 Reserved Words	78
8.2.2.7 Symbols	78
8.2.3 Root Concrete Syntax	79
8.2.3.1 Elements and Relationships Concrete Syntax	79
8.2.3.1.1 Elements	79
8.2.3.1.2 Relationships	80

8.2.3.2 Annotations Concrete Syntax	80
8.2.3.2.1 Annotations	81
8.2.3.2.2 Comments and Documentation	81
8.2.3.2.3 Textual Representation	82
8.2.3.3 Namespaces Concrete Syntax	82
8.2.3.3.1 Namespaces	83
8.2.3.3.2 Imports	84
8.2.3.3.3 Namespace Elements	85
8.2.3.3.4 Qualified Names and Name Resolution	85
8.2.4 Core Concrete Syntax	87
8.2.4.1 Types Concrete Syntax	87
8.2.4.1.1 Types	88
8.2.4.1.2 Specialization	89
8.2.4.1.3 Conjugation	89
8.2.4.1.4 Disjoining	90
8.2.4.1.5 Unioning, Intersecting and Differencing	90
8.2.4.1.6 Feature Membership	90
8.2.4.2 Classifiers Concrete Syntax	90
8.2.4.2.1 Classifiers	91
8.2.4.2.2 Subclassification	91
8.2.4.3 Features Concrete Syntax	91
8.2.4.3.1 Features	92
8.2.4.3.2 Feature Typing	94
8.2.4.3.3 Subsetting	94
8.2.4.3.4 Redefinition	94
8.2.4.3.5 Feature Chaining	95
8.2.4.3.6 Feature Inverting	95
8.2.4.3.7 Type Featuring	95
8.2.5 Kernel Concrete Syntax	95
8.2.5.1 Data Types Concrete Syntax	95
8.2.5.2 Classes Concrete Syntax	96
8.2.5.3 Structures Concrete Syntax	96
8.2.5.4 Associations Concrete Syntax	96
8.2.5.5 Connectors Concrete Syntax	96
8.2.5.5.1 Connectors	96
8.2.5.5.2 Binding Connectors	97
8.2.5.5.3 Successions	97
8.2.5.6 Behaviors Concrete Syntax	97
8.2.5.6.1 Behaviors	97
8.2.5.6.2 Steps	97
8.2.5.7 Functions Concrete Syntax	97
8.2.5.7.1 Functions	98
8.2.5.7.2 Expressions	98
8.2.5.7.3 Predicates	98
8.2.5.7.4 Boolean Expressions and Invariants	98
8.2.5.8 Expressions Concrete Syntax	98
8.2.5.8.1 Operator Expressions	99
8.2.5.8.2 Primary Expressions	104
8.2.5.8.3 Base Expressions	107
8.2.5.8.4 Literal Expressions	109
8.2.5.9 Interactions Concrete Syntax	109
8.2.5.9.1 Interactions	109
8.2.5.9.2 Item Flows	110
8.2.5.10 Feature Values Concrete Syntax	111

8.2.5.11 Multiplicities Concrete Syntax	111
8.2.5.12 Metadata Concrete Syntax	112
8.2.5.13 Packages Concrete Syntax	113
8.3 Abstract Syntax	113
8.3.1 Abstract Syntax Overview	113
8.3.2 Root Abstract Syntax	115
8.3.2.1 Elements and Relationships Abstract Syntax	115
8.3.2.1.1 Overview	116
8.3.2.1.2 Element	116
8.3.2.1.3 Relationship	119
8.3.2.2 Annotations Abstract Syntax	121
8.3.2.2.1 Overview	121
8.3.2.2.2 AnnotatingElement	121
8.3.2.2.3 Annotation	122
8.3.2.2.4 Comment	123
8.3.2.2.5 Documentation	123
8.3.2.2.6 TextualRepresentation	124
8.3.2.3 Namespace Abstract Syntax	125
8.3.2.3.1 Overview	125
8.3.2.3.2 Import	125
8.3.2.3.3 Membership	127
8.3.2.3.4 Namespace	128
8.3.2.3.5 VisibilityKind	131
8.3.2.3.6 OwningMembership	131
8.3.3 Core Abstract Syntax	132
8.3.3.1 Types Abstract Syntax	132
8.3.3.1.1 Overview	133
8.3.3.1.2 Conjugation	136
8.3.3.1.3 Differencing	137
8.3.3.1.4 Disjoining	137
8.3.3.1.5 FeatureDirectionKind	138
8.3.3.1.6 FeatureMembership	138
8.3.3.1.7 Intersecting	139
8.3.3.1.8 Specialization	139
8.3.3.1.9 Multiplicity	140
8.3.3.1.10 Type	141
8.3.3.1.11 Unioning	146
8.3.3.2 Classifiers Abstract Syntax	147
8.3.3.2.1 Overview	147
8.3.3.2.2 Classifier	147
8.3.3.2.3 Subclassification	148
8.3.3.3 Features Abstract Syntax	148
8.3.3.3.1 Overview	149
8.3.3.3.2 EndFeatureMembership	151
8.3.3.3.3 Feature	152
8.3.3.3.4 FeatureChaining	157
8.3.3.3.5 FeatureInverting	157
8.3.3.3.6 FeatureTyping	158
8.3.3.3.7 Featuring	159
8.3.3.3.8 Redefinition	159
8.3.3.3.9 Subsetting	160
8.3.3.3.10 TypeFeaturing	161

8.3.4 Kernel Abstract Syntax	161
8.3.4.1 Data Types Abstract Syntax	161
8.3.4.1.1 Overview	161
8.3.4.1.2 DataType	162
8.3.4.2 Classes Abstract Syntax	162
8.3.4.2.1 Overview	162
8.3.4.2.2 Class	162
8.3.4.3 Structures Abstract Syntax	163
8.3.4.3.1 Overview	163
8.3.4.3.2 Structure	163
8.3.4.4 Associations Abstract Syntax	164
8.3.4.4.1 Overview	164
8.3.4.4.2 Association	164
8.3.4.4.3 AssociationStructure	166
8.3.4.5 Connectors Abstract Syntax	166
8.3.4.5.1 Overview	167
8.3.4.5.2 Binding Connector	168
8.3.4.5.3 Connector	169
8.3.4.5.4 ReferenceSubsetting	171
8.3.4.5.5 Succession	172
8.3.4.6 Behaviors Abstract Syntax	172
8.3.4.6.1 Overview	173
8.3.4.6.2 Behavior	173
8.3.4.6.3 Step	174
8.3.4.6.4 ParameterMembership	175
8.3.4.7 Functions Abstract Syntax	175
8.3.4.7.1 Overview	175
8.3.4.7.2 BooleanExpression	176
8.3.4.7.3 Expression	177
8.3.4.7.4 Function	178
8.3.4.7.5 Invariant	179
8.3.4.7.6 Predicate	179
8.3.4.7.7 ResultExpressionMembership	179
8.3.4.7.8 ReturnParameterMembership	180
8.3.4.8 Expressions Abstract Syntax	180
8.3.4.8.1 Overview	181
8.3.4.8.2 CollectExpression	181
8.3.4.8.3 FeatureChainExpression	182
8.3.4.8.4 FeatureReferenceExpression	182
8.3.4.8.5 InvocationExpression	184
8.3.4.8.6 LiteralBoolean	184
8.3.4.8.7 LiteralExpression	185
8.3.4.8.8 LiteralInteger	186
8.3.4.8.9 LiteralReal	186
8.3.4.8.10 LiteralString	186
8.3.4.8.11 LiteralInfinity	187
8.3.4.8.12 MetadataAccessExpression	187
8.3.4.8.13 NullExpression	188
8.3.4.8.14 OperatorExpression	189
8.3.4.8.15 SelectExpression	189
8.3.4.9 Interactions Abstract Syntax	190
8.3.4.9.1 Overview	190
8.3.4.9.2 ItemFlow	191
8.3.4.9.3 Interaction	192

8.3.4.9.4 SuccessionItemFlow.....	192
8.3.4.10 Feature Values Abstract Syntax	192
8.3.4.10.1 Overview	193
8.3.4.10.2 FeatureValue	193
8.3.4.11 Multiplicities Abstract Syntax	194
8.3.4.11.1 Overview	194
8.3.4.11.2 MultiplicityRange.....	194
8.3.4.12 Metadata Abstract Syntax	195
8.3.4.12.1 Overview	195
8.3.4.12.2 Metaclass	195
8.3.4.12.3 MetadataFeature	196
8.3.4.13 Packages Abstract Syntax	196
8.3.4.13.1 Overview	197
8.3.4.13.2 ElementFilterMembership.....	197
8.3.4.13.3 LibraryPackage.....	198
8.3.4.13.4 Package.....	198
8.4 Semantics	199
8.4.1 Semantics Overview.....	199
8.4.2 Core Semantics.....	201
8.4.2.1 Core Semantics Overview	201
8.4.2.2 Types Semantics.....	202
8.4.2.3 Classifiers Semantics.....	203
8.4.2.4 Features Semantics	203
8.4.3 Kernel Semantics	204
8.4.3.1 Kernel Semantics Overview	205
8.4.3.2 Data Types Semantics	205
8.4.3.3 Classes Semantics	205
8.4.3.4 Structures Semantics	205
8.4.3.5 Associations Semantics	205
8.4.3.6 Connectors Semantics	208
8.4.3.7 Behavior Semantics.....	210
8.4.3.8 Functions Semantics.....	211
8.4.3.9 Expressions Semantics	212
8.4.3.10 Interactions Semantics.....	215
8.4.3.11 Feature Values Semantics	216
8.4.3.12 Multiplicities Semantics.....	216
8.4.3.13 Metadata Semantics.....	217
8.4.3.14 Packages Semantics.....	218
9 Model Libraries.....	219
9.1 Model Libraries Overview	219
9.2 Semantic Library.....	219
9.2.1 Semantic Library Overview	219
9.2.2 Base	219
9.2.2.1 Base Overview	220
9.2.2.2 Elements	220
9.2.2.2.1 Anything.....	220
9.2.2.2.2 DataValue.....	220
9.2.2.2.3 dataValues	221
9.2.2.2.4 naturals	221
9.2.2.2.5 SelfSameLifeLink	222
9.2.2.2.6 things	222
9.2.3 Links.....	223
9.2.3.1 Links Overview	223

9.2.3.2 Elements	223
9.2.3.2.1 BinaryLink	223
9.2.3.2.2 binaryLinks	224
9.2.3.2.3 Link	224
9.2.3.2.4 links	225
9.2.3.2.5 SelfLink	225
9.2.3.2.6 selfLinks	226
9.2.4 Occurrences	226
9.2.4.1 Occurrences Overview	227
9.2.4.2 Elements	229
9.2.4.2.1 Causation	229
9.2.4.2.2 causations	230
9.2.4.2.3 HappensBefore	230
9.2.4.2.4 happensBeforeLinks	231
9.2.4.2.5 HappensDuring	231
9.2.4.2.6 HappensJustBefore	232
9.2.4.2.7 HappensLink	232
9.2.4.2.8 HappensWhile	233
9.2.4.2.9 IncomingTransferSort	233
9.2.4.2.10 InnerSpaceOf	234
9.2.4.2.11 InsideOf	234
9.2.4.2.12 JustOutsideOf	235
9.2.4.2.13 Life	235
9.2.4.2.14 MatesWith	236
9.2.4.2.15 MessageTransfer	236
9.2.4.2.16 Occurrence	236
9.2.4.2.17 occurrences	242
9.2.4.2.18 OutsideOf	242
9.2.4.2.19 PortionOf	243
9.2.4.2.20 SnapshotOf	243
9.2.4.2.21 SpaceShotOf	244
9.2.4.2.22 SpaceSliceOf	244
9.2.4.2.23 SurroundedBy	245
9.2.4.2.24 TimeSliceOf	245
9.2.4.2.25 Within	246
9.2.4.2.26 WithinBoth	247
9.2.4.2.27 Without	247
9.2.5 Objects	248
9.2.5.1 Objects Overview	248
9.2.5.2 Elements	249
9.2.5.2.1 BinaryLinkObject	249
9.2.5.2.2 binaryLinkObjects	249
9.2.5.2.3 Body	250
9.2.5.2.4 Curve	250
9.2.5.2.5 LinkObject	250
9.2.5.2.6 linkObjects	251
9.2.5.2.7 Object	251
9.2.5.2.8 objects	252
9.2.5.2.9 Point	253
9.2.5.2.10 StructuredSpaceObject	253
9.2.5.2.11 Surface	254
9.2.6 Performances	254
9.2.6.1 Performances Overview	255

9.2.6.2 Elements	255
9.2.6.2.1 BooleanEvaluation	255
9.2.6.2.2 booleanEvaluations	256
9.2.6.2.3 Evaluation.....	256
9.2.6.2.4 evaluations.....	257
9.2.6.2.5 falseEvaluations.....	257
9.2.6.2.6 Involves	257
9.2.6.2.7 LiteralEvaluation.....	258
9.2.6.2.8 literalEvaluations.....	258
9.2.6.2.9 NullEvaluation.....	259
9.2.6.2.10 nullEvaluations.....	259
9.2.6.2.11 Performance.....	259
9.2.6.2.12 performances	260
9.2.6.2.13 Performs	261
9.2.6.2.14 trueEvaluations.....	261
9.2.7 Transfers.....	261
9.2.7.1 Transfers Overview	262
9.2.7.2 Elements	262
9.2.7.2.1 AcceptPerformance	262
9.2.7.2.2 FlowTransfer	263
9.2.7.2.3 SendPerformance.....	263
9.2.7.2.4 Transfer	264
9.2.7.2.5 TransferBefore.....	265
9.2.7.2.6 transfers	265
9.2.7.2.7 transfersBefore	266
9.2.8 Feature Referencing Performances	266
9.2.8.1 Feature Referencing Performances Overview.....	266
9.2.8.2 Elements	266
9.2.8.2.1 BooleanEvaluationResultMonitorPerformance.....	266
9.2.8.2.2 BooleanEvaluationResultToMonitorPerformance	267
9.2.8.2.3 EvaluationResultMonitorPerformance	268
9.2.8.2.4 FeatureAccessPerformance	268
9.2.8.2.5 FeatureMonitorPerformance	269
9.2.8.2.6 FeatureReadEvaluation	270
9.2.8.2.7 FeatureReferencingPerformance	270
9.2.8.2.8 FeatureWritePerformance	271
9.2.9 Control Performances.....	271
9.2.9.1 Control Performances Overview	271
9.2.9.2 Elements	272
9.2.9.2.1 DecisionPerformance	272
9.2.9.2.2 IfElsePerformance	272
9.2.9.2.3 IfPerformance.....	273
9.2.9.2.4 IfThenElsePerformance.....	273
9.2.9.2.5 IfThenPerformance.....	274
9.2.9.2.6 LoopPerformance	274
9.2.9.2.7 MergePerformance	275
9.2.10 State Performances.....	275
9.2.10.1 State Performances Overview	275
9.2.10.2 Elements	276
9.2.10.2.1 StatePerformance.....	276
9.2.10.2.2 StateTransitionPerformance	277
9.2.11 Transition Performances	277
9.2.11.1 Transition Performances Overview.....	277

9.2.11.2 Elements	278
9.2.11.2.1 NonStateTransitionPerformance	278
9.2.11.2.2 TPCGuardConstraint	279
9.2.11.2.3 TransitionPerformance	279
9.2.12 Clocks	280
9.2.12.1 Clocks Overview	280
9.2.12.2 Elements	280
9.2.12.2.1 BasicClock	280
9.2.12.2.2 BasicDurationOf	280
9.2.12.2.3 BasicTimeOf	281
9.2.12.2.4 Clock	281
9.2.12.2.5 DurationOf	282
9.2.12.2.6 TimeOf	283
9.2.12.2.7 universalClock	283
9.2.13 Observation	284
9.2.13.1 Observation Overview	284
9.2.13.2 Elements	284
9.2.13.2.1 CancelObservation	284
9.2.13.2.2 changeCondition	284
9.2.13.2.3 ChangeMonitor	285
9.2.13.2.4 ChangeSignal	285
9.2.13.2.5 defaultMonitor	286
9.2.13.2.6 ObserveChange	286
9.2.13.2.7 StartObservation	287
9.2.14 Triggers	287
9.2.14.1 Triggers Overview	287
9.2.14.2 Elements	287
9.2.14.2.1 TimeSignal	287
9.2.14.2.2 TriggerAfter	288
9.2.14.2.3 TriggerAt	289
9.2.14.2.4 TriggerWhen	290
9.2.15 SpatialFrames	290
9.2.15.1 SpatialFrames Overview	290
9.2.15.2 Elements	290
9.2.15.2.1 CartesianCurrentDisplacementOf	290
9.2.15.2.2 CartesianCurrentPositionOf	291
9.2.15.2.3 CartesianDisplacementOf	291
9.2.15.2.4 CartesianPositionOf	292
9.2.15.2.5 CartesianSpatialFrame	293
9.2.15.2.6 CurrentDisplacementOf	293
9.2.15.2.7 CurrentPositionOf	294
9.2.15.2.8 defaultFrame	294
9.2.15.2.9 DisplacementOf	295
9.2.15.2.10 PositionOf	295
9.2.15.2.11 SpatialFrame	296
9.2.16 Metaobjects	297
9.2.16.1 Metaobjects Overview	297
9.2.16.2 Elements	297
9.2.16.2.1 Metaobject	297
9.2.16.2.2 metaobjects	297
9.2.16.2.3 SemanticMetadata	298
9.2.17 KerML	298
9.3 Data Type Library	299
9.3.1 Data Types Library Overview	299

9.3.2 Scalar Values.....	299
9.3.2.1 Scalar Values Overview	299
9.3.2.2 Elements	299
9.3.2.2.1 Boolean.....	299
9.3.2.2.2 Complex	300
9.3.2.2.3 Integer.....	300
9.3.2.2.4 Natural.....	300
9.3.2.2.5 Number.....	301
9.3.2.2.6 NumericalValue.....	301
9.3.2.2.7 Positive	302
9.3.2.2.8 Rational	302
9.3.2.2.9 Real.....	302
9.3.2.2.10 ScalarValue	303
9.3.2.2.11 String.....	303
9.3.3 Collections.....	304
9.3.3.1 Collections Overview	304
9.3.3.2 Elements	304
9.3.3.2.1 Array.....	304
9.3.3.2.2 Bag.....	305
9.3.3.2.3 Collection	305
9.3.3.2.4 KeyValuePair	305
9.3.3.2.5 List.....	306
9.3.3.2.6 Map.....	306
9.3.3.2.7 OrderedCollection	307
9.3.3.2.8 OrderedMap.....	307
9.3.3.2.9 OrderedSet.....	308
9.3.3.2.10 Set.....	308
9.3.3.2.11 UniqueCollection.....	308
9.3.4 Vector Values.....	309
9.3.4.1 Vector Values Overview	309
9.3.4.2 Elements	309
9.3.4.2.1 CartesianThreeVectorValue	309
9.3.4.2.2 CartesianVectorValue	309
9.3.4.2.3 NumericalVectorValue.....	310
9.3.4.2.4 ThreeVectorValue	310
9.3.4.2.5 VectorValue.....	311
9.4 Function Library	311
9.4.1 Function Library Overview	311
9.4.2 Base Functions	311
9.4.2.1 Base Functions Overview.....	311
9.4.2.2 Elements	311
9.4.3 Data Functions	312
9.4.3.1 Data Functions Overview.....	313
9.4.3.2 Elements	313
9.4.4 Scalar Functions	313
9.4.4.1 Scalar Functions Overview	313
9.4.4.2 Elements	314
9.4.5 Boolean Functions.....	314
9.4.5.1 Boolean Functions Overview	314
9.4.5.2 Elements	314
9.4.6 String Functions	315
9.4.6.1 String Functions Overview.....	315
9.4.6.2 Elements	315

9.4.7 Numerical Functions	315
9.4.7.1 Numerical Functions Overview	315
9.4.7.2 Elements	315
9.4.8 Complex Functions	316
9.4.8.1 Complex Functions Overview	316
9.4.8.2 Elements	316
9.4.9 Real Functions	317
9.4.9.1 Real Functions Overview	317
9.4.9.2 Elements	317
9.4.10 Rational Functions	318
9.4.10.1 Rational Functions Overview	318
9.4.10.2 Elements	319
9.4.11 Integer Functions	320
9.4.11.1 Integer Functions Overview	320
9.4.11.2 Elements	320
9.4.12 Natural Functions	321
9.4.12.1 Natural Functions Overview	321
9.4.12.2 Elements	321
9.4.13 Trig Functions	321
9.4.13.1 Trig Functions Overview	321
9.4.13.2 Elements	321
9.4.14 Sequence Functions	322
9.4.14.1 Sequence Functions Overview	322
9.4.14.2 Elements	322
9.4.15 Collection Functions	324
9.4.15.1 Collection Functions Overview	324
9.4.15.2 Elements	324
9.4.16 Vector Functions	325
9.4.16.1 Vector Functions Overview	325
9.4.16.2 Elements	325
9.4.17 Control Functions	329
9.4.17.1 Control Functions Overview	329
9.4.17.2 Elements	329
9.4.18 Occurrence Functions	332
9.4.18.1 Occurrence Functions Overview	332
9.4.18.2 Elements	332
10 Model Interchange	335
10.1 Model Interchange Overview	335
10.2 Model Interchange Formats	335
10.3 Model Interchange Projects	335
10.4 JSON Serialization	336
10.4.1 Serialization Overview	336
10.4.2 Primitive Type Serialization	336
10.4.3 Enumeration Serialization	336
10.4.4 Element Reference Serialization	337
10.4.5 Element Serialization	337
10.4.6 Model Serialization	337
A Annex: Conformance Test Suite	339

List of Tables

1. Grammar Production Definitions.....	74
2. EBNF Notation Conventions	74
3. Abstract Syntax Synthesis Notation.....	74
4. Escape Sequences	77
5. Operator Mapping.....	101
6. Operator Precedence (highest to lowest)	102
7. Primary Expression Operator Mapping	106
8. UML Primitive Type Serialization	336

List of Figures

1. KerML Syntax Layers	114
2. KerML Element Hierarchy	115
3. KerML Relationship Hierarchy	115
4. Elements	116
5. Annotation	121
6. Namespaces	125
7. Types	133
8. Specialization	134
9. Conjugation	134
10. Disjoining	135
11. Unioning	135
12. Intersecting	135
13. Differencing	136
14. Classifiers	147
15. Features	149
16. Subsetting	150
17. Feature Chaining	150
18. Feature Inverting	151
19. End Feature Membership	151
20. Data Types	161
21. Classes	162
22. Structures	163
23. Associations	164
24. Connectors	167
25. Successions	168
26. Reference Subsetting	168
27. Behaviors	173
28. Parameter Memberships	173
29. Functions	175
30. Predicates	176
31. Function Memberships	176
32. Expressions	181
33. Literal Expressions	181
34. Interactions	190
35. Item Flows	190
36. Feature Values	193
37. Multiplicities	194
38. Metadata Annotation	195
39. Packages	197
40. KerML Semantic Layers	200
41. Interchange Projects	336

0 Submission Introduction

0.1 Submission Overview

This document is the first of two documents submitted in response to the Systems Modeling Language (SysML®) v2 Request for Proposals (RFP) (ad/2017-11-04). This document defines a *Kernel Modeling Language (KerML)* that provides a syntactic and semantic foundation for creating application specific modeling languages. The second document specifies the *Systems Modeling Language (SysML)*, version 2.0, built on this foundation.

Even though both documents are being submitted together to fulfill the requirements of the RFP, the present document for KerML is proposed as a separate specification from SysML v2. KerML provides a common basis for creation of new modeling languages (or evolution of existing modeling languages). It moves beyond the syntactic interoperability offered by MOF to the possibility of diverse modeling languages that are tailored to specific applications while maintaining fundamental semantic interoperability.

0.2 Submission Submitters

The following OMG member organizations are jointly submitting this proposed specification:

- 88Solutions Corporation
- Dassault Systèmes
- GfSE e.V.
- IBM
- INCOSE
- Intercax LLC
- Lockheed Martin Corporation
- MITRE
- Model Driven Solutions, Inc.
- PTC
- Simula Research Laboratory AS
- Thematix Partners

The submitters also thankfully acknowledge the support of over 60 other organizations that participated in the SysML v2 Submission Team (SST).

0.3 Submission - Issues to be discussed

6.7.1 Proposals shall describe a proof of concept implementation that can successfully execute the test cases that are required in 6.5.4.

The SST is developing a pilot implementation of the full KerML abstract syntax and textual concrete syntax. This is publicly available under an open source license at <https://github.com/Systems-Modeling>.

Implementation Note. The pilot implementation is being incrementally developed along with each draft release of this document. Since the conformance test suite has not been developed yet, it is not possible to formally demonstrate the conformance of the implementation to the proposed specification. Nevertheless, the majority of this proposed specification describes the language as it has been implemented. For those specific areas in which the pilot implementation is known to not fully conform to the current draft specification, the deviations are identified in "implementation notes" in this document (such as this one).

6.7.2 Proposals shall provide a requirements traceability matrix that demonstrates how each requirement in the RFP is satisfied. It is recognized that the requirements will be evaluated in more detail as part of the submission process. Rationale should be included in the matrix to support any proposed changes to these requirements.

See subclause 0.4 in the proposed *Systems Modeling Language (SysML), Version 2.0* specification document submitted along with the present document.

6.7.3 Proposals shall include a description of how OMG technologies are leveraged and what proposed changes to these technologies are needed to support the specification.

As required in the SysML v2 RFP, the abstract syntax for KerML is defined as a model that is consistent with the OMG Meta Object Facility [MOF] as extended with MOF Support for Semantic Structures [SMOF] (see [Clause](#)). This also allows KerML models represented in the KerML abstract syntax to be interchanged using OMG XML Metadata Interchange [XMI].

The OMG MOF standard has been used to define many OMG-standardized modeling languages, and the KerML language definition is also built on it. However, MOF and XMI only standardize the means for specifying the abstract syntax of a modeling language and interchanging models so specified. Even SMOF provides only limited additional support for the syntactic structures required for so-called "semantic" languages.

The goal of KerML is to go beyond this and to become a new OMG standard providing application-independent syntax *and semantics* for creating more specific modeling languages (as described further in [Clause 1](#)). This will allow not only syntactic interchange between modeling tools, but also semantic interoperability. The KerML specification is being submitted as part of the SysML v2 submission, because the SST has built SysML v2 on KerML in exactly this way.

0.4 Language Requirement Tables

See subclause 0.4 of the proposed *Systems Modeling Language (SysML), Version 2.0* specification document submitted along with the present document.

1 Scope

The Kernel Modeling Language (KerML) is a application-independent modeling language with a well-grounded formal semantics for modeling existing or planned systems. The language includes general syntactic constructs for structuring models, such as relationships, annotations and namespaces; core semantics constructs that have semantics based on classification; and additional constructs for commonly needed modeling capabilities, such as associations and behaviors.

System models are expressed in KerML using a textual concrete syntax. This can be parsed to an abstract syntax representation, which is then given a semantic interpretation for the system being modeled. The semantics for the KerML core constructs is grounded in formal mathematical logic, providing a consistent basis for mathematical reasoning about KerML models. However, beyond this, the semantics of KerML constructs are specified by the relationship of user model elements to the KerML Semantic Library.

The Semantic Library models, also expressed in KerML, provide an ontological model of the meaning of KerML models. Indeed, all KerML models can be semantically expressed using solely core modeling constructs referencing the appropriate semantic concepts defined in the Semantic Library. KerML semantic constructs beyond the core are essentially just syntactic conveniences for reusing specific library concepts: structures for modeling *objects*, behaviors for modeling *performances*, associations for modeling *links*, etc.

Indeed, the full KerML language can be considered to be simply a syntactic extension of the core, which is semantically extended using library models. By intent, this approach that can also be used to build on KerML to create more specific modeling languages. Application specific modeling languages can be built on KerML by extending the KerML abstract syntax, specializing its semantics, with concrete syntaxes similar to or entirely different from KerML's.

To support this, the KerML Semantic Library also includes additional library models beyond those directly providing semantics for KerML syntactic constructs, capturing typical semantic patterns (such as asynchronous transfers and state-based behavior) that can be reused by languages built on KerML. Specialized modeling languages can provide additional syntax for these libraries, tailored to their applications, with semantics based largely or entirely on the KerML libraries.

In this way, KerML can provide the kernel for a family of syntactically diverse but semantically integrated modeling languages.

2 Conformance

This specification defines the Kernel Modeling Language (KerML), a language used to construct *models* of (real or virtual, planned or imagined) things. The specification includes this document and the content of the machine-readable files listed on the cover page. If there are any conflicts between this document and the machine-readable files, the machine-readable files take precedence.

A *KerML model* shall conform to this specification only if it can be represented according to the syntactic requirements specified in [Clause 8](#). The model may be represented in a form consistent with the requirements for the KerML concrete syntax, in which case it can be parsed (as specified in [Clause 8](#)) into an abstract syntax form, or may be represented only in an abstract syntax form (see also [8.2](#) and [8.3](#)).

A *KerML modeling tool* is a software application that creates, manages, analyzes, visualizes, executes or performs other services on KerML models. A tool can conform to this specification in one or more of the following ways.

1. *Abstract Syntax Conformance.* A tool demonstrating Abstract Syntax Conformance provides a user interface and/or API that enables instances of KerML abstract syntax metaclasses to be created, read, updated, and deleted. The tool must also provide a way to validate the well-formedness of models that corresponds to the constraints defined in the KerML metamodel. A well-formed model represented according to the abstract syntax is syntactically conformant to KerML as defined above. (See [Clause 8](#).)
2. *Concrete Syntax Conformance.* A tool demonstrating Concrete Syntax Conformance provides a user interface and/or API that enables instances of KerML concrete syntax notation to be created, read, updated, and deleted. Note that a conforming tool may also provide the ability to create, read, update and delete additional notational elements that are not defined in KerML. Concrete Syntax Conformance implies Abstract Syntax Conformance, in that creating models in the concrete syntax acts as a user interface for the abstract syntax. However, a tool demonstrating Concrete Syntax Conformance need not represent a model internally in exactly the form modeled for the abstract syntax in this specification. (See [Clause 8](#).)
3. *Semantic Conformance.* A tool demonstrating Semantic Conformance provides a demonstrable way to interpret a syntactically conformant model (as defined above) according to the KerML semantics, e.g., via model execution, simulation, or reasoning, when and only when such interpretations are possible. Semantic Conformance implies Abstract Syntax Conformance, in that the semantics for KerML are only defined on models represented in the abstract syntax. (See [Clause 8](#) and [Clause 9](#). See also [6.1](#) for further discussion of the interpretation of models and their syntactic and semantic conformance.)
4. *Model Interchange Conformance.* A tool demonstrating model interchange conformance can import and/or export syntactically conformant KerML models (as defined above) as specified in [Clause 10](#).

Every conformant KerML modeling tool shall demonstrate at least Abstract Syntax Conformance and Model Interchange Conformance. In addition, such a tool may demonstrate Concrete Syntax Conformance and/or Semantic Conformance, both of which are dependent on Abstract Syntax Conformance.

For a tool to demonstrate any of the above forms of conformance, the tool shall pass the relevant tests from the Conformance Test Suite specified in [Annex A](#).

3 Normative References

The following normative documents contain provisions which, through reference in this text, constitute provisions of this specification.

[Alf] *Action Language for Foundational UML (Alf)*, Version 1.1
<https://www.omg.org/spec/ALF/1.1>

[fUML] *Semantics of a Foundational Subset for Executable UML Models (fUML)*, Version 1.4
<https://www.omg.org/spec/fUML/1.4>

[MOF] *Meta Object Facility*, Version 2.5.1
<https://www.omg.org/spec/MOF/2.5.1>

[OCL] *Object Constraint Language*, Version 2.4
<https://www.omg.org/spec/OCL/2.4>

[SMOF] *MOF Support for Semantic Structures*, Version 1.0
<https://www.omg.org/spec/SMOF/1.0>

[SysAPI] *Systems Modeling Application Programming Interface (API) and Services*
(as submitted contemporaneously with this proposed KerML specification)

[UUID] *A Universally Unique Identifier (UUID) URN Namespace*
<https://tools.ietf.org/html/rfc4122>

[XMI] *XML Metadata Interchange*, Version 2.5.1
<https://www.omg.org/spec/XMI/2.5.1>

4 Terms and Definitions

There are no terms and definitions specific to this specification.

5 Symbols

There are no symbols defined in this specification.

6 Introduction

6.1 Language Architecture

Developing systems generally involves creating a number of different specifications. For instance, a requirements specification gives the intended effects of a system, while a design specification determines how the system will bring about those effects. Many designs might be developed and evaluated against the same requirements. A test specification then describes test procedures that check whether requirements are met by real or virtual systems built and operated according to some design.

A *model* is a representation in some *modeling language* of all or part of any of the above kinds of system specification. The *semantics* of such models defines what it means for real or virtual things in a modeled system to conform to the specification given by the model. KerML is a foundational modeling language for expressing various kinds of system models with a consistent semantics.

Syntactically, KerML is divided into three layers, with each layer building increasingly more specific constructs on the previous layer. These layers are, from general to specific:

1. The *Root Layer* includes the most general syntactic constructs for structuring models, such as elements, relationships, annotations, and packaging.
2. The *Core Layer* includes the most general constructs that have semantics based on *classification*.
3. The *Kernel Layer* provides commonly needed modeling capabilities, such as associations and behavior.

The Core Layer grounds KerML semantics by interpreting it using mathematical logic. However, additional semantics are then specified through the relationship of Kernel abstract syntax constructs to model elements in the *Kernel Semantic Library*, which is written in KerML itself. Models expressed in KerML thus essentially reuse elements of the Semantic Library to give them semantics. The Semantic Library models give the basic conditions for the conformance of modeled things to the model, which are then augmented in the user model as appropriate.

Having a consistent specification of semantics helps people interpret models in the same way. In particular, because the Semantic Library models are expressed in the same language as user models, engineers and tool builders can inspect the library models to formally understand what real or virtual effects are actually being specified by their models for systems being modeled. More uniform model interpretation improves communication between everyone involved in modeling, including modelers and tool builders.

6.2 Document Organization

The remainder of this document is organized into four major clauses.

- [Clause 7](#) describes KerML from a user point of view, covering all the modeling constructs in the language. It is an informative reference for the normative language specification given in the following three subclauses.
- [Clause 8](#) specifies the normative metamodel for the KerML language. This includes the complete grammar for the concrete syntax, which is a textual notation (see [8.2](#)), the abstract syntax, which is a MOF model (see [8.3](#)), and formal semantics (see [8.4](#)).
- [Clause 9](#) specifies the normative Kernel Model Libraries, each of which is a set of *library models* available to be used in all KerML user models. They include the Semantic Library, which is a set of KerML models used to provide Kernel-layer semantics to user models (see [9.2](#)), the Data Type Library of standard data types (see [9.3](#)) and the Function Library of functions on those data types (see [9.4](#)).
- [Clause 10](#) describes each of the format used to provide standard file-based interchange of KerML models between tools.

In addition, [Annex A](#) defines the suite of conformance tests that may be used to demonstrate the conformance of a modeling tool to this specification (see also [Clause 2](#)).

Release Note. A paragraph marked as a "release note" (like this one) is not to be considered part of the formal specification being proposed. Rather, it is a note describing either material that was not included at the time of this release of the proposed specification, or changes to the specification that are expected before the final submission of the proposal. Such notes will be removed in the final submission as the issues they address are resolved.

Implementation Note. A paragraph marked as an "implementation note" (like this one) is also not to be considered part of the formal specification being proposed. Rather, it describes an area in which the proof-of-concept pilot implementation being developed by the submission team is not fully consistent with what is being proposed in the specification as of the time of this submission. These notes will also be removed in the final submission.

6.3 Acknowledgements

This specification represents the work of many organizations and individuals. The Kernel Model Language concept, as developed for use with SysML v2, is based on earlier work of the KerML Working Group, which was led by:

- Conrad Bock, US National Institute of Standards and Technology (NIST)
- Charles Galey, Jet Propulsion Laboratory
- Bjorn Cole, Lockheed Martin Corporation

The primary authors of this specification document and the syntactic and library models described in it are:

- Ed Seidewitz, Model Driven Solutions
- Conrad Bock, US National Institute of Standards and Technology (NIST)
- Bjorn Cole, Lockheed Martin Corporation
- Hans Peter de Koning, DEKonsult

The specification was formally submitted for standardization by the following organizations:

- 88Solutions Corporation
- Dassault Systèmes
- GfSE e.V.
- IBM
- INCOSE
- Intercax LLC
- Lockheed Martin Corporation
- MITRE
- Model Driven Solutions, Inc.
- PTC
- Simula Research Laboratory AS
- Thematrix Partners LLC

However, work on the specification was also supported by over 120 people in over 60 other organizations that participated in the SysML v2 Submission Team (SST). The following individuals had leadership roles in the SST:

- Manas Bajaj, Intercax LLC (API and services development lead)
- Yves Bernard, Airbus (v1 to v2 transformation co-lead)
- Bjorn Cole, Lockheed Martin Corporation (metamodel development co-lead)
- Sanford Friedenthal, SAF Consulting (SST co-lead, requirements V&V lead)
- Charles Galey, Lockheed Martin Corporation (metamodel development co-lead)
- Karen Ryan, Siemens (metamodel development co-lead)
- Ed Seidewitz, Model Driven Solutions (SST co-lead, pilot implementation lead)

- Tim Weilkiens, oose (v1 to v2 transformation co-lead)

The specification was prepared using CATIA No Magic modeling tools and the OpenMBEE system for model publication (<http://www.openmbee.org>), with the invaluable support of the following individuals:

- Tyler Anderson, No Magic/Dassault Systèmes
- Christopher Delp, Jet Propulsion Laboratory
- Ivan Gomes, Twingineer
- Doris Lam, Jet Propulsion Laboratory
- Robert Karban, Jet Propulsion Laboratory
- Christopher Klotz, No Magic/Dassault Systèmes
- John Watson, Lightstreet Consulting

7 Language Description

(Informative)

7.1 Language Description Overview

This clause provides an informative description of KerML. [Clause 8](#) gives the full definition of the KerML metamodel, which is the normative specification for implementing the language. In contrast, the description in this clause focuses on how the various constructs of the language are used, along with the Kernel Model Library (see [Clause 9](#)), to construct models. While non-normative, it is intended to be precise and consistent with the normative specification of the language.

The following subclauses present the language features in each of the Root, Core and Kernel Layers of KerML (as described in 6.1). Each layer is then further subdivided, following a parallel structure to the packaging of the metamodel (see [8.1](#)). Each subclause within a layer includes references to the corresponding concrete syntax, abstract syntax and semantics subclauses from the normative metamodel specification. In this way, the clause can be used as a general reference for KerML as well as a guide for better understanding the formal specification of the metamodel.

This clause contains many examples of the KerML textual notation. In order to distinguish this text from normal body text, the following stylistic conventions are used in this clause.

1. Textual notation appears in "code" font. This includes references to individual element names from both example models (such as `Vehicle` and `wheels`) and the Kernel Model Library (such as `Performance` and `performances`), as well as more extensive model snippets.
2. Keywords appear in **boldface**, both when referenced in-line in body text ("Features are declared using the **feature** keyword.") and when used within complete notation examples.
3. Longer samples of textual notation are written in separate paragraphs, indented relative to body paragraphs.

7.2 Root

7.2.1 Root Overview

The Root layer provides the most general syntactic capabilities of the language: elements and relationships between them, annotations of elements, and membership of elements in namespaces. These capabilities are the syntactic foundation for structuring models in KerML, but they do not actually represent anything about a modeled system, and so have no semantic specification. The Core and Kernel layers build on the foundation provided by Root to provide constructs with modeling semantics (see [7.3](#) and [7.4](#)).

7.2.2 Elements and Relationships

7.2.2.1 Elements and Relationships Overview

Metamodel references:

- Concrete syntax, [8.2.3.1](#)
- Abstract syntax, [8.3.2.1](#)
- Semantics, none

Elements are the constituents of a model. Some elements represent *relationships* between other elements, known as the *related elements* of the relationship. In general terms, a model is constructed as a graph structure in which relationships form the edges connecting non-relationship elements constituting the nodes. However, since

relationships are themselves elements, it is also possible in KerML for a relationship to be a related element in a relationship and for there to be relationships between relationships.

One of the related elements of a relationship may be the *owning* related element of the Relationship. If the owning related element of a relationship is deleted from a model, then the relationship is also be deleted. Some of the related elements of a relationship (distinct from the owning related element, if any) may be *owned* related elements. If a relationship has owned related elements, then, if the relationship is deleted from a model, all its owned related elements are also deleted.

The *owned relationships* of an element are all those relationships for which the element is the owning related element. The *owned elements* of an element are all those elements that are owned related elements of the owned relationships of the element (notice the extra level of indirection through the owned relationships). The *owning relationship* of an element (if any) is the relationship for which the element is an owned related element (of which the element can have at most one). The *owner* of an element (if any) is the owning related element of the owning relationship of the element (again, notice the extra level of indirection through the owning relationship).

The deletion rules for relationships imply that, if an element is deleted from a model, then all its owned relationships are also deleted and, therefore, all its owned elements. This may result in a further cascade of deletions until all deletion rules are satisfied. An element that has no owner acts as the *root element* of an *ownership tree structure*, such that all elements and relationships in the structure are deleted if the root element is deleted. Deleting any element other than the root element results in the deletion of the entire subtree rooted in that element.

7.2.2.2 Elements

Every element has a unique identifier known as its *element ID*. The properties of an element can change over its lifetime, but its element ID does not change after the element is created. An element may also have additional identifiers, its *alias IDs*, which may be assigned for tool-specific purposes.

The KerML notation, however, does not have any provision for specifying element or alias IDs, since these are expected to be managed by the underlying modeling tooling. Instead, an element may also have a *name* and/or a *short name*, by which it can be referenced in the notation. While the language makes no formal distinction between names and short names, the intent is that the name of an element should be fully descriptive, particularly in the context of the definition of the element, while the short name, if given, should be an abbreviated name useful for referring to the element. (For further discussion of naming, see also [7.2.4](#)).

An element in its simplest form, not representing any more specialized modeling construct, is notated using the keyword **element**. The declaration of an Element may also specify a short name and/or name for it, in that order. The short name is distinguished by being surrounded by the delimiting characters < and >. (The notation does not have any provision for specifying the element ID, since this is expected to be managed by the underlying modeling tooling.)

```
element <e145> MyName;
```

Note that it is not required to specify either a short name or a name for an element. However, unless at least one of these is given, it is not possible to reference the element from elsewhere in the textual notation.

Release Note. The KerML notation may be extended in the final submission to allow element and alias IDs to be specified in the notation and used to reference unnamed elements, in order to allow the textual notation to be used as more precise means of model interchange.

Names and short names have the same lexical structure, which has two variants.

1. A *basic name* is one that can be lexically distinguished in itself from other parts of the notation. The initial character of a basic name must be a lowercase letter, an uppercase letter or an underscore. The remaining

characters of a basic name can be any character allowed as an initial character or any digit. However, a reserved keyword may not be used as a name, even though it has the form of a basic name (see [8.2.2.6](#) for the list of reserved words).

```
Vehicle
power_line
```

2. An *unrestricted name* provides a way to represent a name that contains any character. It is represented as a non-empty sequence of characters surrounded by single quotes. The name consists of the characters *within* the single quotes – the single quotes are *not* included as part of the represented name. The characters within the single quotes may not include non-printable characters (including backspace, tab and newline). However, these characters may be included as part of the name itself through use of an escape sequence. In addition, the single quote character or the backslash character may only be included within the name by using an escape sequence.

```
'+'
'circuits in line'
'On/Off Switch'
```

An *escape sequence* is a sequence of two text characters starting with a backslash as an escape character, which actually denotes only a single character (except for the newline escape sequence, which represents however many characters is necessary to represent an end of line in a specific implementation). [Table 4](#) in subclause [8.2.2.3](#) shows the meaning of the allowed escape sequences.

In addition to the declaration notated as above, the representation for an Element may include a *body*, which is a list of *owned* elements delimited by curly braces { ... }. It is a general principle of the KerML textual concrete syntax that the representation of owned elements are nested inside the body of the representation of the owning element. In this way, when the notation for the owning Element is removed in its entirety from the representation of a model, the owned elements are also removed.

It is possible to specify the following owned Elements as part of the body of an Element:

- Owned (generic) relationships (see [7.2.2.3](#)), using the keyword **relationship**. The containing element becomes the owning related element and the sole source for the relationship, with one or more other elements identified as target elements.
- Owned comments (see [7.2.3.2](#)), using the keyword **comment** or the keyword **doc**. The containing element becomes the owning related element for an annotation relationship to the comment or documentation.
- Owned textual representations (see [7.2.3.3](#)), using the keyword **rep** or **language**. The containing element becomes the owning related element for an annotation relationship to the textual representation.
- Owned metadata features (see [7.4.13](#)), using the keyword **metadata** or the symbol @. The containing element becomes the owning related element for the annotation relationship to metadata feature. (Note that metadata annotations are a Kernel layer capability.)

```
element A {
  comment /* Element A is related to element B. */
  relationship to B;
}
element B {
  language "HTML"
  /* <a href="https://plm.elsewhere.com/part?id="1234"/> */
}
```

7.2.2.3 Relationships

The related elements of a relationship are divided into *source* and *target* elements. A relationship is said to be *directed* from its source elements to its target elements. It is allowed for a relationship to have only source or only

target elements. However, by convention, an *undirected* relationship is usually represented as having only target elements.

A relationship must have at least two related elements. A relationship with exactly two related elements is known as a *binary relationship*. A *directed binary relationship* is a binary relationship in which one related element is the source and one is the target. Most specialized kinds of relationship in KerML are directed binary relationships (the principal exceptions being associations and connectors, see [7.4.5](#) and [7.4.6](#)).

A relationship can be declared using the keyword **relationship**. As for a generic Element (see [7.2.2.2](#)), a short name and/or a name may be specified for the relationship. The (unowned) source elements of the relationship are then listed after the keyword **from**, while the target elements are listed after the keyword **to**. It is allowable for a relationship to have only source elements or only target elements, but there must be at least two elements specified across the source and target lists (though some of the target elements may be owned related elements, see below).

```
element <'1'> A;
element <'2'> B;
element <'3'> C;
relationship <'4'> R from '1' to B, C;
```

The top-level Elements of a model are implicitly declared within a *root namespace* (see [7.2.4](#)). If the model is further organized into a complete namespace structure, then elements may be identified using qualified names according to that structure (see [8.2.3.3.4](#) for the rules on the resolution of qualified names).

```
namespace N1 {
  element S;
}
namespace N2 {
  element T;
}
relationship from N1::S to N2::T;
```

A relationship may have a body that specifies the owned related elements of the relationship, which may include any kind of element other than an annotating element (see [7.2.3](#)). If an annotating element (i.e., a comment, textual representation or metadata feature) is included in the body of a relationship, then, rather than being directly an owned related element of the containing relationship, the annotating element is an owned related element of an annotation relationship owned by the containing relationship.

To specify that a relationship has an owning related element, use the nested owned relationship notation (see [7.2.2.2](#)).

```
element A;
element B {
  relationship x {
    element y; // Owned related element
    relationship from A to B; // Relationship as owned related element
  }
}
relationship R from A to B {
  /* This comment is owned via an annotation relationship,
   * so the containing relationship has no owned related elements.
   */
}
```

7.2.3 Annotations

7.2.3.1 Annotations Overview

Metamodel references:

- *Concrete syntax*, [8.2.3.2](#)
- *Abstract syntax*, [8.3.2.2](#)
- *Semantics*, *none*

An *annotation* is a relationship between an *annotated element* and an *annotating element* that provides additional information about the element being annotated. Any kind of element may be annotated, but only certain kinds of elements may be annotating elements. Specific kinds of annotating elements include comments and textual representations (see [7.2.3.2](#) and [7.2.3.3](#)). A further kind of annotating element for user-defined metadata is defined in the Kernel layer (see [7.4.13](#)).

Each annotation relationship is between a single annotating element and a single annotated element, but an annotating element may have multiple annotation relationships with different annotated elements, and any element may have multiple annotations. The annotated element of an annotation can optionally be the owning related element of the annotation, in which case the annotation is an owned annotation of the owning annotated element. If an annotating element is an owned member of a namespace (see [7.2.4](#)) and is not involved in any annotation relationships, then its owning namespace is considered to be its annotated element without the need for an explicit annotation relationship.

7.2.3.2 Comments and Documentation

A *comment* is an annotating element with a textual `body` that in some way describes its annotated element. *Documentation* is a kind of comment that has the special status of documenting the annotated element, known in this case as the *documented element*. A documentation comment is always an owned element of its documented element.

The full declaration of a comment begins with the keyword **comment**, optionally followed by a short name and/or name (see [7.2.2.2](#)). One or more annotated elements are then identified for the comment after the keyword **about**, indicating that the comment has annotation relationships to each of the identified elements. The `body` of the comment is written lexically as regular comment text between `/*` and `*/` delimiters (see also [8.2.2.2](#)).

```
element A;
element B;
comment Comment1 about A, B
    /* This is the comment body text. */
```

If the comment is an owned member of a namespace (see [7.2.4](#)), then the explicit identification of annotated elements can be omitted, in which case the annotated element is implicitly the containing namespace. Further, in this case, if no short name or name is given for the comment, then the **comment** keyword can also be omitted.

```
namespace N {
    comment C /* This is a comment about N. */

    /* This is also a comment about N. */
}
```

A documentation comment is notated similarly to a regular comment, but using the keyword **doc** rather than **comment**. The documenting element of a documentation comment is always the owning element of the documentation.

```
element X {
    doc X_Comment
        /* This is a documentation comment about X. */
}
```

```

    doc /* This is more documentation about X. */
}
namespace P {
    doc P_Comment /* This is a documentation comment about P. */
}

```

The actual `body` text of a comment does not include the initial `/*` and final `*/` characters. Further, the written text is processed to allow formatting using `*` characters to delimit consistent initial indentation of a comment lines. For example, the comment notation in:

```

namespace CommentExample {
    /*
    * This is an example of multiline
    * comment text with typical formatting
    *   for readable display in a text editor.
    */
}

```

would result in the following `body` text in the comment element in the represented model:

```

This is an example of multiline
comment text with typical formatting
    for readable display in a text editor.

```

The `body` text of a comment can include markup information (such as HTML), and a tool may (but is not required to) display such text as rendered according to the markup. (See [8.2.3.2.2](#) for the complete rules for processing comment text.)

7.2.3.3 Textual Representations

A textual representation is an annotating element whose `textual body` represents its annotated element (known in this case as the *represented element*) in a given language. A textual representation is notated similarly to a documentation comment (see [7.2.3.2](#)), but with the keyword **rep** used instead of **comment**. As for documentation, a textual representation is always owned by its represented element. In particular, if the textual representation is an owned member of a namespace (see [7.2.4](#)), the represented element is the containing Namespace. A textual representation declaration must also specify the language used for the textual body as a literal string (see [8.2.2.5](#)) following the keyword **language**. If the textual representation has no short name or name, then the **rep** keyword can also be omitted.

```

class C {
    feature x: Real;
    inv x_constraint {
        rep inOCL language "ocl"
        /* self.x > 0.0 */
    }
}
behavior setX(c : C, newX : Real) {
    language "alf"
    /* c.x = newX;
    * WriteLine("Set new x");
    */
}

```

The lexical comment text given for a textual representation is processed as for regular comment text (see [7.2.3.2](#)), and it is the result after such processing that is the textual representation `body` expected to conform to the named language.

Note. Since the lexical form of a comment is used to specify the textual representation `body`, it is not possible to include comments of a similar form in the `body` text.

Release Note. The final submission may include a means to allow nested comments.

The language name in a textual representation is case insensitive. The name can be of a natural language, but will often be for a machine-parsable language. In particular, there are recognized standard language names.

If the language is `"kerm1"`, then the body of the textual representation must be a legal representation of the represented element in the KerML textual notation. A tool can use such a textual representation to record the original KerML notation text from which an element is parsed. Other standard language names that can be used in a textual representation include `"ocl"` and `"alf"`, in which case the body of the textual representation must be written in the Object Constraint Language [OCL] or the Action Language for fUML [Alf], respectively.

However, for any other language than `"kerm1"`, the KerML does not define how the `body` text is to be semantically interpreted as part of the model being represented. In particular, a generic element (e.g., as in [7.2.2.2](#)) with a textual representation in a language other than KerML is essentially a semantically "opaque" Element specified in the other language. Nevertheless, a conforming KerML tool may (but is not required to) interpret such an element consistently with the specification of the named language.

7.2.4 Namespaces

7.2.4.1 Namespaces Overview

Metamodel references:

- *Concrete syntax*, [8.2.3.3](#)
- *Abstract syntax*, [8.3.2.3](#)
- *Semantics*, *none*

A *namespace* is an element that contains other elements via *membership* relationships with those elements. The namespace is the source element and owner of the membership. The target of a membership can be any kind of element, known as the *member element* of the membership. If the membership is an *owning* membership, then the member element is known as an *owned* member element, which is the only owned related element of the membership.

A namespace may also *import* memberships from other namespaces. Further, a type, which is kind of namespace, may *inherit* memberships from other types that it specializes (see [7.3.2](#)).

The *members* of a namespace are the member elements of all the memberships of the namespace (whether owned, imported or inherited). The *owned members* of a namespace are the owned member elements of all the owned memberships of the namespace that are owning memberships.

If an element is a member of a namespace, then any name for that element relative to the namespace is known as an *unqualified name* for that element in the namespace. If the containing namespace is not a root namespace (see [7.2.4.3](#)), then the *qualified name* for the member element consists of a name for the containing namespace, known as the *qualifier*, followed by an unqualified name for the element. Since a namespace is an element that may itself be a member of another namespace, a qualifier may be a qualified name. Therefore, a qualified name of an element, in general, has the form of a list of unqualified names of namespaces, each relative to the previous one, followed by the unqualified name of the element in the final namespace.

A qualified name is notated as a sequence of *segment names* separated by `":"` punctuation. An *unqualified* name can be considered the degenerate case of a qualified name with a single segment name. A qualified name is used in the KerML textual concrete syntax to identify an element that is being referred to in the representation of another

element. A qualified name used in this way does not appear in the corresponding abstract syntax—instead, the abstract syntax representation contains an actual reference to the identified element. *Name resolution* is the process of determining the element that is identified by a qualified name (see [8.2.3.3.4](#)).

Since namespaces and their members may have aliases (see [7.2.4.2](#)), it is possible for there to be multiple qualified names for an element even if it does not itself have aliases. On the other hand, if a namespace does not have any name, then its members will have no qualified names, even if they are themselves named.

7.2.4.2 Namespace Declaration

A namespace that is not a root namespace (see [7.2.4.3](#)), and does not represent any more specialized modeling construct (such as a type—see [7.3.2](#)) is declared using the keyword **namespace**, optionally followed by a short name and/or name (see [7.2.2.2](#)). The *body* of the namespace is notated as a list of representations of the content of the namespace delimited between curly braces {...}. If the namespace is empty, then the body may be omitted and the declaration ended instead with a semicolon.

```
namespace <'1.1'> N1; // This is an empty namespace.
namespace <'1.2'> N2 {
    doc /* This is an example of a namespace body. */
    class C;
    datatype D;
    feature f : C;
    namespace N3; // This is a nested namespace.
}
```

Declaring an element within the body of a namespace denotes that the element is an owned member of the namespace—that is, that there is an owning membership relationship between the namespace and the member element.

The *visibility* of the membership can be specified by placing one of the keywords **public**, **protected** or **private** before the public element declaration. If the membership is **public** (the default), then it is visible outside of the namespace. If it is **private**, then it is not visible. For namespaces other than types, **protected** visibility is equivalent to **private**. For types, **protected** visibility has a special meaning relating to member inheritance (see [7.3.2](#)).

```
namespace N {
    public class C;
    private datatype D;
    feature f : C; // public by default
}
```

An *alias* for an element is a non-owning membership of the element in a namespace, which may or may not be the same namespace that owns the element. An alias name or short name is determined only relative to its membership in the namespace, and can therefore be different than the name or short name defined on the element itself. Note that the same element may be related to a namespace by multiple alias memberships, allowing the element to have multiple, different names relative to that namespace.

An alias is declared using the keyword **alias** followed by the alias short name and/or name, with a qualified name identifying the element given after the keyword **for**. The alias declaration may optionally include a body with the same syntax as for a generic **relationship** declaration (see [7.2.2.3](#)). The visibility of the alias membership can be specified as for an owned member.

```
namespace N1 {
    class A;
    class B;
    alias <C> CCC for B {
```

```

        doc /* Documentation of the alias. */
    }
    private alias D for B;
}

```

A comment (see [7.2.3.2](#)), including documentation, declared within a namespace body also becomes an owned member of the namespace. If no annotated elements are specified for the comment (with an **about** clause), then, by default, the comment is considered to be about the containing namespace.

```

namespace N9 {
    class A;
    comment Comment1 about A
        /* This is a comment about class A. */

    comment Comment 2
        /* This is a comment about namespace N9. */

    /* This is also a comment about namespace N9. */

    doc N9_Doc
        /* This is documentation about namespace N9. */
}

```

With the ability to specify names, short names and aliases for elements, any element can potentially have several names relative to a namespace. However, the set of names provided for any one member of a namespace must be disjoint from the set of names provided for any other member of the namespace. That is, a namespace effectively provides a "space" of names, each one of which uniquely identifies a single member element of the namespace (though there may be multiple names that identify the same element).

7.2.4.3 Root Namespaces

A *root namespace* is a namespace that has no owner. The owned members of a root namespace are known as *top-level elements*. Any element that is not a root namespace has an owner and, therefore, must be in the ownership tree of a top-level element of some root namespace.

The declaration of a root namespace is implicit and no identification of it is provided in the KerML textual notation. Instead, the body of a root namespace is given simply by the list of representations of its top-level elements.

```

doc /* This is a model notated in KerML concrete syntax. */
element A {
    relationship B to C;
}
class C;
datatype D;
feature f: C;
package P;

```

Since the notation does not provide a means for naming a root namespace, the name of a top-level element is *not* qualified by the name of its containing root namespace. The name resolution rules consider all top-level elements to be directly and globally visible without qualification (see [8.2.3.3.4](#)). Therefore, the *fully qualified* name of an element relative to a root namespace always begins with the name of a top-level element in the root namespace, without regard to the name (if any) of the root namespace.

7.2.4.4 Imports

A namespace may *import* the visible memberships from other namespaces. The namespace that is the source of an import relationship also owns it. The namespace that is the target of an import relationship is known as

the *imported* namespace. Visible memberships of an imported namespace become *imported* memberships of the owning namespace of the import relationship.

The complete set of memberships of a namespace include all its owned memberships and all its imported memberships, and the member elements of imported memberships are included in the set of members of the namespace. Various kinds of namespaces may also define additional memberships to be included in the set of memberships of that kind of namespace (for instance, the memberships of a type also include its *inherited* members – see [7.3.2](#)) and which of those are visible (e.g., public inherited memberships).

An import is denoted using the keyword **import** followed by a qualified name. This specifies an import whose imported namespace is identified by the qualification part of the qualified name and whose *imported member name* is given by the the unqualified name. If the name given for the **import** is unqualified, then there is no imported namespace, and the given name shall be resolved in the scope of the namespace owning the import (see [8.2.3.3.4](#)).

Such an import results in the membership of the imported namespace whose member name or short name is the given imported member name becoming an imported membership of the importing namespace. That is, the member element of this membership becomes an imported member of the imported namespace. Note that the imported member name may be an alias of the imported element in the imported namespace, in which case the element is still imported with that (alias) name.

```
namespace N2 {
  import N1::A;
  import N1::C; // Imported with name "C".
  namespace M {
    import C; // "C" is re-imported from N2 into M.
  }
}
```

If the qualified name in an import is followed by "**::***", then the entire qualified name identifies the imported namespace. In this case, all visible memberships of the imported namespace become imported memberships of the importing namespace.

```
namespace N3 {
  // Memberships A, B and C are all imported from N1.
  import N1::*;
}
```

If the qualified name in an **import**, with or without a "**::***", is further followed by "**::****", then the import is *recursive*. Such an import is equivalent to importing all memberships as described above, followed by further recursively importing from each imported member that is itself a namespace.

```
namespace N4 {
  class A;
  class B;
  namespace M {
    class C;
  }
}
namespace N5 {
  import N4::*;
  // The above recursive import is equivalent to all
  // of the following taken together:
  //   import N4;
  //   import N4::*;
  //   import N4::M::*;
}
```

```

namespace N6 {
  import N4::*::*;
  // The above recursive import is equivalent to all
  // of the following taken together:
  //   import N4::*;
  //   import N4::M::*;
  // (Note that N4 itself is not imported.)
}

```

The *visibility* of an import can be specified by placing the keyword **public** or **private** before the import declaration. If the import is **public** (the default), then all the imported memberships become public for the importing namespace. If import is **private**, then the imported memberships become private relative to the importing namespace. An import declaration may optionally have a body, with the same syntax as for a generic **relationship** declaration (see [7.2.2.3](#)).

```

namespace N7 {
  public import N1::A {
    /* The imported membership is visible outside N7. */
  }

  private import N4::* {
    doc /* None of the imported memberships are visible
       * outside of N7. */
  }
}

```

An import may also be declared with one or more *filter conditions*. Given as model-level evaluable Boolean expressions (see [7.4.9](#)), listed after the imported namespace specification, each surrounded by square brackets [...]. Such a filtered import is equivalent to importing an implicit package that then both imports the given imported namespace and has all the given filter conditions. The effect is such that, for a filtered import, memberships are imported if and only if they satisfy all the given filter conditions. (While filtered imports may be used in any namespace, packages and filter conditions are actually Kernel-layer concepts, because expressions are only defined in that layer. See [7.4.14](#).)

```

namespace N8 {
  import Annotations::*;

  // Only import elements of NA that are annotated as Approved.
  import NA::*[@Approved];
}

```

If the member name or member short name of any imported membership conflicts with the name of any owned member, or with the name of any visible membership from any other imported namespace, then the conflicting membership is *hidden* and is not included in the set of imported memberships of the importing namespace. As a result of this rule and the distinguishability rule for owned members, the names of all owned and imported members will always be distinct from each other. Any specialized kind of namespace that adds further kinds of memberships (e.g., inherited memberships of types) always maintains the property that the names of all memberships of a namespace are distinct from each other.

Implementation Note. The pilot implementation does not current check to see if one imported membership is hidden by another imported membership. Instead, if there are two imported memberships with the same name, and they are not hidden by an owned membership (or inherited membership for a type), name resolution will find first of the imported memberships with that name.

Release Note. The current rules for membership distinguishability in a namespace require that all names be distinct from each other. This may be loosened in the final submission to allow overloading of behavioral elements with the same name when these can be distinguished by having different parameter signatures.

7.3 Core

7.3.1 Core Overview

The Core layer builds on the Root layer to add the minimum constructs for modeling systems as designed, built and operated. *Semantics* is about how models are interpreted as giving conditions on how things should be (i.e., as a *specification* of a modeled system) or as a reflection of how things are (i.e., as a *description* of a modeled system). KerML semantics are based on *classification*: a model has elements that classify things in the modeled system.

A *type* is the most general kind of model element that classifies things (see [8.2.4.1.1](#)). *Classifiers* are types that classify things, such as cars, people and processes being carried out, as well as how they are related by features (see [7.3.3](#)). *Features* are also types, classifying relations between things (see [8.2.4.3.1](#)). In addition to simple relations between two things, KerML allows features to classify longer *chains* of relations. For example, cars owned by people who live in a particular city might be required to be registered. These cars are identified by a chain of two relations, first the ownership of the car, then the residence of the owner.

KerML also supports taxonomies of classifications using *specialization* relationships between types. All the things classified by a specialized type are also classified by the general types it is related to via specialization relationships. This means that all the things classified by a specialized type have all the features of its general types, referred to as *inheriting* features from general to specific types. KerML includes several special kinds of specialization, including *subclassification* between classifiers, *subsetting* and *redefinition* between features, and *feature typing* between a feature and another type.

7.3.2 Types

7.3.2.1 Types Overview

Metamodel references:

- *Concrete syntax*, [8.2.4.1](#)
- *Abstract syntax*, [8.3.3.1](#)
- *Semantics*, [8.4.2.2](#)

Types classify things in a modeled system. The set of things classified by a type is the *extent* of the type, each member of which is an *instance* of the type. Everything being modeled is an instance of the type `Anything` from the `Base` library model (see [9.2.2](#)).

Types give conditions for what things must be in their extent and what must not be (*sufficient* and *necessary* conditions, respectively). The simplest conditions directly identify instances that must be in or not in the extent. Other conditions can give characteristics of instances indicating they must be in or not in the extent. These conditions apply to all procedures that determine the extents of types, including logical solving, inference, and execution.

For example, a type `Car` could require every instance in its extent (everything it classifies) to have four wheels, which means anything that does not have four wheels is not in its extent (necessary condition). It does not mean all four wheeled things are in the extent (are cars), however. (Note that necessary conditions are usually stated as what must be true of all instances in the extent, even though they really only determine what is not.) Alternatively, `Car` could require all four wheeled things to be in its extent (sufficient condition).

Types are namespaces, enabling them to have members via membership relationships to other elements identified as their members (see [7.2.4](#)). These include *inherited* memberships, which are certain memberships from the general types of their *owned specializations* (see [7.3.2.3](#)). The member names of all inherited memberships must be distinct from each other and from the member names of all owned memberships. A membership that would otherwise be imported is also hidden by an inherited memberships with the same member name, similarly to how it would be hidden by a conflicting owned membership (see [7.2.4](#)).

Note. Name conflicts due to inherited memberships can be resolved by redefining them to give non-conflicting member names (see [7.3.4](#)).

7.3.2.2 Type Declaration

A type is declared using the keyword **type**, optionally followed by a short name and/or name. In addition, a type declaration defines either one or more *owned specializations* for the type (see [7.3.2.3](#)) or a *conjugator* for the type (see [7.3.2.4](#)). This may optionally be followed by the definition of one or more *owned disjoinings* (see [7.3.2.5](#)).

```
type A specializes Base::Anything disjoint from B;
type C conjugates A;
```

A type is specified as *abstract* by placing the keyword **abstract** before the keyword **type**, which means that all instances of a type must also be instances of at least one (possibly indirect) specialized type (which must not be abstract, that is, must be *concrete*).

```
abstract type A specializes Base::Anything;
type A1 specializes A;
type A2 specializes A;
```

The multiplicity constrains the number of instances in the extent of a type (the *cardinality* of the extent). A multiplicity is a feature whose values are natural numbers (extended with infinity, see [9.3.2.1](#)) that are the only ones allowed for the cardinality of its featuring type (each multiplicity is the feature of exactly one Type). A type can have at most one feature that is its multiplicity. Cardinality for classifiers is the number of things it classifies. For features that are not end features (see below), cardinality is the number of values of the feature for a specific instance of its featuring types.

Note. The semantics of multiplicity is different for features that are identified as *end features*. End Features are used primarily in the definition of associations and connectors, and the semantics of end features is discussed in conjunction with them (see [7.4.5](#) and [7.4.6](#), respectively).

The multiplicity of a type can be specified as a *range* after any identification of the Type, between square brackets [...]. (See [7.4.12](#) for a complete description of multiplicity ranges, including declaring named multiplicity features.)

```
// This Type has exactly one instance.
type Singleton[1] specializes Base::Anything;
```

The body of a type is specified as for a generic namespace, by listing the members between curly braces {...} (see [7.2.4.2](#)). However, for types, *protected* members, indicated using the keyword **protected** instead of **public** or **private**, have special visibility rules for inheritance (see [7.3.2.3](#)). A feature declared as an owned member of a type is automatically considered to be an *owned feature* of the type, related by a *feature membership*, unless its declaration is preceded by the keyword **member**, in which case it is related by regular membership (see [7.3.2.6](#) for details).

```
type Super specializes Base::Anything {
  private namespace N {
    type Sub specializes Super;
  }
}
```



```

    protected feature f : N::Sub;
    member feature f1 : Super featured by N::Sub;
}

```

The conditions that a type places on its instances (e.g., what feature it has) are always considered *necessary*. They can be indicated as *sufficient* by placing the keyword **all** after the keyword **type**. In this case, the type places additional sufficiency conditions on its instances corresponding to all the necessary conditions. For example, if `Car` requires all instances to be four-wheeled (necessary), and then is also indicated as sufficient, its extent will include all four wheeled things and no others. (See also the discussion in [7.3.2.1](#).)

```

type all Car specializes MaterialThing {
    feature wheels[4] : Wheel;
}

```

7.3.2.3 Specialization

Specializations are relationships between types, identified as *specific* and *general*, indicating that all instances of the specific type are instances of the *general* one (that is, the extent of the specific type is a subset of the extent of the general one, which might be the same set). This means instances of the specific type have all the features of the general one, referred to syntactically as *inheriting* features from general to specific types. A type may participate in multiple specialization relationships, both as specific and general types.

A specialization relationship is declared using the keyword **specialization**, optionally followed by a short name and/or a name. The qualified name of the specific type, or a feature chain (see [7.3.4.6](#)) if the specific type is such a feature, is then given after the keyword **subtype**, followed by the qualified name of the general type, or a feature chain if the general type is such a feature, after the keyword **specializes**. The symbol `:>` can be used interchangeably with the keyword **specializes**. A specialization declaration can also optionally have a relationship body (see [7.2.2.3](#)) for, e.g., nested annotations.

```

specialization Gen subtype A specializes B;
specialization subtype x :> Base::things {
    doc /* This specialization is unnamed. */
}

```

If no `shortName` or `name` is given, then the keyword **specialization** may be omitted.

```

subtype C specializes A;
subtype C specializes B;

```

The *directsupertypes* of a type are all the general types in specializations for which the type is the specific type, and the *direct subtypes* of a type are all the specific types in specializations for which the type is the general type. *Indirect supertypes* include, recursively, the supertypes of the direct supertypes of a type, and similarly for *indirect subtypes*.

Specialization relationships can form cycles, which means all types in the cycle have the same instances (same extent). However, since all types are required to specialize the base type `Anything` (directly or indirectly), no cycle of valid types can be entirely closed, unless it includes the type `Anything`.

The *owned specializations* of a type are those specializations that are owned relationships of the type (see [7.2.2](#)), for which the type is the *specific* type. An owned specialization of a type is defined as part of the declaration of the type, rather than in a separate declaration, by including the qualified name or feature chain of the general type in a list after the keyword **specializes** (or the symbol `:>`).

```

type C specializes A, B;
type f :> Base::things;

```


A type *inherits* all visible and protected memberships of the general types of its owned specializations. *Protected* memberships are all owned and inherited memberships of the general type whose visibility declared as **protected** (see also [7.3.2.2](#) on **protected** visibility; for imported memberships, protected visibility is equivalent to private). This means protected memberships are memberships that are only visible to their owning type and to (direct or indirect) specializations of it.

```
type A specializes Base::Anything {
  feature f; // Public by default.
  protected feature g;
  private feature h;
}
type B specializes A {
  // B inherits feature memberships for
  // f and g, but not h.
}
```

7.3.2.4 Conjugation

Conjugation is a relationship between types, identified as the *original* type and the *conjugated* type, indicating the conjugated type inherits visible and protected memberships from the original type, except the direction of input and output features is reversed (see [7.3.4.1](#) on features with direction). Features with direction **in** relative to the original type are treated as having direction **out** relative to the conjugated type, and vice versa for direction **out** treated as **in**. Features with with no direction or direction **inout** in the original type are inherited without change.

A conjugation relationship is declared using the keyword **conjugation**, followed by a short name and/or a name. The qualified name of the conjugated type, or a feature chain (see [7.3.4.6](#)) if the conjugated type is such a feature, is then given after the keyword **conjugate**, followed by the qualified name of the original type, or a feature chain if the original type is such a feature, after the keyword **conjugates**. The symbol ~ can be used interchangeably with the keyword **conjugates**. A conjugation declaration can also optionally have a relationship body (see [7.2.2.3](#)) for, e.g., nested annotations.

```
type Original specializes Base::Anything {
  in feature Input;
}
type Conjugate1 specializes Base::Anything;
type Conjugate2 specializes Base::Anything;
conjugation c1 conjugate Conjugate1 conjugates Original;
conjugation c2 conjugate Conjugate2 ~ Original {
  doc /* This conjugation is equivalent to c1. */
}
```

If no short name or name is given, then the keyword **conjugation** may be omitted.

```
conjugate Conjugate1 conjugates Original;
conjugate Conjugate2 ~ Original;
```

An *owned conjugation* is an owned relationship of a type ([7.2.2](#)) that is a conjugation relationship, for which the type is the *conjugated* type. An owned conjugation for a type is defined as part of the declaration of the type, rather than in a separate declaration, by including the qualified name or feature chain of the original type after the keyword **conjugates** (or the symbol ~).

```
type Conjugate1 conjugates Original;
type Conjugate2 ~ Conjugate1;
```

A type can be the conjugated type of at most one conjugation relationship, and a conjugated type cannot be the specific type in any specialization relationship.

7.3.2.5 Disjoining

Types related by *disjoining* do not share instances (instances cannot be in more than one of the extents; the extents are *disjoint*). For example, a classifier for mammals is disjoint from a classifier for minerals, and a feature for people's parents is disjoint from a feature for their children.

A disjoining relationship is declared using the keyword **disjoining**, optionally followed by a short name and/or a name. The qualified name of the first type, or a feature chain (see [7.3.4.6](#)) if the type is such a feature, is then given after the keyword **disjoint**, followed by the qualified name of the second type, or a feature chain, if the type is such a feature, after the keyword **from**. A disjoining declaration can also optionally have a relationship body (see [7.2.2.3](#)) for, e.g., nested annotations.

```
disjoining Disj disjoint A from B;
disjoining disjoint Mammal from Mineral;
disjoining disjoint Person::parents from Person::children {
  doc /* No Person can be their own parent. */
}
```

If no short name or name is given, then the keyword **disjoining** may be omitted.

```
disjoint A from B;
disjoint Mammal from Mineral;
disjoint Person::parents from Person::children;
```

An *owned disjoining* of a type is an owned relationship of the type (see [7.2.2](#)) that is a disjoining relationship. An owned disjoining is defined as part of the declaration of the type, rather than in a separate declaration, by including the qualified name or feature chain of the disjoining type in a list after the keyword **disjoint from**, placed after any owned specializations.

```
type C specializes Anything disjoint from A, B;
type Mammal :> Animal disjoint from Mineral;
```

7.3.2.6 Feature Membership

A *feature membership* is a relationship between a type and a feature that is both a kind of owning membership and a kind of *type featuring* (see [7.3.4.8](#)). Features related to a type via feature membership are identified as *owned features of the type*. The owning type is one of the feature's featuring types, meaning that the feature specifies a relation between the owning type and the type of the feature.

A feature that is declared within the body of a type is normally an owned feature of that type, so it automatically has that type as a featuring type (because feature membership is a kind of type featuring). This also applies to the bodies of classifiers (see [7.3.3](#)) and features (see [7.3.4](#)), since they are kinds of types. A feature may also be aliased in a type like any other Element (see [7.2.4](#)), in which case it is related to the aliasing type by a regular membership relationship, not a feature membership, and, so, does not become one of the owned features of the type.

```
feature person[*] : Person;
classifier Person {
  // This declares an owned feature using a feature membership.
  feature age[1] : ScalarValues::Integer;

  // This is not a feature membership.
  alias personAlias for person;
}
```

However, if a feature declaration in the body of type is preceded by the keyword **member**, then the feature is owned by the containing type via a membership relationship, not a feature membership. In this case, the feature is *not* an

owned feature of the containing type, and it does *not* automatically have the containing type as a featuring type, though it may have featuring types declared in its **featured by** list (see [7.3.4.1](#) on declaring the owned typings of a feature).

```

classifier A;
classifier B {
    // Feature f has B as its featuring type.
    feature f;

    // Feature g has A as its featuring type, not B.
    member feature g featured by A;
}

```

7.3.2.7 Unioning, Intersecting, and Differencing

Unioning, *intersecting*, and *differencing* are relationships between an owning type and a set of other types.

1. *Unioning* specifies that the owning type classifies everything that is classified by *any* of the unioned types.
2. *Intersecting* specifies that the owning type classifies everything that is classified by *all* of the intersecting types.
3. *Differencing* specifies that the owning type classifies everything that is classified by the first of the differenced types but *not* by any of the remaining types.

Since these relationships are always owned by the source type, they are defined as part of the declaration of that type, using the keywords **unions**, **intersects**, and **differences**, respectively, followed by a list of qualified names (or feature chains, if appropriate, see [7.3.4.6](#)) of the related types. These relationship clauses are placed after any owned specializations (see [7.3.2.3](#)) but may otherwise appear in any order with each other and with any disjoining clause (see [7.3.2.5](#)).

```

classifier Adult;
classifier Child;

classifier Person unions Adult, Child {
    feature dependents : Child[*];
    feature offspring : Person[*];
    feature grownOffspring : Adult[*] :> offspring;
    feature dependentOffspring : Child[*] :> dependents, offspring
        differences offspring, grownOffspring
        intersects dependents, offspring;
}

```

Multiple relationships of each kind can be specified using multiple clauses in a single declaration. In the case of differencing, any additional **differences** clauses after the first one mean that the owning type does *not* classify anything classified by any of the related types. It is not allowable, though, for a type to have just one of any of these relationships over all.

```

// This is valid.
classifier Person unions Adult unions Child;

// This is NOT valid.
classifier Person unions Adult;

```

7.3.3 Classifiers

7.3.3.1 Classifiers Overview

Metamodel references:

- *Concrete syntax*, [8.2.4.2](#)
- *Abstract syntax*, [8.3.3.2](#)
- *Semantics*, [8.4.2.3](#)

Classifiers are types that classify things in the modeled system, as distinct from features, which model the relations between them (see [7.3.4](#)). *Subclassification* is a kind of specialization that specifically relates classifiers.

7.3.3.2 Classifier Declaration

The notation for a classifier is the same as the generic notation for a type (see [7.3.2.2](#)), except using the keyword **classifier** rather than **type**. However, any general types referenced in a **specializes** list must be Classifiers, and the specializations defined are specifically *subclassifications* (see [7.3.3.3](#)). A classifier is also not required to have any owned subclassifications explicitly specified. If no explicit subclassification is given for a classifier, and the classifier is not conjugated, then the classifier is given a default subclassification to the most general base classifier `Anything` from the `Base` library model (see [9.2.2](#)).

```
classifier Person { // Default superclassifier is Base::Anything.
    feature age : ScalarValues::Integer;
}
classifier Child specializes Person;
```

The declaration of a classifier may also specify that the classifier is a conjugated type (see [7.3.2.4](#)), in which case the original type must also be a classifier.

```
classifier FuelInPort {
    in feature fuelFlow : Fuel;
}
classifier FuelOutPort conjugates FuelInPort;
```

7.3.3.3 Subclassification

A subclassification relationship is declared using the keyword **specialization**, optionally followed by a short name and/or a name. The qualified name of the *subclassifier* is then given after the keyword **subclassifier**, followed by the qualified name of the *superclassifier* after the keyword **specializes**. The symbol `:>` can be used interchangeably with the keyword **specializes**. A subclassification declaration can also optionally have a relationship body (see [7.2.2.3](#)) for, e.g., nested annotations.

```
specialization Super subclassifier A specializes B;
specialization subclassifier B :> A {
    /* This subclassification is unnamed. */
}
```

If no short name or name is given, then the keyword **specialization** may be omitted.

```
subclassifier C specializes A;
subclassifier C specializes B;
```

An owned subclassification of a Classifier is defined as part of the declaration of the Classifier, rather than in a separate declaration, by including the qualified name of the *superclassifier* in a list after the keyword **specializes** (or the symbol `:>`).

```
classifier C specializes A, B;
```

7.3.4 Features

7.3.4.1 Features Overview

Metamodel references:

- *Concrete syntax*, [8.2.4.3](#)
- *Abstract syntax*, [8.3.3.3](#)
- *Semantics*, [8.4.2.4](#)

Features are types that classify how things in a modeled system are related, including by chains of relations. Relations between things can also be treated as things, allowing relations between relations, recurring as many times as needed. A feature relates instances in the intersection of the extents of its *featuring types* (the *domain*) with instances in the intersection of the extents of its *featured types* (the *co-domain*). Instances in the domain of a feature are said to "have values" that are instances of the co-domain. The domain of features with no explicit featuring types is the type `Anything` from the `Base` library model (see [9.2.2](#)).

Type featuring is a relationship between a feature and a type that identifies the type as a featuring type of the feature. *Feature membership* is both a kind of owning membership and a kind of type featuring, by which a type owns a feature and becomes a featuring type of that feature (see [7.3.2.6](#)).

There are also several forms of specialization that apply specifically to features.

- *Feature typing* is a relationship between a feature and a type that identifies the type as a featured type of the feature.
- *Subsetting* is a relationship between a specific feature (the *subsetting feature*) and a more general feature (the *subsetted feature*), where the specific feature may further constrain the featuring types, featured types and multiplicity of the general feature.
- *Redefinition* is a kind of subsetting in which the specific feature (the *redefining feature*) also replaces an otherwise inherited general feature (the *redefined feature*) in the context of the owning type of the specific feature.

7.3.4.2 Feature Declaration

The notation for a feature is similar to the generic notation for a type (see [7.3.2.2](#)), except using the keyword **feature** rather than **type**. Further, a feature can have any of three kinds of specialization, each identified by a specific keyword or equivalent symbol:

- **typed by** or **:** – Specifies `FeatureTyping` (see [7.3.4.3](#)).
- **subsets** or **:>** – Specifies `Subsetting` (see [7.3.4.4](#)).
- **redefines** or **:>>** – Specifies `Redefinition` (see [7.3.4.5](#)).

In general, clauses for the different kinds of Specialization can appear in any order in a Feature declaration.

```
feature x typed by A, B subsets f redefines g;

// Equivalent declaration:
feature x redefines g typed by A subsets f typed by B;
```

If no subsetting (or redefinition) is explicitly specified for a feature, and the feature is not conjugated, then the feature is given a default subsetting of the most general base feature `things` from the `Base` library model (see [9.2.2](#)). This is true even if a feature typing is given for the feature.

```
abstract feature person : Person; // Default subsets Base::things.
feature child subsets person;
```

The declaration of a feature may also specify that the feature is a conjugated type (see [7.3.2.4](#)), in which case the original type must also be a feature. In this case, the feature must not have any owned specializations.

```
classifier Tanks {  
  feature fuelInPort {  
    in feature fuelFlow : Fuel;  
  }  
  feature fuelOutPort ~ fuelInPort;  
}
```

As for any type, the multiplicity of a feature can be given in square brackets [...] after any identification of the feature (see also [7.3.2.2](#)). However, the multiplicity for a feature can also be placed *after* one of the specialization clauses in the feature declaration (but, in all cases, only one multiplicity may be specified). In particular, this allows a notation style for multiplicity consistent with that used in previous modeling languages (such as [UML]). It is also useful when redefining a Feature without giving an explicit name (see [7.3.4.5](#)).

```
feature parent[2] : Person;  
feature mother : Person[1] :> parent;  
feature redefines children[0];
```

In addition to, or instead of, an explicit multiplicity, a feature declaration can include either or both of the following keywords (in either order). The properties flagged by these keywords are only meaningful if the feature has a multiplicity upper bound greater than one.

- **nonunique** – If a feature is *non-unique*, then, for any domain instance, the same co-domain instance may appear more than once as a value of the feature. The default is that the feature is *unique*.
- **ordered** – If a feature is *ordered*, then for any domain instance, the values of the feature can be placed in order, indexed from 1 to the number of values. The default is that the feature is *unordered*.

```
feature sensorReadings : ScalarValues::Real [*] nonunique ordered;
```

There are four other kinds of relationships that can be declared as owned relationships of a feature, each indicated by a specific keyword:

- **disjoint from** – Specifies disjoining (see [7.3.2.5](#)).
- **chains** – Specifies feature chaining (see [7.3.4.6](#)).
- **inverse of** – Specifies feature inverting (see [7.3.4.7](#)).
- **featured by** – Specifies type featuring (see [7.3.4.7](#)).

The clauses for these relationships must appear after any specialization or conjugation part, but can otherwise appear in any order.

```
feature cousins : Person[*] chains parents.siblings.children featured by Person;  
feature children : Person[*] featured by Person inverse of parents;
```

There are a number of additional properties of a feature that can be flagged by adding specific keywords to its declaration. If present, these are always specified in the following order, before the keyword **feature**:

1. **in**, **out**, **inout** – Specifies the *direction* of a feature, which determines what is allowed to change its values on instances of its domain:
 - **in** – Things "outside" the instance. These features identify things input to an instance.
 - **out** – The instance itself or things "inside" it. These features identify things output by an instance.
 - **inout** – Both things "outside" and "inside" the instance. These features identify things that are both input to and output by an instance.

2. **abstract** – Specifies that the feature is *abstract* (see [7.3.2.2](#) on abstract types in general).
3. **composite** or **portion** – Specifies that the feature is either a *composite* or *portion* feature (specifying both is not allowed).
 - Values of composite features on each instance of their domain cannot exist after that instance does. This only applies to values at the time the instance goes out of existence, not to other things in the co-domain that might have been values before that.
 - Portion features are composite features where the values cannot exist without the whole, because they are the “same thing” as the whole. (For example, the portion of a person's life when they are a child cannot be added or removed from that person's life.)
4. **readonly** – Specifies that the feature is *read only*. Values of read only features on each instance of their domain are the same during the entire existence of that instance.
5. **derived** – Specifies that the feature is *derived*. Such a feature is typically expected to have a bound feature value expression that completely determines its value at all times (see [7.4.11](#) on feature values, which is a kernel concept).
6. **end** – Specifies that the feature is an *end feature*. Any kind of type can have end features, but they are mostly used in associations (see [7.4.5](#)) and connectors (see [7.4.6](#)), and they are further described in those contexts.

(Note that the semantics of **composite**, **portion**, and **readonly** require a model of things existing in time, which is provided in the Kernel layer, see [7.4.3](#)).

```

classifier Fuel {
  portion feature fuelPortion : Fuel;
}

classifier Tank {
  in feature fuelFlow: Fuel;
  composite feature fuel : Fuel;
}

assoc VehicleRegistration {
  end feature owner[1] : Person;
  end feature vehicle[*] : Vehicle;
}

```

7.3.4.3 Feature Typing

A feature typing relationship is declared using the keyword **specialization**, optionally followed by a short name and/or a name. The qualified name of the typed feature is then given after the keyword **typing**, followed by the qualified name of the type, or a feature chain (see [7.3.4.6](#)), after the keyword **typed by**. The symbol **:** can be used interchangeably with the keyword **typed by**. A feature typing declaration can also optionally have a relationship body (see [7.2.2.3](#)) for, e.g., nested annotations.

```

specialization t1 typing customer typed by Person;
specialization t2 typing employer : Organization {
  doc /* An employer is an Organization. */
}

```

If no short name or name is given, then the keyword **specialization** may be omitted.

```

typing customer typed by Person;
typing employer : Organization;

```

An *owned feature typing* is a feature typing that is an owned relationship of its type feature. An owned feature typing is defined as part of the declaration of the typed feature, rather than in a separate declaration, by including the qualified name or feature chain for the type in a list after the keyword **typed by** (or the symbol **:**).

```
feature foodItem typed by Food, InventoryItem;
```

7.3.4.4 Subsetting

Subsetting is a kind of specialization between two features. This means that the values of the subsetting feature are also values of the subsetted feature on each instance (separately) of the domain of the subsetting feature.

A subsetting relationship is declared using the keyword **specialization**, optionally followed by a short name and/or a name. The qualified name of the subsetting feature, or a feature chain (see [7.3.4.6](#)), is then given after the keyword **subset**, followed by the qualified name of the subsetted feature, or a feature chain, after the keyword **subsets**. The symbol **:>** can be used interchangeably with the keyword **subsets**. A subsetting declaration can also optionally have a relationship body (see [7.2.2.3](#)) for, e.g., nested annotations.

```
specialization Sub subset parent subsets person;
specialization subset mother subsets parent {
    doc /* All mothers are parents. */
}
```

If no short name or name is given, then the keyword **specialization** may be omitted.

```
subset rearWheels subsets wheels;
subset rearWheels subsets driveWheels;
```

An *owned subsetting* is a subsetting that is an owned relationship of the subsetting feature. An owned subsetting is defined as part of the declaration of the subsetting feature, rather than in a separate declaration, by including the qualified name or feature chain of the subsetted feature in a list after the keyword **subsets** (or the symbol **:>**).

```
feature rearWheels subsets wheels, driveWheels;
```

A subsetting feature can restrict aspects of the subsetted feature, otherwise it will, by default, have the same properties as the subsetted feature. In particular, a subsetting feature can constrain its featured types to be specializations of those of the subsetted feature and add additional feature types. A subsetting feature can also restrict the multiplicity of its subsetted feature to allow cardinalities that are smaller than those of the subsetted feature (e.g., by specifying smaller lower and/or upper bounds).

```
classifier Wheel;
classifier DriveWheel specializes Wheel;
feature anyWheels[*] : Wheel;

classifier Automobile {
    // Restricts multiplicity
    composite feature wheels[4] subsets anyWheels;
    // Restricts multiplicity and type.
    composite feature driveWheels[2] : DriveWheel subsets wheels;
}
```

If a subsetted feature is ordered, then the subsetting feature must also be ordered. If the subsetted feature is unordered, then the subsetting feature will be unordered by default, unless explicitly flagged as **ordered**.

```
classifier Automobile {
    composite feature wheels[4] ordered subsets anyWheels;
    // driveWheels must be ordered because wheels is ordered.
    composite feature driveWheels[2] ordered : DriveWheel subsets wheels;
}
```


If a subsetted feature is unique, then the subsetting feature must not be specified as non-unique. If the subsetted feature is non-unique, then the subsetting feature will still be unique by default, unless specifically flagged as **nonunique**.

```
feature urls[*] nonunique : URL;
classifier Server {
  feature accessibleURLs subsets urls; // Unique by default.
  feature visibleURLs subsets accessibleURLs; // Cannot be nonunique.
}
```

7.3.4.5 Redefinition

Redefinition is a kind of subsetting that requires the values of the redefining feature and the redefined feature to be the same on each instance (separately) of the domain of the redefining feature. This means any restrictions on the values of the redefining feature relative to the redefined feature, such as typing or multiplicity, also apply to the values of the redefined feature, and vice versa.

A redefinition relationship is declared using the keyword **specialization**, optionally followed by a short name and/or a name. The qualified name of the redefining feature, or a feature chain (see [7.3.4.6](#)), is then given after the keyword **redefinition**, followed by the qualified name of the redefined feature, or a feature chain, after the keyword **redefines**. The symbol **:>>** can be used interchangeably with the keyword **redefines**. A redefinition declaration can also optionally have a relationship body (see [7.2.2.3](#)) for, e.g., nested annotations.

```
specialization Redef redefinition LegalRecord::guardian redefines parent;
specialization redefinition Vehicle::vin redefines RegisteredAsset::identifier {
  doc /* A "vin" is a Vehicle Identification Number. */
}
```

If no short name or name is given, then the keyword **specialization** may be omitted.

```
redefinition Vehicle::vin redefines RegisteredAsset::identifier;
redefinition Vehicle::vin redefines legalIdentification;
```

A feature can only be redefined once for any featuring type. A feature without any feature types is considered to be implicitly featured by the most general base type **Anything** (see [7.3.4.1](#)). It is therefore allowable to redefine such a feature by a redefining feature that does have some other featuring type. It is, however, illegal for one such feature to redefine another, because that would correspond to a semantically inconsistent redefinition of one feature of **Anything** by another.

The restrictions on the specification of the multiplicity, ordering and uniqueness of a subsetting feature (see [7.3.4.4](#)) also apply to a redefining feature. In addition, the multiplicity of a redefining feature must only allow cardinalities that are consistent with the multiplicity of the redefined feature (e.g., it cannot have a multiplicity lower bound that is less than that of the redefined feature).

An *owned redefinition* is a redefinition that is an owned relationship of its redefining feature. An owned redefinition of a feature is defined as part of the declaration of the feature, rather than in a separate declaration, by including the qualified name or feature chain of the redefined feature in a list after the keyword **redefines** (or the symbol **:>>**).

```
feature vin redefines RegisteredAsset::identifier, legalIdentification;
```

If a redefining feature is declared as an owned feature of a type (see [7.3.2.6](#)), then each of the redefined features of its owned redefinitions must be features that would otherwise be inherited from supertypes of its owning type. When redefined, however, these otherwise inheritable features are *not* inherited and are, instead, replaced by the redefining feature. This enables the redefining feature to have the same name as a redefined feature, if desired. (Note, however, that even though a redefined feature is not in the namespace of the owning type of the redefining feature, the

redefined feature still has values on instances of that type, particularly when they are considered as instances of the supertype that owns the redefined feature. The values will be the same as for the redefining feature, as described above.)

In general, the resolution of a qualified name begins with the namespace in which the name appears and proceeds outwards from there to containing namespaces (see [8.2.3.3.4](#)). However, the resolution of the qualified names of redefined features of owned redefinitions follow special rules. In particular, the local namespace of the owning type of the redefining feature is *not* included in the name resolution of the redefined features, with resolution beginning instead with the direct supertypes of the owning type. Since redefined features are not inherited, they would not be included in the local namespace of the owning type and, therefore, could not be referenced by an unqualified name. The special rules for redefined features, however, allow such a reference, because the name resolution begins with the namespaces of the supertypes of the owning type, one of which must contain the redefined feature.

```

classifier RegisteredAsset {
    feature identifier : Identifier;
}
classifier Vehicle : RegisteredAsset { // Owing type.
    // Legal even though "identifier" is not inherited.
    feature vin redefines identifier;
}

```

If a name is not given in the declaration of a feature with an owned redefinition, then it receives an implicit *effective name* that is the same as the name of the first redefined feature (which may itself be an implicit name, if the redefined feature is itself a redefining feature). Even though an effective name is implicit, it is the name used in name resolution, just as an explicit name would be. This is useful for constraining a redefined feature, while maintaining the same naming.

```

classifier WheeledVehicle {
    composite feature wheels[1..*] : Wheel;
}
classifier MotorizedVehicle specializes WheeledVehicle {
    composite feature redefines wheels[2..4];
}
classifier Automobile specializes MotorizedVehicle {
    composite feature redefines wheels[4] : AutomobileWheel;
}

```

7.3.4.6 Feature Chaining

Feature chaining is an owned relationship between the owning *chained feature* and a *chaining feature*. If a feature has any chaining features, then it must have at least two. The list of chaining features of a chained feature is called its *feature chain*.

The meaning of a chained feature depends on its feature chain. The values of a chained feature are the same as the values of the last feature in the chain. These can be found by starting with the values of the first feature (for each instance of the original feature's domain), then, on each of those, finding the values of the second feature in the chain, and so on, to values of the last feature.

A feature chain is notated as a sequence of two or more qualified names separated by dot (.) symbols. Each qualified name in a feature chain must resolve to a feature. The first qualified name in a feature chain is resolved in the local namespace as usual (see [8.2.3.3.4](#)). Subsequent qualified names are then resolved using the previously resolved feature as the context namespace (but considering only visible memberships). This notation specifies a list of chaining features, as given by the resolution of the qualified names in the chain, in order.

The feature chain notation can be placed after the keyword **chains** in the declaration of the Feature, appearing after any specialization or conjugation part, but before any disjoining or type featuring part (see also [7.3.4.2](#)).

```
feature cousins chains parents.siblings.children;
```

The featuring types of the chaining feature are implicitly considered to include the featuring types of the first chaining feature. Similarly, the featured types of the chaining feature are implicitly considered to include the featured types of the last chaining feature.

The feature chain notation may also be used to specify a related element in the declaration of any of the following relationships:

1. Specialization (see [7.3.2.3](#))
2. Disjoining (see [7.3.2.5](#))
3. Subsetting (see [7.3.4.4](#))
4. Redefinition (see [7.3.4.5](#))
5. Feature inverting (see [7.3.4.7](#))
6. Connector (see [7.4.6](#), in the Kernel layer)

In this case, the related element specified using the feature chain notation becomes an owned related feature of the relationship with the feature chain as notated.

```
feature uncles subsets parents.siblings;
feature cousins redefines parents.siblings.children;
connector vehicle.wheelAssembly.wheels to vehicle.road;
```

Note. A similar dot notation is also used for the related Kernel-layer concept of a feature chain expression (see [7.4.9.3](#)). However, it is always syntactically unambiguous as to whether the notation should be parsed as a plain feature chain or as a feature chain expression.

7.3.4.7 Feature Inverting

Feature inverting is a relationship between two features whose interpretations as relations are the inverse of each other. For example, a feature identifying each person's parents is the inverse of a feature identifying each person's children. A person identified as a parent of another will identify that other as one of their children.

A feature inverting relationship is declared using the keyword **inverting**, optionally followed by a short name and/or a name. The qualified name of the first feature, or a feature chain (see [7.3.4.6](#)), is then given after the keyword **inverse**, followed by the qualified name of the second feature, or a feature chain, after the keyword **of**. A feature inverting declaration can also optionally have a relationship body (see [7.2.2.3](#)) for, e.g., nested annotations.

```
inverting parent_child inverse Person::parent of Person::child {
  doc /* A Person is the parent of their children. */
}
```

If no short name or name is given, then the keyword **inverting** may be omitted.

```
inverse Person::parents of Person::children;
```

An *owned feature inverting* is a feature inverting that is an owned relationship of its first feature. An owned feature inverting is defined as part of the declaration of the inverted feature, rather than in a separate declaration, by giving the qualified name or feature chain of the other feature after the keyword **inverse of**.

```
classifier Person {
  feature children : Person[*];
  feature parents : Person[*] inverse of children;
}
```

Note that only a single feature identification is allowed after **inverse of**. While it is possible to declare multiple feature inverting relationships for a single feature, this is generally not useful.

Inverse features can be arbitrarily nested. However, while it is allowable to use feature chains in the declaration of a feature inverting relationship, note that a feature chain is a separate feature from any of the features it chains. In order to indicate that two declared features are inverses, one should use qualified names rather than feature chains.

```
classifier A {
  feature b: B {
    feature c: C;
  }
}
classifier C {
  feature b: B {
    feature a: A inverse of A::b::c;
  }
}
```

7.3.4.8 Type Featuring

Type featuring is a relationship between a feature and a type, identifying the type as a featuring type of the feature (see also [7.3.4.1](#)). Feature membership is a kind of type featuring that also makes the feature an owned member of the featuring type (see [7.3.2.6](#)).

A type featuring relationship is declared using the keyword **featuring**, optionally followed by a short name and/or a name, and the keyword **of**. The qualified name of the featured feature is then given, followed by the qualified name of the featuring type after the keyword **featured by**. A type featuring declaration can also optionally have a relationship body (see [7.2.2.3](#)) for, e.g., nested annotations.

```
featuring engine_by_Vehicle of engine featured by Vehicle;
featuring power featured by engine {
  doc /* The engine of a Vehicle has power. */
}
```

An *owned type featuring* is a type featuring that is an owned relationship of the featured feature. An owned type featuring is defined as part of the declaration of the feature, rather than in a separate declaration, by including the qualified name of the featuring type in a list after the keyword **featured by**.

```
classifier Vehicle;
classifier PoweredComponent;
feature engine : Engine featured by Vehicle, PoweredComponent;
```

Note that the domain of a feature is given by the *intersection* of its featuring types. That is, in the above example, an instance in the domain of `engine` must be *both* a `Vehicle` *and* a `PoweredComponent`.

7.4 Kernel

7.4.1 Kernel Overview

The Kernel layer completes KerML. It extends the Core layer to add modeling capabilities beyond basic classification. These include specialized classifiers for things that have the semantics of data values (*data types*) from others that have an independent existence over time and space (*classes*), and for reified relationships between things (*associations*).

Classes have instances that exist or happen in time and space. They are divided into those for *structure* and *behavior*. Structures typically limit how things and relations between them might change over time, while behaviors

specify changes within those limits. Structures and behaviors do not overlap, but structures can be involved in, perform, and own behaviors. Behaviors can coordinate other behaviors via *steps* (usages of behaviors). *Functions* are behaviors that yield a single result, which can be used to form trees of *expressions*. Interactions combine behaviors and associations. Some associations are also structures.

The Kernel layer adds semantics beyond the Core primarily by specifying how model elements use the Kernel model library (see [Clause 9](#)), rather than be specified mathematically as in the Core. In the simplest case, The Kernel textual syntax introduces keywords that translate to patterns of using Core abstract syntax and library models, acting as syntactic "markers" for modeling patterns tying Kernel to the Core. In the simplest case, this involves introducing implicit specializations of model library types. For example, classes must directly or indirectly subclassify the library class `Object`, while behaviors must directly or indirectly sub classify the library class `Performance`. Sometimes more complicated reuse patterns are needed. For example, binary associations (with exactly two ends) specialize `BinaryLink` from the library, and additionally require the ends of the association to redefine the `source` and `target` ends of `BinaryLink`.

This is also how other modeling languages can be built on KerML. Domain-specific metamodels and libraries can also reuse Kernel metamodel and libraries, inheriting the patterns of library reuse above, as well as the mathematical semantics they inherit from Core. This enables domain-specific modelers to use terms and syntax familiar to them and still benefit from automated assistance based on mathematically-defined semantics.

7.4.2 Data Types

Metamodel references:

- *Concrete syntax*, [8.2.5.1](#)
- *Abstract syntax*, [8.3.4.1](#)
- *Semantics*, [8.4.3.2](#)

Data types are classifiers that classify *data values* (see [9.2.2.2.2](#)). Certain *primitive* data types have have specified extents of values, such as the numerical and other types from the `ScalarValues` library model (see [9.3.2](#)). Other data types have features whose values can distinguish one instance of the data type from another. But, otherwise, different data values are not distinguishable.

This means that data types cannot also be classes or associations, or share instances with them. It also means that data types classify things that do not exist in time or space, because the require changing relations to other things. The feature values of a data value cannot change over time, because different feature values would inherently identify a different data value.

A data type is declared as a classifier (see [7.3.3](#)), using the keyword **datatype**. If no owned superclassing is explicitly given for the data type, then it is implicitly given a default superclassing to the data type `DataValue` from the `Base` library model (see [9.2.2](#)).

If any of the types of a feature are data types, then all of them must be. If a feature has data types as its types, and no owned subsetting or owned redefinition is explicitly given in the feature declaration, then the feature is implicitly given a default subsetting to the Feature `dataValues` from the `Base` model library (see [9.2.2](#)).

```
datatype IdNumber specializes ScalarValues::Integer;
datatype Reading { // Subtypes Base::DataValue by default
    feature sensorId : IdNumber; // Subsets Base::dataValues by default.
    feature value : ScalarValues::Real;
}
```

7.4.3 Classes

Metamodel references:

- *Concrete syntax*, [8.2.5.2](#)
- *Abstract syntax*, [8.3.4.2](#)
- *Semantics*, [8.4.3.3](#)

Classes are classifiers that classify *occurrences*, which exist in time and space (see [9.2.4.2.16](#)). Relations between an occurrence and other things can change over time and space, while the occurrence still maintains an independent identity.

A class is declared as a classifier (see [7.3.3](#)), using the keyword **class**. If no owned superclassing is explicitly given for the class, then it is implicitly given a default superclassing to the class `Occurrence` from the `Occurrences` model library (see [9.2.4](#)).

If any of the types of a feature are classes, then all of them must be. If a feature has class types, and no owned subsetting or owned redefinition is explicitly given in the feature declaration, then the feature is implicitly given a default subsetting to the feature `occurrences` from the `Occurrences` library model (see [9.2.4](#)), unless at least one of the types is an association structure, in which case the default subclassing is as described in [7.4.5](#).

```
class Situation { // Specializes Occurrences::Occurrence by default.
    feature condition : ConditionCode;
    feature soundAlarm : ScalarValues::Boolean;
}
class SituationStatusMonitor specializes StatusMonitor {
    feature currentSituation[*] : Situation; // Subsets Occurrences::occurrences by default.
}
```

7.4.4 Structures

Metamodel references:

- *Concrete syntax*, [Clause](#)
- *Abstract syntax*, [8.3.4.3](#)
- *Semantics*, [8.4.3.4](#)

Structures are classes that classify *objects*, which are kinds of occurrences. Structures typically limit how their instances and relations between them can change over time, as opposed to Behaviors, which indicate how objects and their relations change. Structures and behaviors do not overlap, but structures can own behaviors, and the objects they classify can be involved in and perform behaviors.

A structure is declared as a classifier (see [7.3.3](#)), using the keyword **struct**. If no owned superclassing is explicitly given for the structure, then it is implicitly given a default superclassing to the structure `Object` from the `Objects` library model (see [9.2.5](#)).

If any of the types of a feature are structures, then all of them must be. If a feature has structure types, and no owned subsetting or owned redefinition is explicitly given in the feature declaration, then the feature is implicitly given a default subsetting to the feature `objects` from the `Objects` library model (see [9.2.5](#)), unless at least one of the types is an association structure, in which case the default subsetting shall be as specified in [7.4.5](#).

```
struct Sensor { // Specializes Objects::Object by default.
    feature id : IdNumber;
    feature currentReading : ScalarValues::Real;
    step updateReading { ... } // Performed behavior
}
```

```

}
struct SensorAssembly specializes Assembly {
    composite feature sensors[*] : Sensor; // Subsets Objects::objects by default.
}

```

7.4.5 Associations

Metamodel references:

- *Concrete syntax*, [8.2.5.4](#)
- *Abstract syntax*, [8.3.4.4](#)
- *Semantics*, [8.4.3.5](#)

Associations are classifiers that classify *links* between things (see [9.2.3.1](#)) At least two owned features of an association must be end features (see [7.3.4.2](#)), its *association ends*, which identify the things being linked by (at the "ends" of) each link (exactly one thing per end, which might be the same thing). Associations with exactly two association ends are called *binary associations*. Associations can also have features that are not end features, which characterize each instance of the association separately from the things it links.

An association is declared as a classifier (see [7.3.3](#)), using the keyword **assoc**. If no owned superclassing is explicitly given for the association, then it is implicitly given a default superclassing to either the association `BinaryLink` (if it is a binary association) or the association `Link` (otherwise), both of which are from the `Links` library model (see [9.2.3](#)).

An association is also a relationship between the types of its association ends, which might be the same type, and are identified by its *related types*. Links are between instances of an association's related types. For binary associations, the two related types are identified as the *source type* and the *target type*, which might be the same. Associations with more than two association ends ("n-ary") have only target types, no source types.

The semantics of multiplicity is different for end features from that for non-end features (as described in [7.3.4.2](#)). The end features of an association determine the *participants* in the links that are instances of the association and, as such, effectively have multiplicity of "1" relative to the association. But, if an association end has a multiplicity specified other than 1..1, then this is interpreted as follows: For each association end, the multiplicity, ordering and uniqueness constraints specified for that end apply to each set of instance of the association that have the same (single) values for each of the other ends. For a binary association, this corresponds to the multiplicity resulting from "navigating" across the association given a value at one end of the association to the other end of the association. (See also [8.4.3.5](#) on association semantics.)

If an association has a single superclass that is an association, it may inherit association ends from this superclass association. However, if it declares any owned association ends, then each of these must redefine an association end of the superclass association, in order, up to the number of association ends of the superclassifier. If no redefinition is given explicitly for an owned association end, then it is considered to implicitly redefine the association end at the same position, in order, of the superclassifier Association (including implicit defaults), if any.

```

assoc Ownership { // Specializes Links::BinaryLink by default.
    feature valuationOnPurchase : MonetaryValue;
    end feature owner[1..*] : LegalEntity; // Redefines BinaryLink::source.
    end feature ownedAsset[*] : Asset;      // Redefines BinaryLink::target.
}
assoc SoleOwnership specializes Ownership {
    end feature owner[1]; // Redefines Ownership::owner.
    // ownedAsset is inherited.
}

```


If an association has more than one superclassifier that is an association, then the association *must* declare a number of owned association ends at least equal to the maximum number of association ends of any of its superclassifier associations. Each of these owned association ends must then redefine the corresponding association end (if any) at the same position, in order, of each of the superclassifier associations.

Association structures are both associations and classes (see [7.4.3](#) on classes), classifying *link objects*, which are both links and objects (see [9.2.5.1](#) on objects). As objects, link objects can be created and destroyed, and their non-end features can change over time. However, the values of the end features of a link object are fixed and cannot change over its lifetime.

An association structure is declared like a regular association, but using the keyword **assoc struct**. An association structure must directly or indirectly specialize the base associations structure `LinkObject`. If this is not the case due to the explicit `ownedSuperclassifications` in its declaration, then it is implicitly given a default superclassing to either the association structure `BinaryLinkObject` (if it is a binary association structure) or the association structure `LinkObject` (otherwise), both of which are from the `Objects` library model (see [9.2.5](#)). The same rules on association ends described above for associations also apply to association structures. An association structure may specialize an association that is not an association structure, but all subclassifications of an association structure must be association structures.

```
// Also implicitly specializations Objects::BinaryLinkObject.
assoc struct ExtendedOwnership specializes Ownership {
  // End features are inherited from Ownership.
  // The values of the feature "revaluations" may change over time.
  feature revaluations[*] ordered : MonetaryValue;
}
```

If a feature has one or more associations as types, then these associations must all have the same number of association ends. If the feature defines owned end features in its body, then it can have no more than the number of association ends of its association types. The owned end features of such a feature follow the same rules for redefinition of the association ends of its association types as described above for the redefinition of the association ends of superclassifier associations by a subclassifier association.

If a feature declaration has no explicit owned subsettings or owned redefinitions, and any of its types are binary associations, then the feature is implicitly given a default subsetting to the feature `binaryLinks` from the `Links` library model (see [9.2.3](#)) or to the feature `binaryLinkObjects` from the `Objects` library model (see [9.2.5](#)), if any of the associations are association structures. If some of the types are associations, but not binary associations, then it is given a default subsetting to the feature `links` from the `Links` library model (see [9.2.3](#)) or to the feature `linkObjects` from the `Objects` library model (see [9.2.5](#)), if any of the associations are association structures.

7.4.6 Connectors

7.4.6.1 Connectors Overview

Metamodel references:

- *Concrete syntax*, [8.2.5.5](#)
- *Abstract syntax*, [8.3.4.5](#)
- *Semantics*, [8.4.3.6](#)

Connectors are features that are typed by associations (see [7.4.5](#)), having values that are links (see [9.2.3.2.3](#)). Like an association, a connector has end features, known as its *connector ends*. Each connector end redefines an association end from each of the associations that type the connector and subsets a feature that becomes a *related feature* of the connector. Connectors typed by binary associations are called *binary connectors*.

A connector is also a relationship between its related features. For binary connectors, the two related features are identified as the *source feature* and the *target feature*, which might be the same. Connectors with more than two connector ends ("n-ary") have only target features, no source features.

Connectors can be thought of as "instance-specific" associations, because their values (which are links) are each limited to linking things identified via related features on the same instance of the connector's domain (or by things identified by that instance, recursively, see below). For example, an association could be used to model an engine driving wheels, and to type a connector in the car model. This connector specifies an engine driving wheels only in the same car, not in another car, as would be allowed with just the association.

Specifically, the values (links) of a connector are restricted to those that link things

1. classified by the types of its association ends, regardless of the domain of the connector
2. identified by its related features for the same instance of the domain of the connector (or by things identified by that instance, recursively).

For example, if the wheels in a car are taken to be part of its drive train, rather than part of the car directly, then the engine in each car will drive wheels identified by that car's drive train, rather than a feature of the car directly. This requires that each related feature of a connector have some featuring type of the connector as a direct or indirect featuring type (where a feature with no featuring type is treated as if the classifier `Anything` was its featuring type). This condition is satisfied if a connector has an owned type for which its related features are either direct or features reached by chaining. Otherwise, explicit owned type featureings (see [7.3.4.8](#)) should be used to ensure that the connector has a sufficiently general domain.

Binding connectors are binary connectors that require their source and target features to have the same values on each instance of their domain. They are typed by the library association `SelfLink` (which only links things in the modeled universe to themselves, see [9.2.3.1](#)) and have end multiplicities of exactly 1. This requires a `SelfLink` to exist between each value of the source feature and exactly one value of the target feature, and vice-versa.

To be meaningful, the declared co-domains of the related features of a binding connector must at last overlap. Since the interpretations of data types are disjoint from those of classes, this means that a feature typed by data types can only be bound to another feature typed by data types. In the determination of the equivalence of such features, indistinguishable data values are considered equivalent. The binding of features typed by classes to another feature typed by classes, on the other hand indicates that the same occurrences play the roles represented by each of the related features.

Successions are binary connectors requiring their source and target features to identify *Occurrences* that are ordered in time. They are typed by the library association `HappensBefore` (see [9.2.4](#)), which links occurrences that happen completely separately in time, with the connector's source feature being the earlier occurrence and the target feature being the later occurrence

7.4.6.2 Connector Declaration

A connector is declared as a feature (see [7.3.4.2](#)) using the keyword `connector`. If no owned subsetting or owned redefinition is explicitly given, then the connector is implicitly given a default subsetting to the feature `binaryLinks` from the `Links` library model (see [9.2.3](#)), if it is a binary connector, or to the feature `links` from the `Links` model library, if it is not a binary connector, and none of its types are association structures. If at least one of the types of a connector is an association structure, then the default subsetting is `linkObjects` from the `Objects` library model (see [9.2.5](#)) instead of `links`, and, if it is a binary connector, the default subsetting is to `binaryLinkObjects`.

In addition, a connector declaration includes *connector end* features that redefine the ends of the associations that type the connector and reference the features related by the connector (see also the description of association ends in [7.4.5](#)). All associations typing a connector must have the same number of association ends, which are the same as

the number of related features of the connector. The connector ends are declared in the same order as the corresponding association ends. The related feature referenced by a connector end is specified using the keyword **references** or the equivalent symbol **::>**.

```
// Specializes Objects::BinaryLinkObject by default.
assoc struct Mounting {
    end feature mountingAxle[1] : Axle;
    end feature mountedWheel[2] : Wheel;
}
struct WheelAssembly {
    composite feature axle[1] : Axle;
    composite feature wheels[2] : Wheel;

    // Subsets Objects::binaryLinkObjects by default.
    connector mount[2] : Mounting {
        end feature mountingAxle references axle;
        end feature mountedWheel references wheels;
    }
}
```

The **references** notation indicates that connector end features have *reference subsetting* relationships to the features related by the connector. Reference subsetting has the same semantics as regular subsetting (see [7.3.4.4](#)) but is used to syntactically differentiate one of the owned subsettings of a feature. While reference subsetting is used primarily for connector ends in KerML, it can actually be specified as an owned subsetting in the declaration of any kind of feature, using the **reference** or **::>** symbol. A feature is allowed to have at most one owned subsetting that is a reference subsetting.

```
struct WheelAssembly {
    composite feature axle[1] : Axle {
        feature mountedWheels[2] : Wheel;
    }
    composite feature wheels[2] : Wheel;
    connector mount[2] : Mounting {
        end mountingAxle references axle;
        end mountedWheel references wheels subsets mountingAxle.mountedWheels;
    }
}
```

Instead of explicitly declaring connector ends in the body of the connector, they can be listed between parentheses, after the regular feature declaration part and before the body of the connector (if any). In this case, the end declarations are limited to be of the form **e references f** or **e ::> f**, where **e** is the name of an association end and **f** is the qualified name of a related feature.

```
struct WheelAssembly {
    composite feature axle[1] : Axle;
    composite feature wheels[2] : Wheel;
    connector mount[2] : Mounting (
        mountingAxle ::> axle,
        mountedWheel ::> wheels
    );
}
```

The association end names can also be omitted, in which case the connector ends are matched in order to corresponding association ends.

```
struct WheelAssembly {
    composite feature axle[1] : Axle;
```

```

    composite feature wheels[2] : Wheel;

    connector mount[2] : Mounting (axle, wheels);
}

```

By default, the connector ends of a connector are declared in the same order as the association ends of the types of the connector. However, if the connector has a single type, then the related features can be given in any order, with each related feature paired with an association end of the type using a notation of the form *e* **references** *f* or *e* **::>** *f*, where *e* is the name of an association end and *f* is the qualified name of a related feature. In this case, the name of each association end must appear exactly once in the list of connector end declarations.

A special notation can be used for a binary connector, in which the source related feature is referenced after the keyword **from**, and the target related feature is referenced after the keyword **to**.

```

struct WheelAssembly {
    composite feature axle[1] : Axle;
    composite feature wheels[2] : Wheel;

    connector mount : Mounting from axle to wheels;
}

```

If a binary connector declaration includes only the related features part, then the keyword **from** can be omitted.

```

struct WheelAssembly {
    composite feature axle[1] : Axle;
    composite feature wheels[2] : Wheel;

    // Subsets Links::binaryLinks by default.
    connector axle to wheels;
}

```

If a binary connector has a single type, then the names of the association ends of the type can also be used in the declaration of the connector ends in the special notation for binary connectors. However, since the connector ends are always declared in order from source to target in this notation, the association end names given must match those from the type in the order they are declared for that type.

```

struct WheelAssembly {
    composite feature axle[1] : Axle;
    composite feature wheels[2] : Wheel;
    connector mount[2] : Mounting
        from mountingAxle ::> axle
        to mountedWheel ::> wheels;
}

```

In any of the above notations, a multiplicity can be specified for a connector end, after the qualified name of the related feature for that end. In this case, the given multiplicity redefines the multiplicity that would otherwise be inherited from the association end corresponding to the connector end.

```

struct WheelAssembly {
    composite feature halfAxles[2] : Axle;
    composite feature wheels[2] : Wheel;

    // Connects each one of the halfAxles to a different one of the wheels.
    connector mount : Mounting from halfAxles[1] to wheels[1];
}

```

Note that, if a connector is an owned feature of a type (as above), the context consistency condition for the related features of the connector (see [7.4.6.1](#)) requires that these features also be directly or indirectly nested within the owning type. The feature chain dot notation (see [7.3.4.6](#)) should be used when connecting so-called "deeply nested" features.

While the resolution of a feature chain is similar to a qualified name, the feature path contextualizes the resolution of the final feature. Thus, for example, while the qualified name *axle::halfAxles* statically resolves to *Axle::halfAxles*, in the Feature chain *axle.halfAxles*, *halfAxles* is understood to be specifically the feature as nested in *axle*.

```
struct Axle {
    composite feature halfAxles[2] : HalfAxle;
}
struct Wheel {
    composite feature hub : Hub[1];
    composite feature tire : Tire[1];
}
struct WheelAssembly {
    composite feature axle[1] : Axle;
    composite feature wheels[2] : Wheel;

    connector mount : Mounting from axle.halfAxles to wheels.hub;
}
```

7.4.6.3 Binding Connector Declaration

A binding connector is declared as a feature (see [7.3.4.2](#)) using the keyword **binding**. In addition, a binding connector declaration gives, after the keyword **of**, the qualified names of the two related features that are bound by the binding connector, separated by the symbol **=**, after the regular feature declaration part and before the body of the binding connector (if any). If no owned subsetting or owned redefinition is explicitly given, then the binding connector is implicitly given a default subsetting to the feature *selfLinks* from the *Links* library model (see [9.2.3](#)). Note that, due to this default subsetting, if no *type* is explicitly given for a binding connector, then it will implicitly have the *type SelfLink* (the type of *selfLinks*).

```
struct Vehicle {
    composite feature fuelTank {
        out feature fuelFlowOut : Fuel;
    }

    composite feature engine {
        in feature fuelFlowIn : Fuel;
    }

    // Subsets Links::selfLinks by default.
    binding fuelFlowBinding of fuelTank.fuelFlowOut = engine.fuelFlowIn;
}
```

If a binding connector declaration includes only the related features part, then the keyword **of** can be omitted.

```
struct Vehicle {
    composite feature fuelTank {
        out feature fuelFlowOut : Fuel;
    }

    composite feature engine {
        in feature fuelFlowIn : Fuel;
    }
}
```

```

    binding fuelTank.fuelFlowOut = engine.fuelFlowIn;
}

```

The connector ends of a binding connector always have multiplicity 1..1.

(See also [7.4.11](#) on the use of binding connectors with feature values.)

7.4.6.4 Succession Declaration

A succession is declared as a feature (see [7.3.4.2](#)) using the keyword **succession**. In addition, the succession declaration gives the qualified name of the source feature after the keyword **first** and the qualified name of the target feature after the keyword **then**. If no owned subsetting or owned redefinition is explicitly given, then the succession is implicitly given a default subsetting to the feature `happensBeforeLinks` from the `Occurrences` library model (see [9.2.4](#)). Note that, due to this default subsetting, if no `type` is explicitly given for a succession, then it will implicitly have the type `HappensBefore` (the type of `happensBeforeLinks`).

```

behavior TakePicture {
    composite step focus : Focus;
    composite step shoot : Shoot;
    succession controlFlow first focus then shoot;
}

```

If a succession declaration includes only the related features part, then the keyword **first** can be omitted.

```

behavior TakePicture {
    composite step focus : Focus;
    composite step shoot : Shoot;
    succession focus then shoot;
}

```

As for connector ends on regular connectors, constraining multiplicities can also be defined for the connector ends of successions.

```

behavior TakePicture {
    composite step focus[*] : Focus;
    composite step shoot[1] : Shoot;
    // A focus may be preceded by a previous focus.
    succession focus[0..1] then focus[0..1];
    // A shoot must follow a focus.
    succession focus[1] then shoot[0..1];
}

```

7.4.7 Behaviors

7.4.7.1 Behaviors Overview

Metamodel references:

- Concrete syntax, [8.2.5.6](#)
- Abstract syntax, [8.3.4.6](#)
- Semantics, [8.4.3.7](#)

Behaviors are classes that classify *performances*, which are kinds of occurrences that can be spread out in disconnected portions of space and time (see [9.2.6](#)). The performance of behaviors can cause effects on other things,

including their existence and relations, some of which might be accepted as input to or provided as output from the behavior.

Behaviors can have *steps*, which are features typed by behaviors, allowing the containing behavior to coordinate the performance of other behaviors. Steps can be ordered in time using succession connectors (see [7.4.6.4](#)). They can also be connected by item flows to model things flowing between the output of one step and the input of another. Steps can also nest other steps to augment or redefine steps inherited from their behavior types.

7.4.7.2 Behavior Declaration

A behavior is declared as a classifier (see [7.3.3](#)), using the keyword **behavior**. If no owned superclassing is explicitly given for the behavior, then it is implicitly given a default superclassing to the behavior `Performance` from the `Performances` library model (see [9.2.6](#)).

Features declared in the body of a behavior with a non-null direction (see [7.3.4.2](#)) are considered to be the owned *parameters* of the behavior. Features with direction **in** are input parameters, those with direction **out** are output parameters, and those with direction **inout** are both input and output parameters.

```
// Specializes Performances::Performance by default.
behavior TakePicture {
  in scene : Scene;
  out picture : Picture;
}
```

Parameters are ordered in the lexical order they are declared in the body of a behavior. They may appear at any location within the body.

If a behavior has owned subclassifications whose superclassifiers are behaviors, then each of the owned parameters of the subclassifier behavior must, in order, redefine the parameter at the same position of each of the superclassifier behaviors. The redefining parameters shall have the same direction as the redefined parameters.

```
behavior A { in a1; out a2; }
behavior B { in b1; out b2; }
behavior C specializes A, B {
  in c1 redefines a1, b1;
  out c2 redefines a2, b2;
}
```

If there is a single superclassifier behavior, then the subclassifier behavior can declare fewer owned parameters than the superclassifier behavior, inheriting any additional parameters from the superclassifier (which are considered to be ordered after any owned parameters). If there is more than one superclassifier behavior, then every parameter from every superclassifier must be redefined by an owned parameter of the subclassifier. If every superclassifier parameter is redefined, then the subclassifier behavior may also declare additional parameters, ordered after the redefining parameters. If no redefinitions are given explicitly for a parameter, then the parameter is implicitly given owned redefinitions of superclassifier parameters sufficient to meet the previously stated requirements.

```
behavior A1 :> A { in aa; } // aa redefines A::a1, A::a2 is inherited.
behavior B1 :> B { in b1; out b2; inout b3; } // Redefinitions are implicit.
behavior C1 :> A1, B1 { in c1; out c2; inout c3; }
```

Steps (see [7.4.7.3](#)) declared in the body of a behavior are the owned steps of the containing behavior. A behavior can also inherit or redefine non-private steps from any superclassifier Behavior.

```
behavior Focus { in scene : Scene; out image : Image; }
behavior Shoot { in image : Image; out picture : Picture; }
behavior TakePicture {
```

```

    in scene : Scene;
    out picture : Picture;
    composite step focus : Focus;
    composite step shoot : Shoot;
}

```

Though the performance of a behavior takes place over time, the order in which its steps are declared has no implication for temporal ordering of the performance of those steps. Any restriction on temporal order, or any other connections between the steps, must be modeled explicitly.

```

behavior TakePicture {
    in scene : Scene;
    out picture : Picture;

    binding focus.scene = scene;
    composite step focus : Focus;
    succession focus then shoot;
    composite flow focus.image to shoot.image;
    composite step shoot : Shoot;
    binding picture = focus.picture;
}

```

7.4.7.3 Step Declaration

A step is declared as a feature (see [7.3.4.2](#)) using the keyword **step**. If no owned subsetting or owned redefinition is explicitly given, then the step is implicitly given a default subsetting to the feature `performances` from the `Performances` library model (see [9.2.6](#)).

As for a behavior, directed features declared in the body of a step are considered to be *parameters* of the step (see [7.4.7.2](#)). If a step has owned specializations (including all feature typings, subsettings, and redefinitions), whose general type is a behavior or a step, then the rules for the redefinition of parameters of the behaviors and steps are the same as for the redefinition of the parameters of superclassifier behaviors by a subclassifier behavior (see [7.4.7.2](#)).

```

step focus : Focus {
    // Parameters redefine parameters of Focus.
    in scene;
    out image;
}

// Parameters are inherited.
step refocus subsets focus;

```

A step can also have a body, which may have steps in it. A step can inherit or redefine steps from its behavior types or any other steps it subsets.

```

step takePictureWithAutoFocus : TakePicture {
    in feature unfocusedScene redefines scene;
    step redefines focus : AutoFocus;
    out feature focusedPicture redefines picture;
}

```

7.4.8 Functions

7.4.8.1 Functions Overview

Metamodel references:

- *Concrete syntax*, [8.2.5.7](#)
- *Abstract syntax*, [8.3.4.7](#)
- *Semantics*, [8.4.3.8](#)

Functions are behaviors (see [7.4.7](#)) with one out parameter designated as the *result parameter*. Functions classify *evaluations* (see [9.2.6.2.3](#)), which are kinds of performances that produce *results* as values of the result parameter. Like all behaviors, functions can change things, often referred to as "side effects". A *pure* function is one that has no side effects and always produces the same results given the same input values, similarly to a function in the mathematical sense. The numerical functions in the Kernel Function Library (see [9.4](#)), for example, are pure functions.

Expressions are steps (see [7.4.7](#)) typed by only a single function, which means that their values are evaluations. An expression whose value is an evaluation with results is said to *evaluate to* those results. They can be steps in any behavior, but a function, in particular, can designate one of its expression steps as the *result expression* that gives the value of its result parameter. Expressions can have their own nested parameters, to augment or redefine those of their functions, including the result parameter. They can also own other expressions and designate a result expression, similarly to a function. (See also [7.4.9](#) for more on expressions).

Predicates are functions whose result is a single Boolean value (that is, true or false). A predicate determines whether the values of its input parameters meet particular conditions at the time of its evaluation, resulting in true if they do, and false otherwise. Predicates classify *boolean evaluations*, which are specialized evaluations giving a Boolean result (see [9.2.6.2.1](#)).

Boolean expressions are expressions whose function is a predicate and, so, evaluate to a Boolean result. A boolean expression might, in general, evaluate to true at some times and false at other times. An *invariant*, though, is a boolean expression that must always evaluate to either true at all times or false at all times. By default, an invariant is asserted to always evaluate to true, while a *negated invariant* is asserted to always evaluate to false.

7.4.8.2 Function Declaration

A function is declared as a behavior (see [7.4.7.2](#)), using the keyword **function**. If no owned superclassing is explicitly given for a function, then it is implicitly given a default subclassification to the function `Evaluation` from the `Performances` library model (see [9.2.6](#)). As for a behavior, any feature declared in the body of a function with an explicit direction is considered to be a parameter of the function. In addition, the result parameter of a function may be declared in its body by beginning the declaration with the keyword **return** (instead of a direction keyword).

```
// Specializes Performances::Evaluation by default.
function Velocity {
  in v_i : VelocityValue;
  in a : AccelerationValue;
  in dt : TimeValue;
  return v_f : VelocityValue;
}
```

If a function has owned subclassifications that are behaviors, then the rules for redefinition or inheritance of non-result parameters are the same as for a behavior (see [7.4.7.2](#)). If some of the superclassifier behaviors are functions, then the result parameter of the subclassifier function must redefine the result parameters of the superclassifier functions. If, in this case, the result parameter of the subclassifier function has no owned redefinitions, then it is implicitly given redefinitions of the result parameter of each of the superclassifier functions.

```
abstract function Dynamics {
  in initialState : DynamicState;
  in time : TimeValue;
  return : DynamicState;
```



```

}
function VehicleDynamics specializes Dynamics {
  // Each parameter redefines the corresponding superclassifier parameter
  in initialState : VehicleState;
  in time : TimeValue;
  return : VehicleState;
}

```

The body of a function is like the body of a behavior (see [7.4.7.2](#)), with the optional addition of the declaration of a result expression at the end. A result expression is always be written using the Expression notation described in [7.4.9](#), *not* using the Expression declaration notation from [7.4.8.3](#). The result of the result expression is implicitly bound to the result parameter of the containing function.

```

function Average {
  in scores[l..*] : Rational;
  return : Rational;

  sum(scores) / size(scores)
}

```

Note. A result expression is written *without* a final semicolon.

The result of a function can also be explicitly bound, either using a binding connector (see [7.4.6.3](#)) or a feature value on the result parameter declaration (see [7.4.11](#)). In this case, the body of the function should *not* include a result expression.

```

function Average {
  in scores[l..*] : Rational;
  return : Rational = sum(scores) / size(scores);
}

```

7.4.8.3 Expression Declaration

An expression can be declared as a step (see [7.4.7.3](#)) using the keyword **expr** (see also [7.4.9](#) for more traditional expression notation). If no owned subsetting or owned redefinition is explicitly given, then the expression is implicitly given a default subsetting to the feature evaluations from the `Performances` library model (see [9.2.6](#)).

As for a step, directed features declared in the body of an expression are considered to be parameters of the expression (see [7.4.7.3](#)). If an expression has owned specializations (including all feature typings, subsettings, and redefinitions) whose general type is a behavior (including a function) or a step (including an expression), then the rules for the redefinition of the parameters of those behaviors and steps are the same as for the redefinition of the parameters of superclassifier behaviors by a subclassifier function (see [7.4.8.2](#)).

```

expr computation : ComputeDynamics {
  // Parameters redefined parameters of ComputeDynamics.
  in state;
  in dt;
  return result;
}
expr vehicleComputation subsets computation {
  // Input parameters are inherited, result is redefined.
  return : VehicleState;
}

```

Like a function body, an expression body can also specify a result expression.

```

expr : VehicleDynamics {
    in initialState;
    in time;
    return result;

    vehicleComputation(initialState, time)
}

```

Or the result can be explicitly bound.

```

expr : Dynamics {
    in initialState;
    in time;
    return result : VehicleState =
        vehicleComputation(initialState, time);
}

```

7.4.8.4 Predicate Declaration

A predicate is declared as a function (see [7.4.8](#)), using the keyword **predicate**. If no owned subclassification is explicitly given for a predicate, then it is implicitly given a default subclassification to the predicate `BooleanEvaluation` from the `Performances` library model (see [9.2.6](#)). If a predicate has owned subclassifications that are behaviors, then the rules for redefinition or inheritance of non-result parameters are the same as for a function (see [7.4.8.2](#)). Since a predicate must always return a `Boolean` result, it is not necessary to explicitly declare a result parameter for it. However, if a result parameter is declared, then it must have type `Boolean` from the `ScalarValues` library model (see [9.3.2](#)) and multiplicity `1..1` (see [7.4.12](#)).

```

predicate isAssembled {
    in assembly : Assembly;
    in subassemblies[*] : Assembly;
}

```

The body of a predicate is the same as a function body (see [7.4.8](#)). If a result expression is included, then it must have a `Boolean` result.

```

predicate isFull {
    in tank : FuelTank;
    tank.fuelLevel == tank.maxFuelLevel
}

```

7.4.8.5 Boolean Expression and Invariant Declaration

A boolean expression is declared as an expression (see [7.4.8.3](#)), using the keyword **bool**. If no owned subsetting or owned redefinition is explicitly given, then the boolean expression is implicitly given a default subsetting to the feature `booleanEvaluations` from the `Performances` library model (see [9.2.6](#)).

As for an expression, directed features declared in the body of a boolean expression are considered to be parameters of the boolean expression (see [7.4.8.3](#)). If a boolean expression has owned specializations (including all feature typings, subsettings, and redefinitions) whose general type is a behavior or step, then the rules for the redefinition of the parameters of those behaviors and steps are the same as for a regular expression declaration (see [7.4.8.3](#)). The requirements on and default for the result parameter of a boolean expression are the same as for a predicate (see [7.4.8.4](#)).

```

// All input parameters are inherited.
bool assemblyChecks[*] : isAssembled;

```

Like a predicate body (see [7.4.8.4](#)), a boolean expression body can specify a `Boolean` result expression.

```

class FuelTank {
  feature fuelLevel : Real;
  feature readonly maxFuelLevel : Real;
  bool isFull { fuelLevel == maxFuelLevel }
}

```

An invariant is declared like any other boolean expression, except using the keyword **inv** instead of **bool**, and, additionally, this keyword may be optionally followed by one of the keywords **true** or **false**, to indicate whether the invariant is asserted to be true or false (i.e., is negated). The default is **true**.

```

class FuelTank {
  feature fuelLevel : Real;
  feature readonly maxFuelLevel : Real;
  // The invariant is asserted true by default.
  inv { fuelLevel >= 0 & fuelLevel <= maxFuelLevel }
  // The invariant is explicitly asserted false, that is, it is negated.
  inv false { fuelLevel > maxFuelLevel }
}

```

7.4.9 Expressions

7.4.9.1 Expressions Overview

Metamodel references:

- Concrete syntax, [8.2.5.8](#)
- Abstract syntax, [8.3.4.8](#)
- Semantics, [8.4.3.9](#)

As described in [7.4.8](#), expressions are steps typed by functions, and [7.4.8.3](#) covers the general notation for declaring an expression as a step. However, expressions are commonly organized into tree structures, with expressions as the nodes, and the input parameters of each expression bound to the result of each of its child expressions. KerML includes extensive textual notation for constructing expression trees, including traditional operator notations for functions in the Kernel Model Library (see [Clause 9](#)).

These expression notations map entirely to an abstract syntax involving just a few specialized kinds of expressions:

- The non-leaf nodes of an expression tree are *invocation expressions*, a kind of expression that specifies its input values as the results of other expressions (its *argument* expressions), one for each of the input parameters of its *invoked* function.
- The edges of the tree are binding connectors between the input parameters of an invocation expression (redefining those of its *function*) and the results of its argument expressions.
- The leaf nodes are these kinds of expressions:
 - *Feature reference expressions* evaluate to values of a referenced feature that is not part of the expression tree.
 - *Literal expressions* evaluate to the literal value of one of the primitive data types from the `ScalarValues` model library (see [9.3.2](#)).
 - *Null expressions* evaluate to the empty set.

An expression can also be the referent of a feature reference expression in an expression tree, as above. This enables the evaluation of the referent expression to be taken as the value of the argument of an invocation, rather than passing the value of the *result* of the evaluation. As a shorthand for doing this, the concrete syntax for an expression body (as described in [7.4.8.3](#)) can be used as a leaf node in the expression syntax tree.

A *model-level evaluable* expression is an expression that refers to metadata, which is data about model elements, rather than the things being modeled. Model-level evaluable expressions can give values to the features of a

metadata (see [7.4.13](#)) and be used as element filtering conditions in packages (see [7.4.14](#)). The expressiveness of model-level evaluable expressions is restricted to support this:

- All null expressions, literal expressions and feature reference expressions are model-level evaluable.
- An invocation expression is model-level evaluable if and only if it meets the following conditions:
 1. All its argument expressions are model-level evaluable.
 2. It invokes a function that is listed as being model-level evaluable in [Table 5](#) (in [8.2.5.8.1](#)) or [Table 7](#) (in [8.2.5.8.2](#)).

Release Note. The Functions allowed in model-level evaluable expressions may be expanded in the final submission.

7.4.9.2 Operator Expressions

Operator expression notation provides a shorthand for invocation expressions that invoke a library function represented as an *operator symbol*. ([Table 5](#) in [8.2.5.8.1](#) shows the mapping from operator symbols to the functions they represent from the Kernel Model Library.) An operator expression contains subexpressions called its *operands* that generally correspond to the argument expressions of the invocation expression, except in the case of operators representing *control functions*, in which case the evaluation of certain operands is as determined by the function.

Operator expressions include the following:

- *Conditional expressions.* The *conditional test* operator **if** is followed by three operands, with the symbol **?** after the first operand and the keyword **else** after the second operand. A conditional expression evaluates to the value of its second or third operand, depending on whether the result of its first operand is true or false. Note that only one of the second or third operand is actually evaluated.

```
if x >= 0? x else -x
```

- *Binary operator expressions.* A *binary operator* is one that has two operands. The binary operators include numerical operators (+, -, *, /, %, ^, **), logical operators (&, |, **xor**), comparison operators (==, !=, <, >, <=, >=, ==, !=), and the range construction operator (. .). In general, both operands become arguments of the invocation expression, with their results being passed to the invocation of the function represented by the operator. However, the null-coalescing (??), conditional and (**and**), conditional or (**xor**) and implication (**implies**) operators all correspond to control functions in which their second operand is only evaluated depending on a certain condition of the value of their first operand (whether it is null, true, false, or true, respectively).

```
x + y
list[i] ?? default
i > 0 and sensor[i] != null
sensor == null or sensor.reading > 0
```

The operators == and != apply to operands that have single values, testing whether they are equal or unequal, respectively. They also evaluate to true or false, respectively, if their operands are both null (no values). The operators === and !== apply specifically to values that are *occurrences* (see [9.2.4](#)). They test whether two occurrences are portions (in space and/or time) of the same *life* occurrence. Informally, these operators test whether or not two occurrences have the same "identity". For data values (values that are not occurrences), === and !== are the same as == and !=.

```
currentPortion == tripPortion // True for same trip portions
currentPortion === tripPortion // True for any two portions of same trip
```

- *Unary operator expressions.* A *unary operator* is one that has a single operand. The result of evaluating the operand is passed to the invocation of the Function represented by the operator. The unary operators include the numerical operators `+` and `-` and the logical operator `not`.

```
-x
not isOutOfRange(sensor)
not completed
```

- *Classification expressions.* The *classification operators* are syntactically similar to binary operators, but, instead of an expression as their second operand, they take a type name. The classification operators `istype` and `hastype` test whether all of the values of their first operand is classified by the named type (either including or not including subtypes, respectively). The `@` operator is similar to `istype`, but tests whether at least one of the values of its first operand is classified by the named type. Note that this means that `istype` and `hastype` evaluate to true on a `null` (empty list) value, while `@` evaluates to false.

```
sensors istype ThermalSensor // Are all sensors ThermalSensors?
sensors @ ThermalSensor // Is any sensor a ThermalSensor?
person hastype Administrator
```

The classification operator `as`, known as the *cast operator*, performs an `isType` test of whether each of the values of its first operand is classified by the named type, and then it selects only those values that pass the test to include in its result. The result values of such a cast expression (if any) are always guaranteed to be instances of the named type.

```
sensors as ThermalSensor
person as Administrator
```

The classification operators may also be used without a first operand, in which case the first operand is implicitly `Anything::self` (see [9.2.2.2.1](#)). This is useful, in particular, when used as a test within an element filter condition expression (see [7.4.14](#)).

```
istype ThermalSensor
@ThermalSensor
hastype Administrator
as Supervisor
```

- *Metaclassification expressions.* The metaclassification operators `@@` and `meta` take the qualified name of any kind of element as their first operand and a metaclass (see [7.4.13](#)) as their second operand. They are shorthands for classification expression with the operators `@` and `as`, respectively, and a metadata access expression (see [7.4.9.4](#)) as their first operand. As such, `@@` tests whether any metadata associated with an element are classified by the given metaclass, while `meta` filters the metadata associated with an element and evaluates to those that are classified by the given metaclass.

```
// Shorthand for designModel.metadata @ ApprovalAnnotation
designModel @@ ApprovalAnnotation

// Shorthand for sensors.metadata as KerML::Feature
sensors meta KerML::Feature

// Evaluates to the string "sensors".
(sensors meta KerML::Feature).name
```

- *Extent expressions.* The *extent operator* `all` is syntactically similar to a unary operator, but, instead of an expression as its operand, it takes a type name. An extent expression evaluates to a sequence of all instances of the named type.

```
all Sensor
```

In an operator expression containing nested operator expressions, the nested expressions are implicitly grouped according to the *precedence* of the operators involved, as given in [Table 6](#) (in [8.2.5.8.1](#)). Operator expressions with higher precedence operators are grouped more tightly than those with lower precedence operators. For example, the operator expression

$$-x + y * z$$

is considered equivalent to

$$((-x) + (y * z))$$

7.4.9.3 Primary Expressions

Primary expression notation provides additional shorthands for certain kinds of invocation expressions. For those cases in which the invoked function is represented by an operator symbol, the symbol is mapped to the appropriate library function as given in [Table 7](#) (in [8.2.5.8.2](#)).

Primary expressions include the following:

- *Index expression.* An index expression specifies the invocation of the indexing function ' `[]` ' from the `BaseFunctions` library model (see [9.4.2](#)). The default behavior for this function is given by the specialization `SequenceFunctions::'[]'`, for which the first operand is expected to evaluate to a sequence of values, and the second operand is expected to evaluate to an index into that sequence. Default indexing is from 1 using `Natural` numbers. However, the functionality of the `BaseFunctions::'[]'` operator may be specialized differently for domain-specific types, as is already the case for the library `Array` data type (see [9.3.3.2.1](#)).

```
sensors[activeSensorIndex]
```

- *Sequence expression.* A sequence expression consists of a list of one or more expressions separated by comma (`,`) symbols, optionally terminated by a final comma, all surrounded by parentheses (`()`). Such an expression specifies sequential invocations of the sequence concatenation function ' `,` ' from the `BaseFunctions` library model (see [9.4.2](#)). The default behavior for this Function is given by the specialization `SequenceFunctions::','`, which concatenates the sequence of values resulting from evaluating its two arguments. With this behavior, a sequence expression concatenates, in order, the results of evaluating all the listed expressions.

```
(temperatureSensor, windSensor, precipitationSensor)
( 1, 3, 5, 7, 11, 13, )
```

A sequence expression with a single constituent expression simply evaluates to the value of the contained expression, as would be expected for a parenthesized expression. The empty sequence (`()`) is not actually a sequence expression, but, rather, an alternative notation for a null expression (see [7.4.9.4](#)).

```
(highValue + lowValue) / 2
```

Sequences of values are *not* themselves values. Therefore, sequences are "flat", with no element of a sequence itself being a sequence. For example, `((1, 2, 3), 4)`, `(1, (2, 3), 4)` and `(1, null, (2, 3, 4))` all evaluate to the same sequence of values as `(1, 2, 3, 4)`. To model nested collection values, use the data types from the `Collections` library model (see [9.3.3](#)).

- *Feature chain expression.* A feature chain expression consists of a primary expression and a feature qualified name or a feature chain ([Clause](#)), separated by a dot (`.`) symbol. The referenced feature is evaluated in the context of each of the result values of the primary expression, in order. The resulting feature values are then collected into a sequence in order of evaluation. The qualified name for the referent

feature is resolved using the result parameter of the primary expression as the context namespace (see [8.2.3.3.4](#)), but considering only visible memberships.

```
// The primary expression is "getPlatform(id)".
// The feature chain is "sensors.isActive".
// Results in a sequence of Boolean values,
// one for each platform sensor.
getPlatform(id).sensors.isActive
```

To avoid ambiguity, the primary expression of a feature chain expression cannot be itself a feature chain expression. To read a list of features sequentially, rather than in a single evaluation, delimit nested feature chain expressions using parentheses

```
// First evaluate "getPlatform(id).sensors",
// then evaluate ".isActive" on the result of that.
(getPlatform(id).sensors).isActive
```

- *Collect expression.* A collect expression consists of a primary expression and an expression body (see [7.4.9.4](#)) separated by a dot (.) symbol. The expression body must have a single input parameter. The expression body is evaluated on each of the result values from the primary expression, in order, and each of the results are collected into a sequence in order of evaluation (that is, a collect expression is a shorthand for invoking the `ControlFunctions::collect` function).

```
sensors.{in s: Sensor; s.reading} // results in a sequence of
                                // readings of each of the sensors
```

- *Select expression.* A select expression consists of a primary expression and an expression body (see [7.4.9.4](#)) separated by a dot-question-mark (.) symbol. The expression body must have a single input parameter and a Boolean result. The expression body is evaluated on each of the result values from the primary expression, in order, and those for which the expression body evaluates to true are selected for inclusion in the result of the select expression (that is, a select expression is a shorthand for invoking the `ControlFunctions::select` function).

```
sensors.?(in s: Sensor; s.isActive) // results in the subsequence of
                                    // sensors that are active
```

- *Function operation expression.* A function operation expression is a special syntax for an invocation expression in which the first argument is given before the arrow (\rightarrow) symbol, which is followed by the name of the function to be invoked and an argument list for any remaining arguments (see [7.4.9.4](#)). This is useful for chaining invocations in an effective data flow.

```
sensors -> selectSensorsOver(limit) -> computeCriticalValue()
```

If the invoked function has exactly two input parameters, and the second input parameter is an expression, then an expression body (see [7.4.9.4](#)) can be used as the argument for the second argument without surrounding parentheses. The argument expression body should declare parameters consistent with those on the parameter expression (if any). This is particularly useful when invoking functions from the `ControlFunctions` library model (see [9.4.17](#)).

```
sensors -> select {in s: Sensor; s::isActive}
members -> reject {in member: Member; !member->isInGoodStanding()}
factors -> reduce {in x: Real; in y: Real; x * y}
```

If the argument expression is simply the direct invocation of another function, then the argument expression may be specified using simply the name of the invoked function.

```
factors -> reduce RealFunctions::'*
```

7.4.9.4 Base Expressions

Base expression notation includes representations for literal expressions, null expressions, invocation expressions, feature reference expressions (including using expression bodies as base expressions).

- *Literal expressions* are described in [7.4.9.5](#).
- A *null expression* is notated by the keyword **null**. A null expression always evaluates to a result of "no values", which is equivalent to the empty sequence `()`.
- An *invocation expression* can be directly represented by giving the qualified name for the function to be invoked followed by a list of argument expressions, surrounded by parentheses `()` and separated by commas. The parentheses must be included, even if the argument list is empty.

```
IntegerFunctions::'+'(i, j)
isInGoodStanding(member)
Computation()
```

If the qualified name given for an invocation expression resolves to an expression instead of a function, then the invocation expression is considered to subset the named expression, meaning that, effectively, the invocation is taken to be for the function of the named expression, as specialized by that expression.

```
function UnaryFunction {in x : Anything; return: Anything;}
function apply {
  in expr fn : UnaryFunction;
  in value : Anything;

  // Invokes UnaryFunction as specified by parameter fn.
  return : Anything = fn(value);
}
```

It is also possible to specify an expression to be invoked using a feature chain (see [7.3.4.6](#)).

```
class Stats {
  feature vales[1..*] : Real;
  expr avg { sum(values)/size(values) }
}
feature myStats : States {
  redefines feature values = (1.0, 2.0, 3.0);
}
feature myAvg = myStats.avg();
```

- A *feature reference expression* is represented simply by the qualified name of the feature being referenced.

```
member
spacecraft::mainAssembly::sensors
sensor::isActive
```

Note that the referenced feature may be an expression. The notation for a reference to an expression is distinguished from the notation for an invocation by not having following parentheses.

```
expr addOne : UnaryFunction {
  x istype Integer? (x as Integer) + 1: 0
}
feature two = apply(addOne, 1); // "addOne" is a reference to expr addOne
```

Rather than declaring a named expression in order to pass it as an argument, an *expression body* may be used directly as a base expression. In this case, any parameters must be declared as features with direction

within the expression body (see [7.4.8.3](#)). Such body expressions are particularly useful when used for the second argument of a function operation expression (see [7.4.9.3](#)).

```
feature two =
  apply({in x; x istype Integer? (x as Integer) + 1: 0}, 1);
feature incrementedValues =
  values -> collect {in x: Number; x + 1};
```

- A *metadata access expression* is represented by suffixing the qualified name of any kind of element with the notation `.metadata`. This is a *reflective* expression that evaluates to the sequence of metadata features associated with the named element in the model itself, as instances of their respective metaclasses (see [7.4.13](#) on metadata and metaclasses). In addition, the last value in the sequence is an instance of the metaclass for the named element from the *KerML* reflective abstract syntax model (see [9.2.17](#)), representing its instantiation as a model element.

```
metaclass SecurityAnnotation;
class SecureSystem {
  metadata SecurityAnnotation;
}

// Two values: an instance of SecurityAnnotation
// and an instance of type KerML::Class.
feature sysMetadata = SecureSystem.metadata;
```

7.4.9.5 Literal Expressions

A *literal expression* is represented by giving a lexical literal for the value of the expression.

- A *literal Boolean* is represented by either of the keywords `true` or `false`.
- A *literal string* is represented by a lexical string value surrounded by double quotes `"",` as specified in [8.2.2.5](#).

```
"This is a string literal."
```

- A *literal integer* is represented by a lexical decimal value as specified in [8.2.2.4](#). Note that notation is only provided for non-negative integers (i.e., natural numbers). Negative integers can be represented by applying the unary negation operator `-` (see [7.4.9.2](#)) to an unsigned decimal literal.

```
0
1234
```

- A *literal rational* is represented with a syntax constructed from lexical decimal values and exponential values (see [8.2.2.4](#)). The full rational number notation allows for a literal with a decimal point, with or without an exponential part, as well as an exponential value without a decimal point.

```
3.14
.5
2.5E-10
1E+3
```

- A *literal infinity* is represented by the symbol `*`.

7.4.10 Interactions

7.4.10.1 Interactions Overview

Metamodel references:

- *Concrete syntax*, [8.2.5.9](#)
- *Abstract syntax*, [8.3.4.9](#)
- *Semantics*, [8.4.3.10](#)

Interactions are behaviors that are also associations (see [7.4.7](#) and [7.4.5](#), respectively), classifying performances that are also links between occurrences (see [9.2.3](#) through [9.2.6](#)). They specify how the linked participants affect each other and collaborate.

Transfers are interactions between two participants (see [9.2.7](#)). They specify when things provided by one occurrence (via its output features) are accepted by another (via input features).

Item flows are steps that are also binary connectors (see [7.4.7](#) and [7.4.6](#), respectively), whose values are transfers. An item flow ensures that values from a nested output feature of the source feature will fill into a nested input feature of the target feature. *Succession item flows* are item flows that are also successions (see [7.4.6](#)). They identify transfers that happen after their source (that is, after the end of the occurrence that provides the things being transferred) and before their target (that is, before the start of the occurrence accepting those things).

7.4.10.2 Interaction Declaration

An interaction is declared as a behavior (see [7.4.7](#)), using the keyword **interaction**. If no owned subclassification is explicitly given for the interaction, then it is implicitly given default subclassifications to *both* the behavior Performance from the Performances library model (see [9.2.6](#)) and the association BinaryLink or the association Link from the Links library model (see [9.2.3](#)), depending on whether it is a binary interaction or not.

As a kind of behavior, if the interaction has owned subclassifications whose superclasses are behaviors, then the rules related to their parameters are the same as for any subclassifier behavior (see [7.4.7](#)). As a kind of association, the body of an interaction must declare at least two association ends. If the interaction has owned subclassifications whose superclassifiers are associations, the rules related to their association ends are the same as for any association that is a subclassifier (see [7.4.5](#)).

```
interaction Authorization {
  end feature client[*] : Computer;
  end feature server[*] : Computer;
  composite step login;
  composite step authorize;
  composite succession login then authorize;
}
```

7.4.10.3 Item Flow Declaration

An item flow declaration is syntactically similar to a binary connector declaration (see [7.4.6](#)), using the keyword **flow**, or **succession flow** for a succession item flow. If no owned subsetting or owned redefinition is explicitly given, then the item flow is implicitly given a default subsetting to the item flow transfers from the Transfers model library (see [9.2.7](#)), or to the succession item flow transfersBefore, if a succession item flow is being declared. If an item flow has owned specializations (including all feature typings, subsettings, and redefinitions) whose general type is a behavior or a step, then the rules for the redefinition of the parameters of those behaviors and steps are the same as for the redefinition of the parameters of general behavior or step by a specializing step (see [7.4.7.3](#)).

Unlike a regular binary connector declaration, though, an item flow declaration does not directly specify the related features for the item flow. Instead, the declaration gives the *source output feature* for the transfer after the keyword **from** and the *target input Feature* for the transfer after the keyword **to**. The related features are then determined as the owning features of the features given in the item flow declaration. It is these related features that are constrained to have a common context with the item flow (see [7.4.6](#)), not the features actually given in the declaration.

```

struct Vehicle {
    composite feature fuelTank[1] {
        out feature fuelOut[1] : Fuel;
    }
    composite feature engine {
        in feature fuelIn[1] : Fuel;
    }
    // The item flow actually connects the fuelTank to the engine.
    // The transfer moves Fuel from fuelOut to fuelIn.
    flow fuelFlow from fuelTank.fuelOut to engine.fuelIn;
}

```

The source output and target input features of an item flow can also be specified using feature chains (see [7.3.4.6](#)). In this case, the related features are determined as the features identified by the chains, excluding the last feature. This is particularly useful when the desired related features are inherited features.

```

struct Vehicle {
    composite feature fuelTank[1] {
        out feature fuelOut[1] : Fuel;
    }
    composite feature engine[1] {
        in feature fuelIn[1] : Fuel;
    }
}

feature vehicle : Vehicle {
    // The item flow actually connects the inherited fuelTank
    // feature to the inherited engine feature.
    flow fuelFlow from fuelTank.fuelOut to engine.fuelIn;
}

```

An item flow declaration can also include an explicit declaration of the type and/or multiplicity of the items that are flowing, after the keyword **of**. This asserts that any items transferred by the item flow have the declared type. In the absence of an item declaration, any values may flow across the item flow, consistent with the types of the source output and target input features.

```

flow of flowingFuel : Fuel from fuelTank.fuelOut to engine.fuelIn;

```

If no feature declaration or item declaration details are included in an item flow declaration, then the keyword **from** may also be omitted.

```

flow fuelTank.fuelOut to engine.fuelIn;

```

Note. Item flow are also commonly used to move data from the output parameters of one step to the input parameters of another step.

```

behavior TakePicture {
    composite step focus : Focus { out image[1] : Image; }
    composite step shoot : Shoot { in image[1] : Image; }
    // The use of a succession item flow means that focus must complete before
    // the image is transferred, after which shoot can begin.
    succession flow focus.image to shoot.image;
}

```

7.4.11 Feature Values

Metamodel references:

- *Concrete syntax*, [8.2.5.10](#)
- *Abstract syntax*, [8.3.4.10](#)
- *Semantics*, [8.4.3.11](#)

A *feature value* is a membership relationship (see [7.2.4](#)) between an owning feature and a *value expression*, whose result provides the value of the feature. The value is specified as either a *bound value* or an *initial value*, and as either a *concrete value* or a *default value*. A feature can have at most one feature value.

A concrete, bound feature value is declared using the symbol `=` followed by a representation of the value expression using the concrete syntax described in [7.4.9](#). This notation is appended to the declaration of the owning feature of the feature value.

```
feature monthsInYear : Natural = 12;
struct TestRecord {
  feature scores[1..*] : Integer;
  derived feature averageScore[1] : Rational = sum(scores)/size(scores);
}
```

Features that have a feature value of this form implicitly have a nested binding connector (see [7.4.6](#)) between the feature and the result of the value expression.

Note. The semantics of binding mean that such a feature value asserts that a feature is *equivalent* to the result of the value expression. To highlight this, a feature with such a feature value can be flagged as **derived** (though this is not required, nor is it required that the value of a **derived** feature be computed using a feature value – see also [7.3.4.2](#)).

A concrete, initial feature value is declared as above but using the symbol `:=` instead of `=`.

```
feature count[1] : Natural := 0;
```

In this case, the feature also has an implicit nested step typed by a `FeatureWritePerformance` (see [9.2.8.2.8](#)) used to initialize the feature to the result of the value expression. Unlike in the case of a bound value, an initial value may be changed using subsequent `FeatureWritePerformances`.

A default feature value is declared similarly to the above, but with the keyword **default** preceding the symbol `=` or `:=`, depending on whether it is bound or initial. However, for a default, bound value, the symbol `=` may be elided.

```
struct Vehicle {
  feature mass[1] : Real default 1500.0;
  feature engine[1] : Engine default := standardEngine;
}
struct TestWithCutoff :> TestRecord {
  feature cutoff[1] : Rational default = 0.75 * averageScore;
}
```

For a default value, no binding connector or initialization step is added to the feature declaration.

A feature value can be included with the following kinds of feature declaration:

- Feature (see [7.3.4.2](#))
- Step (see [7.4.7.3](#))
- Expression (see [7.4.8.3](#))
- Boolean expression and invariant (see [7.4.8.5](#))

```
behavior ProvidePower {
  in cmd[1] : Command;
  out wheelTorque[1] : Torque;
```

```

    composite step generate : GenerateTorque {
        in cmd = ProvidePower::cmd;
        out generatedTorque;
    }
    composite step apply : ApplyTorque {
        in generatedTorque = generate.generatedTorque;
        out appliedTorque = ProvidePower::wheelTorque;
    }
}

```

7.4.12 Multiplicities

Metamodel references:

- *Concrete syntax*, [8.2.5.11](#)
- *Abstract syntax*, [8.3.4.11](#)
- *Semantics*, [8.4.3.12](#)

Multiplicity is defined in the Core layer as a feature for specifying cardinalities (number of instances) of a type by enumerating all numbers the cardinality might be (see [7.3.2.2](#)). The Kernel layer provides a specific way to do this by specifying a *range* of cardinalities. A multiplicity range has *lower bound* and *upper bound* expressions that are evaluated to determine the lowest and highest cardinalities, with both expression evaluating to natural numbers (that is, of type `Natural` from the `ScalarValues` library model, see [9.3.2](#)). An upper bound value of `*` (infinity) means that the cardinality includes all numbers greater than or equal to the lower bound value.

A multiplicity range is written in the form `[lowerBound..upperBound]`, where each of *lowerBound* and *upperBound* is either a literal expression or a feature reference expression represented in the notation described in [7.4.9](#). Literal expressions can be used to specify a multiplicity range with fixed lower and/or upper bounds. If the result of the *lowerBound* expression is `*`, then the meaning of the multiplicity range is not defined.

A multiplicity range can also be written without the lower bound (or `..`). In this case, the result of the single expression is used as both the lower and upper bound of the range, unless the result is the infinite value `*`, in which case the lower bound is taken to be 0.

Multiplicity ranges are can be used in the declaration of types, particularly features (see [7.3.4.2](#)).

```

struct Automobile {
    feature n : Positive[1];
    composite feature wheels : Wheel[n]; // Equivalent to [n..n] for n < *
    feature driveWheels[2..n] subsets wheels;
}
feature autoCollection : Automobile[*]; // Equivalent to [0..*]

```

It is also possible to declared a multiplicity feature using the keyword **multiplicity**, optionally followed by a short name and/or name, and including either a multiplicity range or a subsetting of another multiplicity. A multiplicity declaration is a kind of feature declaration, and it can optionally include a body as in a generic feature declaration (see [7.3.4.2](#)).

```

multiplicity zeroOrMore [0..*];
multiplicity m subsets zeroOrMore;

```

If a multiplicity feature is declared in the body of a type, then then this becomes be the multiplicity of the type. A type can have at most one multiplicity, whether this is given in the declaration or the body of the type.

```

feature driveWheels subsets wheels {
    multiplicity [2..n];
}
feature autoCollection {
    multiplicity subsets zeroOrMore;
}

```

7.4.13 Metadata

Metamodel references:

- *Concrete syntax*, [8.2.5.12](#)
- *Abstract syntax*, [8.3.4.12](#)
- *Semantics*, [8.4.3.13](#)

Metadata is additional information on elements of a model that does not have any instance-level semantics (in the sense described in Core Overview). In general, metadata is specified in annotating elements (including comments and textual representations) attached to annotated elements (see [7.2.3](#)). A *metadata feature* is a kind of annotating element that allows for the definition of structured metadata with modeler-specified features. This may be used, for example, to add tool-specific information to a model that can be relevant to the function of various kinds of tooling that may use or process a model, or domain-specific information relevant to a certain project or organization.

A metadata feature is syntactically a feature (see [7.3.4](#)) that is typed by a single *metaclass*, which is a kind of structure (see [7.4.4](#)), with implicit multiplicity 1..1. If the metaclass has no features, then the metadata feature simply acts as a user-defined syntactic tag on the annotated element. If the metaclass has features, then the metadata feature must have nested features that redefine each of the features of its type, binding them to the results of model-level evaluable expressions (see [7.4.9](#)), which provide the values of the specified attributive metadata for the annotated element.

A metaclass is declared like a structure (see [7.4.4](#)), but using the keyword **metaclass**. If no owned subclassification is explicitly given for the metaclass, then it is implicitly given a default subclassification to the metaclass `Metaobject` from the `Metaobjects` library model (see [9.2.16](#)).

```

metaclass SecurityRelated;

metaclass ApprovalAnnotation {
    feature approved[1] : Boolean;
    feature approver[1] : String;
}

```

A metadata feature is declared using the keyword **metadata** (or the symbol @), optionally followed by a short name and/or name, followed by the keyword **typed by** (or the symbol :) and the qualified name of exactly one metaclass. If no short name or name is given, then the keyword **typed by** (or the symbol :) may also be omitted. One or more annotated elements are then identified for the metadata feature after the keyword **about**, indicating that the metadata feature has annotation relationships to each of the identified elements (see [7.2.3](#)).

```

metadata securityDesignAnnotation : SecurityRelated about SecurityDesign;

```

Any owned feature of a metadata feature must be a redefinition of a feature of the typing metaclass, with a feature value binding it to the result of a model-level evaluable expressions (see [7.4.9](#)). The owned features of a metadata feature must always have the same names as the names of the typing metaclass, so the shorthand prefix redefines notation (see [7.3.4.5](#)) is always used.

```

metadata ApprovalAnnotation about Design {
    feature redefines approved = true;
}

```

```

    feature redefines approver = "John Smith";
}

```

The keywords **feature** and/or **redefines** (or the equivalent symbol :>>) may be omitted in the declaration of a metadata feature.

```

metadata ApprovalAnnotation about Design {
    approved = true;
    approver = "John Smith";
}

```

If the metadata feature is an owned member of a namespace (see [7.2.4](#)), then the explicit identification of annotated elements can be omitted, in which case the annotated element is implicitly the containing namespace (see [7.2.3](#)).

```

class Design {
    // This metadata feature is implicitly about the class Design.
    @ApprovalAnnotation {
        approved = true;
        approver = "John Smith";
    }
}

```

If a metadata feature has one or more concrete features that directly or indirectly subset `Metaobject::annotatedElement`, then, for each annotated element of the metadata feature, there must be at least one such feature for which the metaclass of the annotated element conforms to all the types of the feature (which must all be specializations of the reflective metaclass `KerML::Element`, see [9.2.17](#)).

```

metaclass Command {
    // A metadata feature of this metaclass may annotate
    // a behavior or a step.
    subsets annotatedElement : KerML::Behavior;
    subsets annotatedElement : KerML::Step;
}

behavior Save specializes UserAction {
    @Command; // This is valid.
    redefine step doAction {
        @Command; // This is valid.
    }
}

struct Options {
    @Command; // This is INVALID.
}

```

If the metaclass of a metadata feature is a direct or indirect specialization of `Metaobjects::SemanticMetadata` (see [9.2.16.2.3](#)), then the annotated elements must all be types and the feature `SemanticMetadata::baseType` must be bound to a value of type `KerML::Type` (see [9.2.17](#)). Each type annotated by such semantic metadata has an implicit specialization added to a type determined from the `baseType` value as follows:

- If the annotated type is neither a classifier nor a feature, then the annotated type implicitly specializes the `baseType`.
- If the annotated type is a classifier and the `baseType` is a classifier, then annotated classifier implicitly subclassifies the `baseType`.
- If the annotated type is a classifier and the `baseType` is a feature, then the annotated classifier implicitly subclassifies each type of the `baseType`.

- If the annotated type is a feature and the `baseType` is a feature, then the annotated feature shall implicitly subset the `baseType`.
- In all other cases, no implicit specialization is added.

When evaluated in a model-level evaluable expression, the cast operator **as** (see [7.4.9.2](#)) may be used to cast a feature referenced as its first operand to the actual reflective metaclass value for this feature, which may then be bound to the `baseType` feature of `SemanticMetadata`.

```
behavior UserAction;
step userActions : UserAction[*] nonunique;

metaclass Command specializes SemanticMetadata {
    // The cast operation "userAction as KerML::Feature" has
    // type KerML::Feature, which conforms to the type Type of
    // baseType. Since userActions is a step, the expression
    // evaluates at model level to a value of type KerML::Step.
    baseType = userActions as KerML::Feature;
}

// Save implicitly subclassifies UserAction (which is the
// type of userActions).
behavior Save {
    @Command;
}

// previousAction implicitly subsets userActions.
step previousAction[1] {
    @Command;
}
```

Release Note. This use of the cast operator for "meta-casting" is a workaround until a more general notation for reflection is introduced.

7.4.14 Packages

Metamodel references:

- *Concrete syntax*, [8.2.5.13](#)
- *Abstract syntax*, [8.3.4.13](#)
- *Semantics*, [8.4.3.14](#)

Packages are namespaces used to group elements, without any instance-level semantics (as opposed to types, which are namespaces with classification semantics, see [7.3.2](#)). A package is notated like a generic namespace (see [7.2.4.2](#)), but using the keyword **package** instead of **namespace**.

```
package AddressBooks {
    datatype Entry {
        feature name[1]: String;
        feature address[1]: String;
    }
    struct AddressBook {
        composite feature entries[*]: Entry;
    }
}
```

A package may also have one or more *filter conditions* for selecting a subset of its imported memberships. A filter condition is a Boolean-valued, model-level evaluable expression (see [7.4.9](#)) that must evaluate to true for any

imported member of the package. These are notated using the keyword **filter** followed by the filter condition expression.

```
package Annotations {
  datatype ApprovalAnnotation {
    feature approved[1] : Boolean;
    feature approver[1] : String;
    feature level[1] : Natural;
  }
  ...
}

package DesignModel {
  import Annotations::*;
  struct System {
    @ApprovalAnnotation {
      approved = true;
      approver = "John Smith";
      level = 2;
    }
  }
  ...
}

package UpperLevelApprovals {
  // This package imports all direct or indirect members
  // of the DesignModel package that have been approved
  // at a level greater than 1.
  import DesignModel::*;
  filter @Annotations::ApprovalAnnotation and
    Annotations::ApprovalAnnotation::approved and
    Annotations::ApprovalAnnotation::level > 1;
}
```

A filter condition can operate on metadata on elements (see [7.4.13](#)), such as checking for a metadata feature of a particular type or accessing the values of the features of a metadata feature. For the purposes of filter condition expressions, every element is also considered to have an implicit metadata feature that is typed by a metaclass from the reflective library model of the KerML abstract syntax (see [9.2.17](#)). This enables filter conditions to test for the abstract syntax metaclass of an element and to access the values of abstract syntax meta-attributes.

Note that a filter condition in a package will filter *all* imports of that Package. That is why full qualification is used for `Annotations::ApprovalAnnotation` in the example above, since imported elements of the `Annotations` package would be filtered out by the very filter condition in which the elements are intended to be used. This may be avoided by combining one or more filter conditions with a specific import, using the filtered import notation described in [7.2.4.4](#)).

```
package UpperLevelApprovals {
  // Recursively import all annotation data types and all
  // features of those types.
  import Annotations::*;

  // The filter condition for this import applies only to
  // elements imported from the DesignModel package.
  import DesignModel::*[@ApprovalAnnotation and approved and level > 1];
}
```

The `KerML` library package contains a complete model of the KerML abstract syntax represented in KerML itself. When a filter condition is evaluated on an element, abstract syntax metadata for the element can be tested as if the

element had an implicit metadata feature typed by the type from the `KerML` package corresponding to the metaclass of the element.

```
package PackageApprovals {
  import Annotations::*;
  import KerML::*;

  // This imports all structures from the DesignModel that have
  // at least one owned feature and have been marked as approved.
  import DesignModel::*[@Structure and
                        Structure::ownedFeature != null and
                        @ApprovalAnnotation and
                        ApprovalAnnotation::approved];
}
```

In general, a *library package* is a package that is expected to be commonly available and reused across many user models. A package can be explicitly identified as a library package using the keyword **library**. This allows tooling to identify any element contained directly in a library package as being a *library element* from that specific library package.

```
library package AddressBooks {
  ...
}
```

The *standard library packages* in the Kernel Model Libraries (see [Clause 9](#)) are further identified using the keyword **standard**. However, only library packages from the Kernel Model Libraries, or from other recognized standard model libraries, should be identified as standard library packages.

8 Metamodel

8.1 Metamodel Overview

This clause presents the normative specification of the *metamodel* for KerML, which includes the KerML concrete syntax, abstract syntax and semantics (though the complete semantics depends on the *model library* specified in [Clause 9](#)).

1. *Concrete syntax* specifies how the language appears to modelers. Modelers construct and review models using a textual notation that conforms to the concrete syntax specification (see [8.2](#)).
2. *Abstract syntax* specifies linguistic terms and relations between them (as opposed to library model terms), which may be expressed in the concrete syntax (see [8.3](#)). The abstract syntax omits aspects of the concrete syntax, such as delimiters and formatting, that do not affect what modelers are trying to expression. A concrete syntax representation of a model can be *parsed* into an abstract syntax representation, or an abstract syntax representation can be *serialized* into the concrete syntax notation. The mapping between the concrete and abstract syntax is given as part of the *grammar* specification for the concrete syntax (see [8.2.1](#) on the conventions for this).
3. *Semantics* specifies the interpretation of models as representations of or specifications for modeled systems (see [8.4](#)). The semantics for a *core* subset of the abstract syntax are specified using mathematical logic. Semantics for the rest of KerML are specified by mapping complicated abstract syntax constructs into equivalent models using the core subset, and, in particular, introducing *implicit* relationships to required elements from the KerML model library (see [8.4.1](#) on this approach).

As described in 6.1, KerML is divided into Root, Core and Kernel Layers, which cut across each of the above facets. The subclauses on Concrete Syntax ([8.2](#)) and Abstract Syntax ([8.3](#)) are each further subdivided into subclauses on the three layers, and then, within each layer, into subclauses following the package structure of the abstract syntax. Subclause [8.4](#) on Semantics only covers the Core and Kernel Layers, because Root Layer constructs do not have model-level semantics.

Throughout this clause, the names of elements from the KerML abstract syntax model appear in a "code" font. Further:

1. Names of metaclasses appear exactly as in the abstract syntax, including capitalization, except possibly with added pluralization. When used as English common nouns, e.g., "an `Element`", "multiple `FeatureTypings`", they refer to instances of the metaclass. E.g., "Elements can own other Elements" refers to instances of the metaclass `Element` that reside in models. This can be modified with the term "metaclass" as necessary to refer to the metaclass itself instead of its instances, e.g., "The `Element` metaclass is contained in the `Elements` package."
2. Names of properties of metaclasses, when used as English common nouns, e.g., "an `ownedRelatedElement`", "multiple `featuringTypes`", refer to values of the properties. This can be modified using the term "metaproperty" as necessary to refer to the metaproperty itself instead of its values, e.g., "The `ownedRelatedElement` metaproperty is contained in the `Elements` package."

Similar stylistic conventions apply to text about KerML models, except that an "*italic code*" front is used.

1. Convention 1 above applies to KerML *Types* (e.g., *Performance*), using "type" (or a more specialized term) instead of "metaclass" (e.g., "the *Performance* behavior").
2. Convention 2 above applies to KerML *Features* (e.g., *performances*), using "feature" (or a more specialized term) instead of "metaproperty" (e.g., "the *performances* step").

8.2 Concrete Syntax

8.2.1 Concrete Syntax Overview

The concrete syntax for KerML is a textual notation that can be used to express or construct an abstract syntax representation of a model. The *lexical structure* of the KerML textual notation defines how the string of characters in a text is divided into a set of *lexical elements*. Such lexical elements can be categorized as *whitespace*, *notes*, or *tokens*. Only tokens are significant for the mapping of the notation to the abstract syntax. The *syntactic structure* of the KerML textual notation defines how lexical tokens are grouped and mapped to an abstract syntax representation of a model.

Both the lexical syntactic structures are specified as *grammars* consisting of productions for lexical elements or non-terminal syntactic elements (see [Table 1](#)). The body of a production is specified using an Extended Backus Naur Form (EBNF) notation (see [Table 2](#)). The syntactic grammar includes further notations to describe how the concrete syntax maps to the abstract syntax element being synthesized (see [Table 3](#)).

Subclause [8.2.2](#) presents the lexical grammar for KerML. Subclauses [8.2.3](#), [8.2.3](#), and [8.2.5](#) then each present the portion of the syntactic grammar for KerML covering the Root, Core and Kernel Layers of KerML (see 6.1). Each of these subclauses is further divided into subclauses corresponding to each of the packages from the abstract syntax model (see [8.3](#)).

Table 1. Grammar Production Definitions

LEXICAL_ELEMENT = ...	Define a production for the LEXICAL_ELEMENT.
NonterminalElement : AbstractSyntaxElement = ...	Define a production for the NonterminalElement that synthesizes the AbstractSyntaxElement. If the NonterminalElement has the same name as the AbstractSyntaxElement, then ": AbstractSyntaxElement" may be omitted.

Table 2. EBNF Notation Conventions

Lexical element	LEXICAL_ELEMENT
Terminal element	'terminal'
Non-terminal element	NonterminalElement
Sequential elements	Element1 Element2
Alternative elements	Element1 Element2
Optional elements (zero or one)	Element ?
Repeated elements (zero or more)	Element *
Repeated elements (one or more)	Element +
Grouping	(Elements ...)

Table 3. Abstract Syntax Synthesis Notation

Property assignment	p = Element	Assign the result of parsing the concrete syntax Element to abstract syntax property p.
----------------------------	-------------	---

List property construction	<code>p += Element</code>	Add the result of parsing the concrete syntax <code>Element</code> to the abstract syntax list property <code>p</code> .
Boolean property assignment	<code>p ?= Element</code>	If the concrete syntax <code>Element</code> is parsed, then set the abstract Boolean property <code>p</code> to true.
Non-parsing assignment	<pre>{ p = value } { p += value }</pre>	Assign (or add) the given <code>value</code> to the abstract syntax property <code>p</code> , without parsing any input. The <code>value</code> may be a literal or a reference to another abstract syntax property. The symbol "this" refers to the element being synthesized.
Name resolution	<code>[QualifiedName]</code>	Parse a <code>QualifiedName</code> , then resolve that name to an <code>Element</code> reference (see 8.2.3.3.4) for use as a value in an assignment as above.

8.2.2 Lexical Structure

8.2.2.1 Line Terminators and White Space

```

LINE_TERMINATOR =
    implementation defined character sequence
LINE_TEXT =
    character sequence excluding LINE_TERMINATORS
WHITE_SPACE =
    space | tab | form_feed | LINE_TERMINATOR

```

Notes.

1. Notation text is divided up into lines separated by *line terminators*. A line terminator may be a single character (such as a line feed) or a sequence of characters (such as a carriage return/line feed combination). This specification does not require any specific encoding for a line terminator, but any encoding used must be consistent throughout any specific input text.
2. Any characters in text line that are not a part of the line terminator are referred to as *line text*.
3. A *white space* character is a space, tab, form feed or line terminator. Any contiguous sequence of white space characters can be used to separate tokens that would otherwise be considered to be part of a single

token. It is otherwise ignored, with the single exception that a line terminator is used to mark the end of a single-line note (see [8.2.2.2](#)).

8.2.2.2 Notes and Comments

```
SINGLE_LINE_NOTE =  
    '/' '/' LINE_TEXT  
  
MULTILINE_NOTE =  
    '/' '/' '*' COMMENT_TEXT '*' '/'  
  
REGULAR_COMMENT =  
    '/' '*' COMMENT_TEXT '*' '/'  
  
COMMENT_TEXT =  
    ( COMMENT_LINE_TEXT | LINE_TERMINATOR ) *  
  
COMMENT_LINE_TEXT =  
    LINE_TEXT excluding the sequence '*' '/'
```

8.2.2.3 Names

```
NAME =  
    BASIC_NAME | UNRESTRICTED_NAME  
  
BASIC_NAME =  
    BASIC_INITIAL_CHARACTER BASIC_NAME_CHARACTER *  
  
UNRESTRICTED_NAME =  
    single_quote ( NAME_CHARACTER | ESCAPE_SEQUENCE ) * single_quote  
    (see Note 1)  
  
BASIC_INITIAL_CHARACTER =  
    ALPHABETIC_CHARACTER | '_'  
  
BASIC_NAME_CHARACTER =  
    BASIC_INITIAL_CHARACTER | DECIMAL_DIGIT  
  
ALPHABETIC_CHARACTER =  
    any character 'a' through 'z' or 'A' through 'Z'  
  
DECIMAL_DIGIT =  
    any character '0' through '9'  
  
NAME_CHARACTER =  
    any printable character other than backslash or single_quote  
  
ESCAPE_SEQUENCE =  
    see Note 2
```

Notes.

1. The `single_quote` character is `'`. The name represented by an `UNRESTRICTED_NAME` shall consist of the characters *within* the single quotes, with escape characters resolved as described below. The surrounding single quote characters are *not* part of the represented name.
2. An `ESCAPE_SEQUENCE` is a sequence of two text characters starting with a backslash that actually denotes only a single character, except for the newline escape sequence, which represents however many characters is necessary to represent an end of line in a specific implementation (see also [8.2.2.1](#)). [Table 4](#) shows the meaning of the allowed escape sequences. The `ESCAPE_SEQUENCES` in an `UNRESTRICTED_NAME` shall be replaced by the characters specified as their meanings in the actual represented name.

Table 4. Escape Sequences

Escape Sequence	Meaning
<code>\'</code>	Single Quote
<code>\"</code>	Double Quote
<code>\b</code>	Backspace
<code>\f</code>	Form Feed
<code>\t</code>	Tab
<code>\n</code>	Line Terminator
<code>\\</code>	Backslash

8.2.2.4 Numeric Values

```
DECIMAL_VALUE =  
    DECIMAL_DIGIT+  
  
EXPONENTIAL_VALUE =  
    DECIMAL_VALUE ('e' | 'E') ('+' | '-')? DECIMAL_VALUE
```

Notes.

1. A `DECIMAL_VALUE` may specify a natural literal, or it may be part of the specification of a real literal (see [8.2.5.8.4](#)). Note that a `DECIMAL_VALUE` does not include a sign, because negating a literal is an operator in the KerML Expression syntax.
2. An `EXPONENTIAL_VALUE` may be used in the specification of a real literal (see [8.2.5.8.4](#)). Note that a decimal point and fractional part are not included in the lexical structure of an exponential value. They are handled as part of the syntax of real literals.

8.2.2.5 String Value

```
STRING_VALUE =  
    ' ' ( STRING_CHARACTER | ESCAPE_SEQUENCE ) * ' '  
  
STRING_CHARACTER =  
    any printable character other than backslash or ' '
```

Notes.

1. ESCAPE_SEQUENCE is specified in [8.2.2.3](#).

8.2.2.6 Reserved Words

A *reserved keyword* is a token that has the lexical structure of a basic name but cannot actually be used as a basic name. The following keywords are so reserved in KerML.

**about abstract alias all and as assign assoc behavior binding bool by chains
class classifier comment composite conjugate conjugates conjugation connector
datatype default derived differences disjoining disjoint doc element else end
expr false feature featured featuring filter first flow for from function
hastype if intersects implies import in inout interaction inv inverse
inverting istype language member metaclass metadata multiplicity namespace
nonunique not null of or ordered out package portion predicate private
protected public readonly references redefines redefinition relationship rep
return specialization specializes step struct subclassifier subset subsets
subtype succession then to true type typed typing unions xor**

Tooling for the KerML textual notation should generally highlight keywords relative to other text, for example by using boldface and/or distinctive coloring. However, while keywords are shown in boldface in this specification, the specification does not require any specific highlighting (or any highlighting at all), and KerML textual notation documents are expected to be interchanged as plain text (see also Clause 10 on Model Interchange).

8.2.2.7 Symbols

The *symbols* shown below are non-name tokens composed entirely of characters that are not alphanumeric. In some cases these symbols have no meaning themselves, but are used to allow unambiguous separation between other tokens that do have meaning. In other cases, they are distinguished notations in the KerML Expression sublanguage (see [8.2.5.8](#)) that map to particular library Functions or symbolic shorthand for meaningful relationships.

```
( ) { } [ ] ; , != % & * ** + - -> .. / : ::  
> :>> < <= = := == => > >= ? ?? @ ^ | ~
```

Some symbols are made of multiple characters that may themselves individually be valid symbol tokens. Nevertheless, a multi-symbol token is not considered a combination of the individual symbol tokens. For example, “: :” is considered a single token, not a combination of two “:” tokens. Input characters shall be grouped from left to right to form the longest possible sequence of characters to be grouped into a single token. So “a : : b” would be analyzed into four tokens: “a”, “: :”, “:” and “b” (which, as it turns out, is not a valid sequence of tokens in the KerML textual concrete syntax).

Certain keywords in the concrete syntax have an equivalent symbolic representation. For convenience, the concrete syntax grammar uses the following special lexical terminals, which match either the symbol or the corresponding keyword.


```
TYPED_BY      = ':' | 'typed' 'by'
SPECIALIZES  = ':>' | 'specializes'
SUBSETS      = ':>' | 'subsets'
REFERENCES   = '::>' | 'references'
REDEFINES    = ':>>' | 'redefines'
CONJUGATES   = '~' | 'conjugates'
```

8.2.3 Root Concrete Syntax

8.2.3.1 Elements and Relationships Concrete Syntax

8.2.3.1.1 Elements

```
Element =
    'element' Identification ElementBody

Identification : Element =
    ( '<' shortName = NAME '>' )? ( name = NAME )?

ElementBody : Element =
    ';' | '{' OwnedElement* '}'

OwnedElement : Element =
    ownedRelationship += OwnedRelationship
    { ownedRelationship.source = this }
    | ownedRelationship += OwnedAnnotation
```

8.2.3.1.2 Relationships

```
Relationship =
  'relationship' Identification
  RelationshipRelatedElements
  RelationshipBody

OwnedRelationship : Relationship =
  'relationship' Identification
  ( 'to' RelationshipTargetList )?
  RelationshipBody

RelationshipRelatedElements : Relationship =
  ( 'from' RelationshipSourceList )?
  ( 'to' RelationshipTargetList )?

RelationshipSourceList : Relationship =
  RelationshipSource ( ',' RelationshipSource )*

RelationshipSource : Relationship =
  source += [QualifiedName]

RelationshipTargetList : Relationship =
  RelationshipTarget ( ',' RelationshipTarget )*

RelationshipTarget : Relationship =
  target += [QualifiedName]

RelationshipBody : Relationship =
  ';' | '{' RelationshipOwnedElement* '}'

RelationshipOwnedElement : Relationship =
  ownedRelatedElement += OwnedRelatedElement
  | ownedRelationship += OwnedAnnotation

OwnedRelatedElement : Element =
  NonFeatureElement | FeatureElement

OwnedRelatedRelationship : Relationship =
  'relationship' Identification
  RelationshipRelatedElements
  RelationshipBody
```

8.2.3.2 Annotations Concrete Syntax

8.2.3.2.1 Annotations

```
Annotation =
    annotatedElement = [QualifiedName]

OwnedAnnotation : Annotation =
    annotatingElement = AnnotatingElement
    { ownedRelatedElement += annotatingElement }

AnnotatingElement =
    Comment
    | Documentation
    | TextualRepresentation
    | MetadataFeature
```

8.2.3.2.2 Comments and Documentation

```
Comment =
    'comment' Identification
    ( 'about' annotation += Annotation
      { ownedRelationship += annotation }
      ( ',' annotation += Annotation
        { ownedRelationship += annotation } ) *
    ) ?
    body = REGULAR_COMMENT

Documentation =
    'doc' Identification
    body = REGULAR_COMMENT
```

Notes.

1. The text of a lexical REGULAR_COMMENT or PREFIX_COMMENT shall be processed as follows before it is included as the body of a Comment or Documentation:
 1. Remove the initial /* and final */ characters.
 2. Remove any white space immediately after the initial /*, up to and including the first line terminator (if any).
 3. On each subsequent line of the text:
 1. Strip initial white space other than line terminators.
 2. Then, if the first remaining character is "*", remove it.
 3. Then, if the first remaining character is now a space, remove it.
2. The body text of a Comment can include markup information (such as HTML), and a conforming tool may display such text as rendered according to the markup. However, marked up "rich text" for a Comment written using the KerML textual concrete syntax shall be stored in the Comment body in plain text including all mark up text, with all line terminators and white space included as entered, other than what is removed according to the rules above.

8.2.3.2.3 Textual Representation

```
TextualRepresentation =  
  ( 'rep' Identification )?  
  'language' language = STRING_VALUE  
  body = REGULAR_COMMENT
```

Notes.

1. The lexical text of a REGULAR_COMMENT shall be processed as specified in [8.2.3.2.2](#) for Comments before being included as the body of a TextualRepresentation.

8.2.3.3 Namespaces Concrete Syntax

8.2.3.3.1 Namespaces

```
Namespace =
    NamespaceDeclaration NamespaceBody

NamespaceDeclaration : Namespace =
    'namespace' Identification

NamespaceBody : Namespace =
    ';' | '{' NamespaceBodyElement* '}'

NamespaceBodyElement : Namespace =
    ownedRelationship += NamespaceMember
    | ownedRelationship += AliasMember
    | ownedRelationship += Import

MemberPrefix : Membership =
    ( visibility = VisibilityIndicator )?

VisibilityIndicator : VisibilityKind =
    'public' | 'private' | 'protected'

NamespaceMember : OwningMembership =
    NonFeatureMember
    | NamespaceFeatureMember

NonFeatureMember : OwningMembership =
    MemberPrefix
    ownedRelatedElement += MemberElement

NamespaceFeatureMember : Membership =
    MemberPrefix
    ownedRelatedElement += FeatureElement

AliasMember : Membership =
    MemberPrefix
    'alias' ( '<' memberShortName = NAME '>' )?
    ( memberName = NAME )?
    'for' memberElement = [Qualified Name]
    RelationshipBody

RootNamespace : Namespace =
    NamespaceBodyElement*
```

8.2.3.3.2 Imports

```
Import : Import =
  ( visibility = VisibilityIndicator )?
  'import' ( isImportAll ?= 'all' )?
  ( ImportedNamespace
    | ImportedFilterPackage )
  RelationshipBody

ImportedNamespace : Import =
  ( importedNamespace = [Qualified Name] '::' )?
  ( importedName = NAME | '*' )
  ( '::' isRecursive ?= '**' )?

ImportedFilterPackage : Import =
  importedNamespace = FilterPackage
  { ownedRelatedElement += importedNamespace }

FilterPackage : Package =
  ownedRelationship += FilterPackageImport
  ( ownedRelationship += FilterPackageMember )+

FilterPackageImport : Import =
  ImportedNamespace

FilterPackageMember : ElementFilterMembership =
  '[' condition = OwnedExpression ']'
  { visibility = 'private' }
```

8.2.3.3 Namespace Elements

```
MemberElement : Element =
    AnnotatingElement | NonFeatureElement

NonFeatureElement : Element =
    Element
    | Relationship
    | Namespace
    | Type
    | Classifier
    | DataType
    | Class
    | Structure
    | Metaclass
    | Association
    | AssociationStructure
    | Interaction
    | Behavior
    | Function
    | Predicate
    | Multiplicity
    | Package
    | LibraryPackage
    | Specialization
    | Conjugation
    | Subclassification
    | Disjoining
    | FeatureInverting
    | FeatureTyping
    | Subsetting
    | Redefinition
    | TypeFeaturing

FeatureElement : Feature =
    Feature
    | Step
    | Expression
    | BooleanExpression
    | Invariant
    | Connector
    | BindingConnector
    | Succession
    | ItemFlow
    | SuccessionItemFlow
```

8.2.3.3.4 Qualified Names and Name Resolution

```
QualifiedName =
    NAME ( '::' NAME )*
```

A qualified name is notated as a sequence of *segment names* separated by ":" punctuation. An *unqualified* name can be considered the degenerate case of a qualified name with a single segment name. A qualified name is used in the KerML textual concrete syntax to identify an Element that is being referred to in the representation of another

Element. A qualified name used in this way does not appear in the corresponding abstract syntax—instead, the abstract syntax representation contains an actual reference to the identified Element. *Name resolution* is the process of determining the Element that is identified by a qualified name.

Qualified name resolution uses Namespace memberships to map simple names to named Elements. Every Namespace other than a root Namespace is nested in a containing Namespace called its `owningNamespace`. A root Namespace has an implicit containing namespace known as its *global namespace*. The global namespace for a root Namespace includes all the visible Memberships of all other root Namespaces that are *available* to the first Namespace, which shall include at least all the KerML Model Libraries (see [Clause 9](#)). A conforming tool can provide means for making additional Namespaces available to a root Namespace, but this specification does not define any standard mechanism for doing so.

An Element is considered to be *directly contained* in a Namespace if it is an `ownedElement` of the Namespace or if it is indirectly owned by the Namespace without any other intervening Namespace (e.g., if the Element is an `ownedRelatedElement` of a Relationship that is not a Membership but is an `ownedMember` of the Namespace). A Namespace defines a mapping from names to Elements directly contained in the Namespace, known as the *local resolution* of those names.

1. For each Element that is directly contained in a Namespace, but is *not* a member of the Namespace, the `shortName` and `effectiveName` of the Element, if non-null, locally resolve to that Element.
2. For each membership of a Namespace, the `memberShortName` and `memberName` of the Membership, if non-null, locally resolve to the `memberElement` of the Membership.

Note. If the Namespace is well formed, then there can be at most one Element that locally resolves to any given name.

The *visible resolution* of a name restricts the memberships in the second step to those that are visible outside the Namespace. (Note that resolution of names in the first step above is not restricted by visibility.) The *visible* Memberships of a Namespace shall comprise the following:

- All `ownedMemberships` of the Namespace with `visibility = public`.
- All `importedMemberships` of the Namespace that are derived from Import Relationships with `visibility = public`.
- If the Namespace is a Type, then all `inheritedMemberships` of the Type with `visibility = public`.

In general, the *full resolution* of a simple name relative to a Namespace then proceeds as follows:

1. If the name locally resolves to an Element directly contained in the Namespace, then it fully resolves to that Element.
2. If there is no such Element, then:
 - If the Namespace is *not* a root Namespace, then the name resolution continues with the `owningNamespace` of the Namespace.
 - If the Namespace *is* a root Namespace, then the name resolution continues with the global namespace.

The resolution of a simple name in the global namespace proceeds as follows:

1. If there is a Membership in the global namespace that has a `shortMemberName` or `memberName` equal to the simple name, then the name resolves to the `memberElement` of that Membership.
2. If there is no such Membership, then the name has no resolution.

Note. It is possible that there will be more than one Membership that resolve a given simple name. In this case, one of these Memberships is chosen for the resolution of the name, but which one is chosen is not otherwise determined by this specification.

Implementation Note. The pilot implementation currently only resolves the `ownedMemberNames` of `OwningMemberships` in the global namespace. Short names and aliases are *not* resolved.

A qualified name is always used to identify an Element that is a `target` Element of some *context* Relationship. The *context* Namespace is the nearest Namespace that directly or indirectly owns that Relationship. The *local namespace* for resolving the qualified name is then determined as follows:

- If the context Relationship is *not* a Membership or an Import, then the local namespace is the context Namespace.
- If the context Relationship *is* a Membership or an Import, then
 - If the context Namespace is *not* a root Namespace, then the local namespace is the `owningNamespace` of the context Namespace.
 - If the context Namespace *is* a root Namespace, then the local namespace is the global namespace for the context Namespace.

Note. Membership and Import Relationships are treated as a special case in order to avoid possible infinite recursion in the name resolution process.

The resolution of a qualified name begins with the full resolution of its first segment name with respect to the local namespace for the qualified name. If the qualified name has only one segment name, then the qualified name resolves to the resolution of its first segment name. Otherwise, each segment name of the qualified name, other than the last, must resolve to a Namespace that is the visible resolution of the name relative to the Namespace identified by the previous segment. The qualified name then resolves to the resolution of its last segment name.

Note. In the concrete syntax grammar productions, the notation `[QualifiedName]` is used to signify that a `QualifiedName` shall be parsed, then that name shall be resolved into a reference to an Element, per the rules given in this subclause, and that reference shall be inserted into the abstract syntax as specified in the production, not the `QualifiedName` itself (see [8.2.1](#)).

8.2.4 Core Concrete Syntax

8.2.4.1 Types Concrete Syntax

8.2.4.1.1 Types

```
Type =
  ( isAbstract ?= 'abstract' )? 'type'
  TypeDeclaration TypeBody

TypeDeclaration : Type =
  ( isSufficient ?= 'all' )? Identification
  ( ownedRelationship += OwnedMultiplicity )?
  ( SpecializationPart | ConjugationPart )+
  TypeRelationshipPart*

SpecializationPart : Type =
  SPECIALIZES ownedRelationship += OwnedSpecialization
  ( ',' ownedRelationship += OwnedSpecialization )*

ConjugationPart : Type =
  CONJUGATES ownedRelationship += OwnedConjugation

TypeRelationshipPart : Type =
  DisjoiningPart
  | UnioningPart
  | IntersectingPart
  | DifferencingPart

DisjoiningPart : Type =
  'disjoint' 'from' ownedRelationship += OwnedDisjoining
  ( ',' ownedRelationship += OwnedDisjoining )*

UnioningPart : Type =
  'unions' ownedRelationship += Unioning
  ( ',' ownedRelationship += Unioning )*

IntersectingPart : Type =
  'intersects' ownedRelationship += Intersecting
  ( ',' ownedRelationship += Intersecting )*

DifferencingPart : Type =
  'differences' ownedRelationship += Differencing
  ( ',' ownedRelationship += Differencing )*

TypeBody : Type =
  ';' | '{' TypeBodyElement* '}'

TypeBodyElement : Type =
  ownedRelationship += NonFeatureMember
  | ownedRelationship += FeatureMember
  | ownedRelationship += AliasMember
  | ownedRelationship += Import
```

8.2.4.1.2 Specialization

```
Specialization =
  ( 'specialization' Identification )?
  'subtype' SpecificType
  SPECIALIZES GeneralType
  RelationshipBody

OwnedSpecialization : Specialization =
  GeneralType

SpecificType : Specialization :
  specific = [QualifiedName]
  | specific += OwnedFeatureChain
  { ownedRelatedElement += specific }

GeneralType : Specialization =
  general = [QualifiedName]
  | general += OwnedFeatureChain
  { ownedRelatedElement += general }
```

8.2.4.1.3 Conjugation

```
Conjugation =
  ( 'conjugation' Identification )?
  'conjugate'
  ( conjugatedType = [QualifiedName]
  | conjugatedType = FeatureChain
  { ownedRelatedElement += conjugatedType }
  )
  CONJUGATES
  ( originalType = [QualifiedName]
  | originalType = FeatureChain
  { ownedRelatedElement += originalType }
  )
  RelationshipBody

OwnedConjugation : Conjugation =
  originalType = [QualifiedName]
  | originalType = FeatureChain
  { ownedRelatedElement += originalType }
```

8.2.4.1.4 Disjoining

```
Disjoining =
  ( 'disjoining' Identification )?
  'disjoint'
  ( typeDisjoined = [QualifiedName]
  | typeDisjoined = FeatureChain
    { ownedRelatedElement += typeDisjoined }
  )
  'from'
  ( disjoiningType = [QualifiedName]
  | disjoiningType = FeatureChain
    { ownedRelatedElement += disjoiningType }
  )
  RelationshipBody

OwnedDisjoining : Disjoining =
  disjoiningType = [QualifiedName]
  | disjoiningType = FeatureChain
    { ownedRelatedElement += disjoiningType }
```

8.2.4.1.5 Unioning, Intersecting and Differencing

```
Unioning =
  unioningType = [QualifiedName]
  | ownedRelatedElement += OwnedFeatureChain

Intersecting =
  intersectingType = [QualifiedName]
  | ownedRelatedElement += OwnedFeatureChain

Differencing =
  differencingType = [QualifiedName]
  | ownedRelatedElement += OwnedFeatureChain
```

8.2.4.1.6 Feature Membership

```
FeatureMember : OwingMembership =
  TypeFeatureMember
  | OwnedFeatureMember

TypeFeatureMember : OwingMembership =
  MemberPrefix 'member' ownedRelatedElement += FeatureElement

OwnedFeatureMember : FeatureMembership =
  MemberPrefix ownedRelatedElement += FeatureElement
```

8.2.4.2 Classifiers Concrete Syntax

8.2.4.2.1 Classifiers

```
Classifier =  
  ( isAbstract ?= 'abstract' ) 'classifier'  
  ClassifierDeclaration TypeBody  
  
ClassifierDeclaration : Classifier =  
  ( isSufficient ?= 'all' )? Identification  
  ( ownedRelationship += OwnedMultiplicity )?  
  ( SuperclassingPart | ConjugationPart )?  
  RelationshipPart*  
  
SuperclassingPart : Classifier =  
  SPECIALIZES ownedRelationship += OwnedSubclassification  
  ( ',' ownedRelationship += OwnedSubclassification )*
```

8.2.4.2.2 Subclassification

```
Subclassification =  
  ( 'specialization' Identification )?  
  'subclassifier' subclassifier = [QualifiedName]  
  SPECIALIZES superclassifier = [QualifiedName]  
  RelationshipBody  
  
OwnedSubclassification : Subclassification =  
  superclassifier = [QualifiedName]
```

8.2.4.3 Features Concrete Syntax

8.2.4.3.1 Features

```

Feature =
  FeaturePrefix
  'feature'? FeatureDeclaration
  ValuePart? TypeBody

FeaturePrefix : Feature =
  ( direction = FeatureDirection )?
  ( isAbstract ?= 'abstract' )?
  ( isComposite ?= 'composite' | isPortion ?= 'portion' )?
  ( isReadOnly ?= 'readonly' )?
  ( isDerived ?= 'derived' )?
  ( isEnd ?= 'end' )?

FeatureDirection : FeatureDirectionKind =
  'in' | 'out' | 'inout'

FeatureDeclaration : Feature =
  ( isSufficient ?= 'all' )? Identification
  ( FeatureSpecializationPart | ConjugationPart )?
  FeatureRelationshipPart*

FeatureRelationshipPart : Feature =
  TypeRelationshipPart
  | ChainingPart
  | InvertingPart
  | TypeFeaturingPart

ChainingPart : Feature =
  'chains'
  ( ownedRelationship += OwnedFeatureChaining
  | FeatureChain )

InvertingPart : Feature =
  'inverse' 'of' ownedRelationship += OwnedFeatureInverting

TypeFeaturingPart : Feature =
  'featured' 'by' ownedRelationship += OwnedTypeFeaturing
  ( ',' ownedTypeFeaturing += OwnedTypeFeaturing )*

FeatureSpecializationPart : Feature =
  FeatureSpecialization+ MultiplicityPart? FeatureSpecialization*
  | MultiplicityPart FeatureSpecialization*

MultiplicityPart : Feature =
  ownedRelationship += OwnedMultiplicity
  | ( ownedRelationship += OwnedMultiplicity )?
  ( isOrdered ?= 'ordered' ( {isUnique = false} 'nonunique' )?
  | {isUnique = false} 'nonunique' ( isOrdered ?= 'ordered' )? )

FeatureSpecialization : Feature =
  Typings | Subsettings | References | Redefinitions

Typings : Feature =
  TypedBy ( ',' ownedRelationship += OwnedFeatureTyping )*

TypedBy : Feature =
  TYPED_BY ownedRelationship += OwnedFeatureTyping

```

```

Subsettings : Feature =
    Subsets ( ',' ownedRelationship += OwnedSubsetting ) *

Subsets : Feature =
    SUBSETS ownedRelationship += OwnedSubsetting

References : Feature =
    REFERENCES ownedRelationship += OwnedReferenceSubsetting

Redefinitions : Feature =
    Redefines ( ',' ownedRelationship += OwnedRedefinition ) *

Redefines : Feature =
    REDEFINES ownedRelationship += OwnedRedefinition

```

8.2.4.3.2 Feature Typing

```

FeatureTyping =
    ( 'specialization' Identification ) ?
    'typing' typedFeature = [Qualified Name]
    TYPED_BY GeneralType
    RelationshipBody

OwnedFeatureTyping : FeatureTyping =
    GeneralType

```

8.2.4.3.3 Subsetting

```

Subsetting =
    ( 'specialization' Identification ) ?
    'subset' SpecificType
    SUBSETS GeneralType
    RelationshipBody

OwnedSubsetting : Subsetting =
    GeneralType

OwnedReferenceSubsetting : ReferenceSubsetting =
    GeneralType

```

8.2.4.3.4 Redefinition

```

Redefinition =
    ( 'specialization' Identification ) ?
    'redefinition' SpecificType
    REDEFINES GeneralType
    RelationshipBody

OwnedRedefinition : Redefinition =
    GeneralType

```


8.2.4.3.5 Feature Chaining

```
OwnedFeatureChain : Feature =
    FeatureChain

FeatureChain : Feature =
    ownedRelationship += OwnedFeatureChaining
    ( '.' ownedRelationship += OwnedFeatureChaining )+

OwnedFeatureChaining : FeatureChaining =
    chainingFeature = [QualifiedName]
```

8.2.4.3.6 Feature Inverting

```
FeatureInverting =
    ( 'inverting' Identification? )?
    'inverse'
    ( featureInverted = [QualifiedName]
    | featureInverted = OwnedFeatureChain
      { ownedRelatedElement += featureInverted }
    )
    'of'
    ( invertingFeature = [QualifiedName]
    | ownedRelatedElement += OwnedFeatureChain
      { ownedRelatedElement += invertingFeature }
    )
    RelationshipBody

OwnedFeatureInverting : FeatureInverting =
    invertingFeature = [QualifiedName]
    | invertingFeature = OwnedFeatureChain
      { ownedRelatedElement += invertingFeature }
```

8.2.4.3.7 Type Featuring

```
TypeFeaturing =
    'featuring' ( Identification 'of' )?
    featureOfType = [QualifiedName]
    'by' featuringType = [QualifiedName]
    RelationshipBody

OwnedTypeFeaturing : TypeFeaturing =
    featuringType = [QualifiedName]
```

8.2.5 Kernel Concrete Syntax

8.2.5.1 Data Types Concrete Syntax

```
DataType =
    ( isAbstract ?= 'abstract' )? 'datatype'
    ClassifierDeclaration TypeBody
```

8.2.5.2 Classes Concrete Syntax

```
Class =  
  ( isAbstract ?= 'abstract' )? 'class'  
  ClassifierDeclaration TypeBody
```

8.2.5.3 Structures Concrete Syntax

```
Structure =  
  ( isAbstract ?= 'abstract' )? 'struct'  
  ClassifierDeclaration TypeBody
```

8.2.5.4 Associations Concrete Syntax

```
Association =  
  ( isAbstract ?= 'abstract' )? 'assoc'  
  ClassifierDeclaration TypeBody  
  
AssociationStructure =  
  ( isAbstract ?= 'abstract' )? 'assoc' 'struct'  
  ClassifierDeclaration TypeBody
```

8.2.5.5 Connectors Concrete Syntax

8.2.5.5.1 Connectors

```
Connector =  
  FeaturePrefix 'connector'  
  ConnectorDeclaration TypeBody  
  
ConnectorDeclaration : Connector =  
  BinaryConnectorDeclaration | NaryConnectorDeclaration  
  
BinaryConnectorDeclaration : Connector =  
  ( FeatureDeclaration? 'from' | isSufficient ?= 'all' 'from'? )?  
  ownedRelationship += ConnectorEndMember 'to'  
  ownedRelationship += ConnectorEndMember  
  
NaryConnectorDeclaration : Connector =  
  FeatureDeclaration  
  ( '(' ownedRelationship += ConnectorEndMember ','  
    ownedRelationship += ConnectorEndMember  
    ( ',' ownedRelationship += ConnectorEndMember )* ')' )?  
  
ConnectorEndMember : EndFeatureMembership =  
  ownedRelatedElement += ConnectorEnd  
  
ConnectorEnd : Feature =  
  ( name = NAME REFERENCES )?  
  ownedRelationship += OwnedReferenceSubsetting  
  ( ownedRelationship += OwnedMultiplicity )?
```

8.2.5.5.2 Binding Connectors

```
BindingConnector =  
  FeaturePrefix 'binding'  
  BindingConnectorDeclaration TypeBody  
  
BindingConnectorDeclaration : BindingConnector =  
  ( FeatureDeclaration 'of' | isSufficient ?= 'all' 'of'? )?  
  ownedRelationship += ConnectorEndMember '='  
  ownedRelationship += ConnectorEndMember
```

8.2.5.5.3 Successions

```
Succession =  
  FeaturePrefix 'succession'  
  SuccessionDeclaration TypeBody  
  
SuccessionDeclaration : Succession =  
  ( FeatureDeclaration? 'first' | s.isSufficient ?= 'all' 'first'? )?  
  ownedRelationship += ConnectorEndMember 'then'  
  ownedRelationship += ConnectorEndMember
```

8.2.5.6 Behaviors Concrete Syntax

8.2.5.6.1 Behaviors

```
Behavior =  
  ( isAbstract ?= 'abstract ')? 'behavior'  
  ClassifierDeclaration TypeBody
```

8.2.5.6.2 Steps

```
Step =  
  FeaturePrefix  
  'step' FeatureDeclaration ValuePart?  
  TypeBody
```

8.2.5.7 Functions Concrete Syntax

8.2.5.7.1 Functions

```
Function =
  ( isAbstract ?= 'abstract' )? 'function'
  ClassifierDeclaration FunctionBody

FunctionBody : Type =
  ';' | '{' FunctionBodyPart '}'

FunctionBodyPart : Type =
  ( TypeBodyElement
  | ownedRelationship += ReturnFeatureMember
  )*
  ( ownedRelationship += ResultExpressionMember )?

ReturnFeatureMember : ReturnParameterMembership =
  MemberPrefix 'return'
  ownedRelatedElement += FeatureElement

ResultExpressionMember : ResultExpressionMembership =
  MemberPrefix
  ownedRelatedElement += OwnedExpression
```

8.2.5.7.2 Expressions

```
Expression =
  FeaturePrefix
  'expr' FeatureDeclaration ValuePart?
  FunctionBody
```

8.2.5.7.3 Predicates

```
Predicate =
  ( isAbstract ?= 'abstract' )? 'predicate'
  ClassifierDeclaration FunctionBody
```

8.2.5.7.4 Boolean Expressions and Invariants

```
BooleanExpression =
  FeaturePrefix
  'bool' FeatureDeclaration ValuePart?
  FunctionBody

Invariant =
  FeaturePrefix
  'inv' ( 'true' | isNegated ?= 'false' )?
  FeatureDeclaration ValuePart?
  FunctionBody
```

8.2.5.8 Expressions Concrete Syntax

8.2.5.8.1 Operator Expressions

```

OwnedExpressionReferenceMember : FeatureMembership =
    ownedRelationship += OwnedExpressionReference

OwnedExpressionReference : FeatureReferenceExpression =
    ownedRelationship += OwnedExpressionMember

OwnedExpressionMember : FeatureMembership =
    ownedFeatureMember = OwnedExpression

OwnedExpression : Expression =
    ConditionalExpression
    | BinaryOperatorExpression
    | UnaryOperatorExpression
    | ClassificationExpression
    | MetaclassificationExpression
    | ExtentExpression
    | PrimaryExpression

ConditionalExpression : OperatorExpression =
    operator = 'if'
    ownedRelationship += OwnedExpressionMember '?'
    ownedRelationship += OwnedExpressionReferenceMember 'else'
    ownedRelationship += OwnedExpressionReferenceMember

ConditionalBinaryOperatorExpression : OperatorExpression =
    ownedRelationship += OwnedExpressionMember
    operator = ConditionalBinaryOperator
    ownedRelationship += OwnedExpressionReferenceMember

ConditionalBinaryOperator =
    '??' | 'or' | 'and' | 'implies'

BinaryOperatorExpression : OperatorExpression =
    ownedRelationship += OwnedExpressionMember
    operator = BinaryOperator
    ownedRelationship += OwnedExpressionMember

BinaryOperator =
    '|' | '&' | 'xor' | '..'
    | '==' | '!=' | '===' | '!=='
    | '<' | '>' | '<=' | '>='
    | '+' | '-' | '*' | '/'
    | '%' | '^' | '**'

UnaryOperatorExpression : OperatorExpression =
    operator = UnaryOperator
    ownedRelationship += OwnedExpressionMember

UnaryOperator =
    '+' | '-' | '~' | 'not'

ClassificationExpression : OperatorExpression =
    ( ownedRelationship += OwnedExpressionMember )?
    operator = ClassificationOperator
    ownedRelationship += TypeReferenceMember

ClassificationOperator =

```

```

'istype' | 'hastype' | '@' | 'as'

MetaclassificationExpression : OperatorExpression =
  operand += MetadataReference
  operator = MetaClassificationOperator
  ownedRelationship += TypeReferenceMember

MetadataReference : MetadataAccessExpression =
  referencedElement = [QualifiedName]

MetaclassificationOperator =
  '@@' | 'meta' ExtentExpression : OperatorExpression =
  operator = 'all'
  ownedRelationship += TypeReferenceMember

TypeReferenceMember : FeatureMembership =
  ownedMemberFeature = TypeReference

TypeReference : Feature =
  ownedRelationship += ReferenceTyping

ReferenceTyping : FeatureTyping =
  type = [QualifiedName]

```

Notes.

1. *Operator expressions* provide a shorthand notation for InvocationExpressions that invoke a library Function represented as an *operator symbol*. [Table 5](#) shows the mapping from operator symbols to the Functions they represent from the Kernel Model Library (see [Clause 9](#)). An operator expression contains subexpressions called its *operands* that generally correspond to the *argument Expressions* of the InvocationExpression, except in the case of operators representing *control Functions*, in which case the evaluation of certain operands is as determined by the Function (see [8.4.3.9](#) for details).
2. Though not directly expressed in the syntactic productions given above, in any operator expression containing nested operator expressions, the nested expressions shall be implicitly grouped according to the *precedence* of the operators involved, as given in [Table 6](#). Operator expressions with higher precedence operators shall be grouped more tightly than those with lower precedence operators.

Table 5. Operator Mapping

Operator	Library Function	Description	Model-Level Evaluable?
all	BaseFunctions::'all'	Type extent	No
istype	BaseFunctions::'istype'	All argument values are directly or indirectly instances of a type	Yes
hastype	BaseFunctions::'hastype'	All argument values are directly instances of a type	Yes
@	BaseFunctions::'@'	Any argument value is directly or indirectly an instance of a type	Yes

Operator	Library Function	Description	Model-Level Evaluable?
@@	BaseFunctions::'@@'	Any argument value is directly or indirectly an instance of a metaclass	Yes
as	BaseFunctions::as	Select instances of type (cast)	Yes
meta	BaseFunctions::meta	Select instances of a metaclass (metacast)	Yes
==	BaseFunctions::'=='	Equality	Yes
!=	BaseFunctions::'!='	Inequality	Yes
===	BaseFunctions::'==='	Same (equality for data values, same lives for occurrences)	Yes
!==	BaseFunctions::'!=='	Not same	Yes
xor	DataFunctions::'xor'	Logical "exclusive or"	Yes
not	DataFunctions::'not'	Logical "not"	Yes
 	DataFunctions::' '	Logical "inclusive or"	Yes
&	DataFunctions::'&'	Logical "and"	Yes
<	DataFunctions::'<'	Less than	Yes
>	DataFunctions::'>'	Greater than	Yes
<=	DataFunctions::'<='	Less than or equal to	Yes
>=	DataFunctions::'>='	Greater than or equal to	Yes
+	DataFunctions::'+'	Addition	Yes
-	DataFunctions::'-'	Subtraction	Yes
*	DataFunctions::'+'	Multiplication	Yes
/	DataFunctions::'/'	Division	Yes
%	DataFunctions::'%%'	Remainder	Yes
^ **	DataFunctions::'^'	Exponentiation	Yes
..	DataFunctions::'..'	Range construction	Yes
??	ControlFunctions::'??'	Null coalescing	Yes
if	ControlFunctions::'if'	Conditional test (ternary)	Yes
or	ControlFunctions::'or'	Conditional "or"	Yes
and	ControlFunctions::'and'	Conditional "and"	Yes
implies	ControlFunctions::'implies'	Conditional "implication"	Yes

Table 6. Operator Precedence (highest to lowest)

Unary

all
+ - ~ not
<i>Binary</i>
^ **
* / %
+ -
..
< > <= >=
istype hastype @ @@ as meta
== != === !==
& and
xor
 or
implies
??
<i>Ternary</i>
if

8.2.5.8.2 Primary Expressions

```

PrimaryExpression : Expression =
    FeatureChainExpression
    | NonFeatureChainPrimaryExpression

PrimaryExpressionMember : FeatureMembership =
    ownedMemberFeature = PrimaryExpression

NonFeatureChainPrimaryExpression : Expression =
    IndexExpression
    | SequenceExpression
    | SelectExpression
    | CollectExpression
    | FunctionOperationExpression
    | BaseExpression

NonFeatureChainPrimaryExpressionMember : FeatureMembership =
    ownedMemberFeature = NonFeatureChainPrimaryExpression

IndexExpression : OperatorExpression =
    ownedRelationship += PrimaryExpressionMember
    operator = '['
    ownedRelationship += OwnedExpressionMember ']'

SequenceExpression : Expression =
    '(' ( OwnedExpression | SequenceExpressionList ) ',' '?' ')'

SequenceExpressionList : OperatorExpression =
    ownedRelationship += OwnedExpressionMember
    operator = ','
    ( ownedRelationship += SequenceExpressionListMember
    | ownedRelationship += OwnedExpressionMember )

SequenceExpressionListMember : FeatureMembership =
    ownedMemberFeature = SequenceExpressionList

FeatureChainExpression : FeatureChainExpression =
    ownedRelationship += NonFeatureChainPrimaryExpressionMember '.'
    ownedRelationship += FeatureChainMember

CollectExpression : CollectExpression =
    ownedRelationship += PrimaryExpressionMember '.'
    ownedRelationship += BodyExpressionMember

SelectExpression : SelectExpression =
    ownedRelationship += PrimaryExpressionMember '.*'
    ownedRelationship += BodyExpressionMember

FunctionOperationExpression : InvocationExpression =
    ownedRelationship += PrimaryExpressionMember '->'
    ownedRelationship += ReferenceTyping
    ( ownedRelationship += BodyExpressionMember
    | ownedRelationship += FunctionReferenceExpressionMember
    | ArgumentList )

BodyExpressionMember : FeatureMembership =
    ownedMemberFeature = BodyExpression

```

```

FunctionExpressionMember : FeatureMembership =
    ownedMemberFeature = FunctionReferenceExpression

FunctionReferenceExpression : FeatureReferenceExpression =
    ownedRelationship += FunctionReferenceMember

FunctionReferenceMember : FeatureMembership =
    ownedMemberFeature = FunctionReference

FunctionReference : Expression =
    ownedRelationship += ReferenceTyping

FeatureChainMember : Membership =
    FeatureReferenceMember
    | OwnedFeatureChainMember

OwnedFeatureChainMember : OwningMembership =
    ownedMemberElement = FeatureChain

```

Notes.

1. Primary expressions provide additional shorthand notations for certain kinds of InvocationExpressions. For those cases in which the InvocationExpression is an OperatorExpression, its `operator` shall be resolved to the appropriate library function as given in [Table 7](#).

Table 7. Primary Expression Operator Mapping

Operator	Library Function	Description	Model-level Evaluable?
[BaseFunctions:: <code>'['</code>	Indexing	Yes
,	BaseFunctions:: <code>','</code>	Sequence construction	Yes
.	ControlFunctions:: <code>'.'</code>	Feature chaining	Yes
.	ControlFunctions:: <code>collect</code>	Sequence collection (collect expression)	Yes
.?	ControlFunctions:: <code>select</code>	Sequence selection (select expression)	Yes

8.2.5.8.3 Base Expressions

```

BaseExpression : Expression =
    NullExpression
    | LiteralExpression
    | FeatureReferenceExpression
    | MetadataAccessExpression
    | InvocationExpression
    | BodyExpression

NullExpression : NullExpression =
    'null' | '(' ' )'

FeatureReferenceExpression : FeatureReferenceExpression =
    ownedRelationship += FeatureReferenceMember

FeatureReferenceMember : Membership =
    memberElement = FeatureReference

FeatureReference : Feature =
    [QualifiedName]

MetadataAccessExpression =
    referenceElement = [QualifiedName] '.' 'metadata'

InvocationExpression : InvocationExpression =
    ownedRelationship += OwnedSpecialization
    ArgumentList(this)

ArgumentList : InvocationExpression =
    '(' ( PositionalArgumentList | NamedArgumentList )? ')'

PositionalArgumentList : InvocationExpression =
    e.ownedRelationship += ArgumentMember
    ( ',' e.ownedRelationship += ArgumentMember ) *

ArgumentMember : ParameterMembership =
    ownedMemberParameter = Argument

Argument : Feature =
    ownedRelationship += ArgumentValue

NamedArgumentList : InvocationExpression =
    ownedRelationship += NamedArgumentMember
    ( ',' ownedRelationship += NamedArgumentMember ) *

NamedArgumentMember : FeatureMembership =
    ownedMemberFeature = NamedArgument

NamedArgument : Feature =
    ownedRelationship += ParameterRedefinition '='
    ownedRelationship += ArgumentValue

ParameterRedefinition : Redefinition =
    redefinedFeature = [QualifiedName]

ArgumentValue : FeatureValue =
    value = OwnedExpression

```

```

BodyExpression : FeatureReferenceExpression =
    ownedRelationship += ExpressionBodyMember

ExpressionBodyMember : FeatureMembership =
    ownedMemberFeature = ExpressionBody

ExpressionBody : Expression =
    '{' FunctionBodyPart '}'

```

8.2.5.8.4 Literal Expressions

```

LiteralExpression =
    LiteralBoolean
  | LiteralString
  | LiteralInteger
  | LiteralReal
  | LiteralInfinity

LiteralBoolean =
    value = BooleanValue

BooleanValue : Boolean =
    'true' | 'false'

LiteralString =
    value = STRING_VALUE

LiteralInteger =
    value = DECIMAL_VALUE

LiteralReal =
    value = RealValue

RealValue : Real =
    DECIMAL_VALUE? '.' ( DECIMAL_VALUE | EXPONENTIAL_VALUE )
  | EXPONENTIAL_VALUE

LiteralInfinity =
    '*'

```

8.2.5.9 Interactions Concrete Syntax

8.2.5.9.1 Interactions

```

Interaction =
    ( isAbstract ?= 'abstract' )? 'interaction'
    ClassifierDeclaration TypeBody

```

8.2.5.9.2 Item Flows

```
ItemFlow =
    FeaturePrefix 'flow'
    ItemFlowDeclaration TypeBody

SuccessionItemFlow =
    FeaturePrefix 'succession' 'flow'
    ItemFlowDeclaration TypeBody

ItemFlowDeclaration : ItemFlow =
    ( FeatureDeclaration
      ( 'of' ownedRelationship += ItemFeatureMember )?
      'from'
      | isSufficient ?= 'all'
    )?
    ownedRelationship += ItemFlowEndMember 'to'
    ownedRelationship += ItemFlowEndMember

ItemFeatureMember : FeatureMembership =
    ownedRelatedElement = ItemFeature

ItemFeature : Feature =
    ( name = NAME ':' )?
    ( ownedRelationship += OwnedFeatureTyping
      ( ownedRelationship += OwnedMultiplicity )?
      | ownedRelationship += OwnedMultiplicity
        ( ownedRelationship += OwnedFeatureTyping )?
    )

ItemFlowEndMember : EndFeatureMembership =
    ownedRelatedElement += ItemFlowEnd

ItemFlowEnd : Feature =
    ( ownedRelationship += OwnedReferenceSubsetting '.' )?
    ownedRelationship += ItemFlowFeatureMember

ItemFlowFeatureMember : FeatureMembership =
    ownedRelatedElement += ItemFlowFeature

ItemFlowFeature : Feature =
    ownedRelationship += ItemFlowRedefinition

ItemFlowRedefinition : Redefinition =
    redefinedFeature = [Qualified Name]
```


8.2.5.10 Feature Values Concrete Syntax

```
ValuePart : Feature =
    ownedRelationship += FeatureValue

FeatureValue =
    ( '='
    | isInitial ?= ':= '
    | isDefault ?= 'default' ( '=' | isInitial ?= ':= ' )?
    )
    ownedRelatedElement += OwnedExpression
```

8.2.5.11 Multiplicities Concrete Syntax

```
Multiplicity =
    MultiplicitySubset | MultiplicityRange

MultiplicitySubset : Multiplicity =
    'multiplicity' Identification Subsets
    TypeBody

MultiplicityRange =
    'multiplicity' Identification MultiplicityBounds
    TypeBody

OwnedMultiplicity : OwningMembership =
    ownedRelatedElement += OwnedMultiplicityRange

OwnedMultiplicityRange : MultiplicityRange =
    MultiplicityBounds

MultiplicityBounds : MultiplicityRange =
    '[' ( ownedRelationship += MultiplicityExpressionMember '..' )?
        ownedRelationship += MultiplicityExpressionMember ']'

MultiplicityExpressionMember : OwningMembership =
    ownedRelatedElement += ( LiteralExpression | FeatureReferenceExpression )
```

8.2.5.12 Metadata Concrete Syntax

```
Metaclass =
  ( isAbstract ?= 'abstract' )? 'metaclass'
  ClassifierDeclaration TypeBody

MetadataFeature =
  ( '@' | 'metadata' )
  MetadataFeatureDeclaration
  ( 'about' annotation += Annotation
    { ownedRelationship += annotation }
    ( ',' annotation += Annotation
      { ownedRelationship += annotation } ) *
  )?
  MetadataBody

MetadataFeatureDeclaration : MetadataFeature =
  ( Identification ( ':' | 'typed' 'by' ) )?
  ownedRelationship += ownedFeatureTyping

MetadataBody : Feature =
  ';' | '{' ( ownedRelationship += MetadataBodyElement ) * '}'

MetadataBodyElement : Membership =
  NonFeatureMember
  | MetadataBodyFeatureMember
  | AliasMember
  | Import

MetadataBodyFeatureMember : FeatureMembership =
  ownedMemberFeature = MetadataBodyFeature

MetadataBodyFeature : Feature =
  'feature'? ( ':>' | 'redefines'? ownedRelationship += OwnedRedefinition
  FeatureSpecializationPart? ValuePart?
  MetadataBody
```

8.2.5.13 Packages Concrete Syntax

```
Package =  
    PackageDeclaration PackageBody  
  
LibraryPackage =  
    ( isStandard ?= 'standard' ) 'library'  
    PackageDeclaration PackageBody  
  
PackageDeclaration : Package =  
    'package' Identification  
  
PackageBody : Package =  
    ';' |  
    | '{' ( NamespaceBodyElement  
        | ownedRelationship += ElementFilterMember  
        ) *  
    '}'  
  
ElementFilterMember : ElementFilterMembership =  
    MemberPrefix  
    'filter' condition = OwnedExpression ';' ;
```

8.3 Abstract Syntax

8.3.1 Abstract Syntax Overview

The KerML abstract syntax is specified as a UML model conforming to the CMOF conformance point of the Meta Object Facility Core Specification [MOF]. As shown in [Fig. 1](#), this model is divided into three top-level packages corresponding to the three layers of KerML (see [8.1](#)). Each top-level package contains nested packages for the modeling areas it addresses. Further, the Core package imports the Root package and the Kernel package imports the Core package, so that the Kernel package contains (as owned or imported members) all abstract syntax elements. [Fig. 2](#) shows the generalization hierarchy for all abstract syntax elements, other than those that represent KerML Relationships, and [Fig. 3](#) shows a similar hierarchy for all abstract syntax elements that represent Relationships.

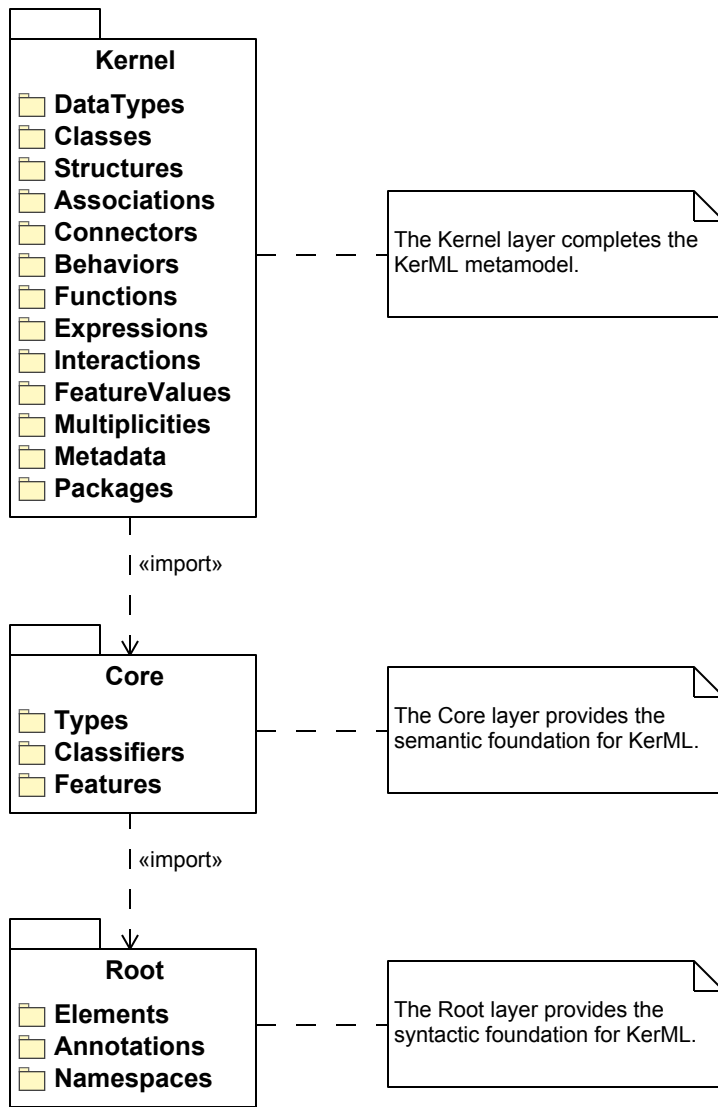


Figure 1. KerML Syntax Layers

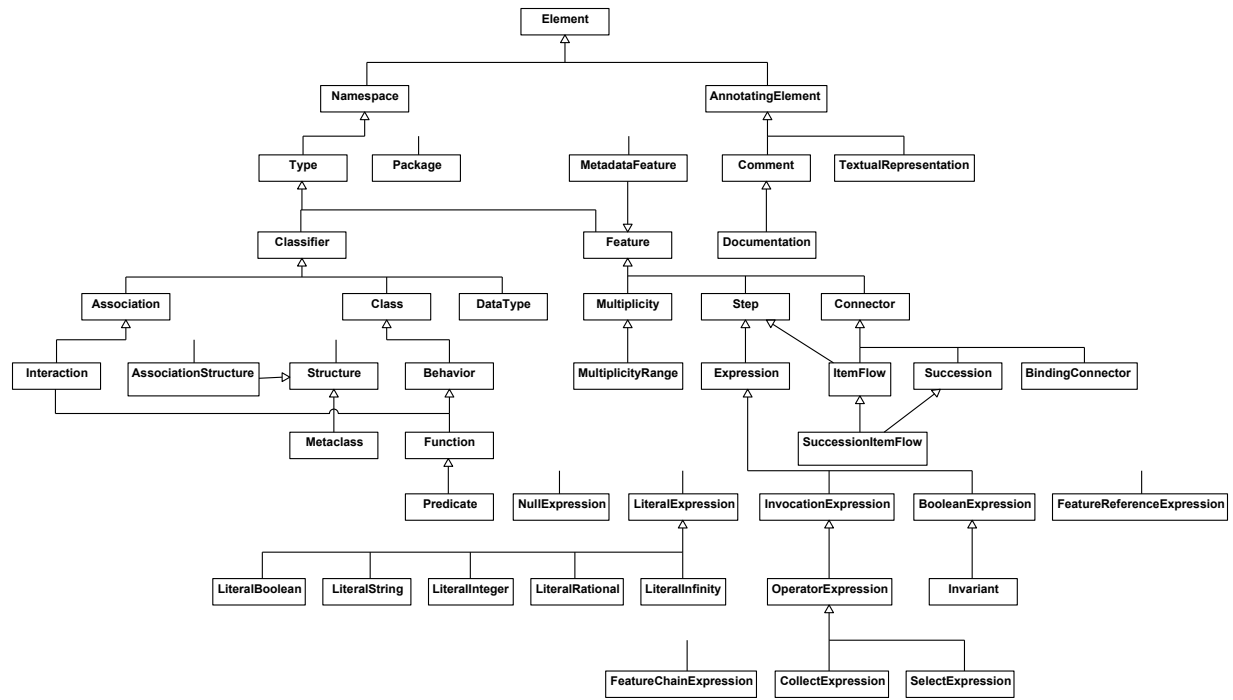


Figure 2. KerML Element Hierarchy

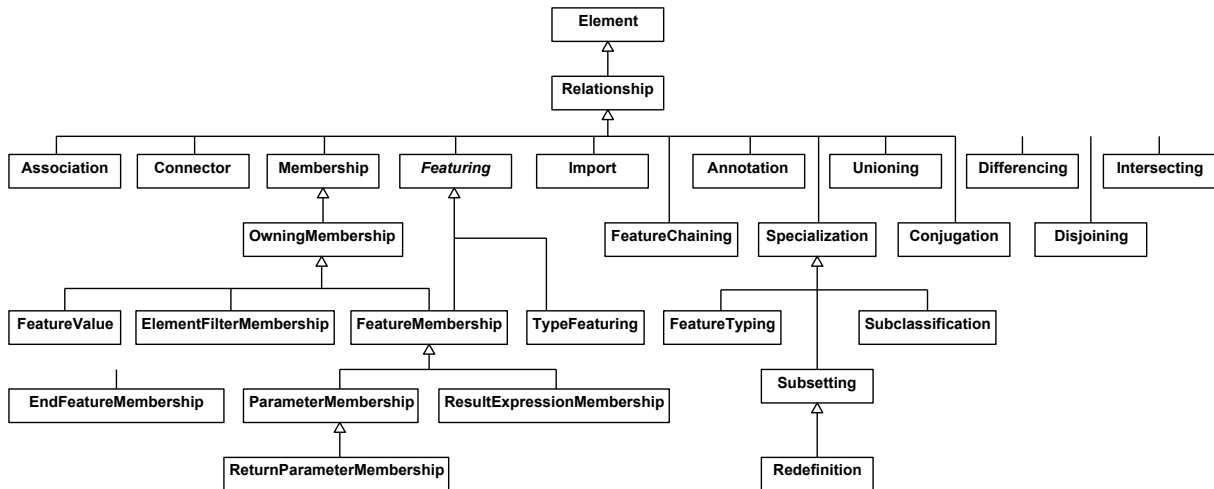


Figure 3. KerML Relationship Hierarchy

8.3.2 Root Abstract Syntax

8.3.2.1 Elements and Relationships Abstract Syntax

8.3.2.1.1 Overview

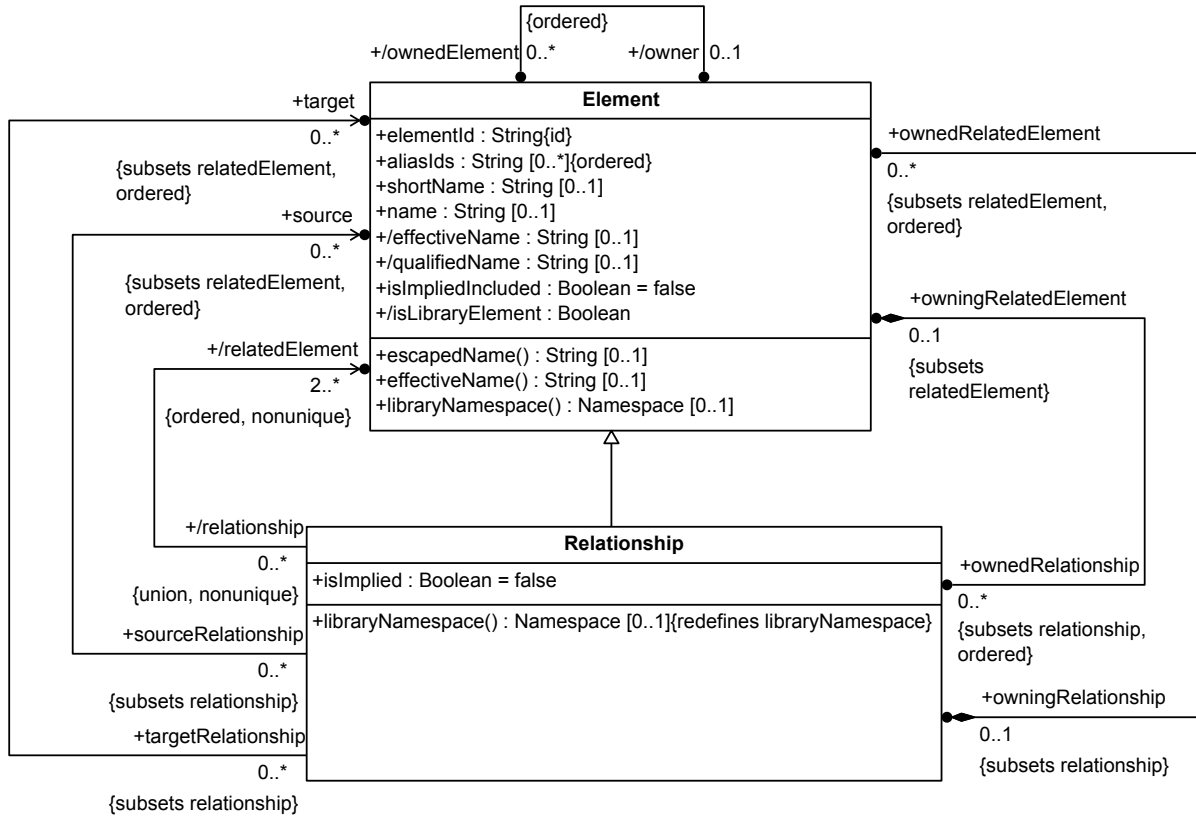


Figure 4. Elements

It is a general design principle of the KerML abstract syntax that non-Relationship Elements are related only by reified instances of Relationships. All other meta-associations between Elements are derived from these reified Relationships. For example, the `owningRelatedElement/ownedRelationship` meta-association between an Element and a Relationship is fundamental to establishing the structure of a model. However, the `owner/ownedElement` meta-association between two Elements is derived, based on the Relationship structure between them.

8.3.2.1.2 Element

Description

An Element is a constituent of a model that is uniquely identified relative to all other Elements. It can have Relationships with other Elements. Some of these Relationships might imply ownership of other Elements, which means that if an Element is deleted from a model, then so are all the Elements that it owns.

General Classes

None.

Attributes

`aliasIds` : String [0..*] {ordered}

Various alternative identifiers for this Element. Generally, these will be set by tools.

/documentation : Documentation [0..*] {subsets ownedElement, annotatingElement, ordered}

The Documentation owned by this Element.

/effectiveName : String [0..1]

The effective name to be used for this Element during name resolution within its `owningNamespace`.

elementId : String

The globally unique identifier for this Element. This is intended to be set by tooling, and it must not change during the lifetime of the Element.

isImpliedIncluded : Boolean

Whether all necessary implied Relationships have been included in the `ownedRelationships` of this Element. This property may be true, even if there are not actually any `ownedRelationships` with `isImplied = true`, meaning that no such Relationships are actually implied for this Element. However, if it is false, then `ownedRelationships` may *not* contain any implied Relationships. That is, either *all* required implied Relationships must be included, or none of them.

/isLibraryElement : Boolean

Whether this Element is contained in the ownership tree of a library model.

name : String [0..1]

The primary name of this Element.

/ownedAnnotation : Annotation [0..*] {subsets ownedRelationship, annotation, ordered}

The `ownedRelationships` of this Element that are Annotations, for which this Element is the `annotatedElement`.

/ownedElement : Element [0..*] {ordered}

The Elements owned by this Element, derived as the `ownedRelatedElements` of the `ownedRelationships` of this Element.

ownedRelationship : Relationship [0..*] {subsets relationship, ordered}

The Relationships for which this Element is the `owningRelatedElement`.

/owner : Element [0..1]

The owner of this Element, derived as the `owningRelatedElement` of the `owningRelationship` of this Element, if any.

/owningMembership : OwingMembership [0..1] {subsets owningRelationship, membership}

The `owningRelationship` of this Element, if that Relationship is a Membership.

/owningNamespace : Namespace [0..1] {subsets namespace}

The Namespace that owns this Element, derived as the `membershipOwningNamespace` of the `owningMembership` of this Element, if any.

`owningRelationship` : Relationship [0..1] {subsets relationship}

The Relationship for which this Element is an `ownedRelatedElement`, if any.

`/qualifiedName` : String [0..1]

The full ownership-qualified name of this Element, represented in a form that is valid according to the KerML textual concrete syntax for qualified names (including use of unrestricted name notation and escaped characters, as necessary). The `qualifiedName` is null if this Element has no `owningNamespace` or if there is not a complete ownership chain of named Namespaces from a root Namespace to this Element.

`shortName` : String [0..1]

An optional alternative name for the Element that is intended to be shorter or in some way more succinct than its primary `name`. It may act as a modeler-specified identifier for the Element, though it is then the responsibility of the modeler to maintain the uniqueness of this identifier within a model or relative to some other context.

`/textualRepresentation` : TextualRepresentation [0..*] {subsets ownedElement, annotatingElement, ordered}

The `textualRepresentations` that annotate this Element.

Operations

`effectiveName()` : String [0..1]

Return the effective name for this Element. By default this is the same as its `name`, but, for certain kinds of Elements, this may be overridden if the Element `name` is empty (e.g., for redefining Features).

body: `name`

`escapedName()` : String [0..1]

Return `effectiveName`, if that is not null, otherwise `shortName`, if that is not null, otherwise null. If the returned name is non-null, it is returned as-is if it has the form of a basic name, or, otherwise, represented as a restricted name according to the lexical structure of the KerML textual notation (i.e., surrounded by single quote characters and with special characters escaped).

`libraryNamespace()` : Namespace [0..1]

By default, return whether the library Namespace of the `owningRelationship` of this Element, if it has one.

body: `if owningRelationship <> null then owningRelationship.libraryNamespace()
else null endif`

Constraints

`elementDocumentation`

The documentation of an Element are its `ownedElements` that are Documentation.

`documentation = ownedElement->selectByKind(Documentation)`

elementOwnedElements

The `ownedElements` of an `Element` are the `ownedRelatedElements` of its `ownedRelationships`.

```
ownedElement = ownedRelationship.ownedRelatedElement
```

elementQualifiedName

If this `Element` does not have an `owningNamespace`, then its `qualifiedName` is empty. If the `owningNamespace` of this `Element` is a root `Namespace`, then the `qualifiedName` of the `Element` is the escaped name of the `Element` (if any). If the `owningNamespace` is non-empty but not a root `Namespace`, then the `qualifiedName` of this `Element` is constructed from the `qualifiedName` of the `owningNamespace` and the escaped name of the `Element`, unless the `qualifiedName` of the `owningNamespace` is empty, in which case the `qualifiedName` of this `Element` is also empty.

```
qualifiedName =  
  if owningNamespace = null then null  
  else if owningNamespace.owner = null then escapedName()  
  else if owningNamespace.qualifiedName = null then null  
  else owningNamespace.qualifiedName + '::' + escapedName()  
  endif endif endif
```

elementOwnedAnnotation

The `ownedAnnotations` of an `Element` are its `ownedRelationships` that are `Annotations`.

```
ownedAnnotation = ownedRelationship->selectByKind(Annotation)->  
  select(a | a.annotatedElement = self)
```

elementIsLibraryElement

An `Element` `isLibraryElement` if `libraryNamespace()` is not null.

```
isLibraryElement = libraryNamespace() <>null
```

elementOwner

The `owner` of an `Element` is the `owningRelatedElement` of its `owningRelationship`.

```
owner = owningRelationship.owningRelatedElement
```

elementEffectiveName

The `effectiveName` of an `Element` is given by the result of the `effectiveName()` operation.

```
effectiveName()
```

elementValidateIsImpliedIncluded

[no documentation]

```
ownedRelationship->exists(isImplied) implies isImpliedIncluded
```

8.3.2.1.3 Relationship

Description

A Relationship is an Element that relates two or more other Elements. Some of its `relatedElements` may be owned, in which case those `ownedRelatedElements` will be deleted from a model if their `owningRelationship` is. A Relationship may also be owned by another Element, in which case the `ownedRelatedElements` of the Relationship are also considered to be transitively owned by the `owningRelatedElement` of the Relationship.

The `relatedElements` of a Relationship are divided into `source` and `target` Elements. The Relationship is considered to be directed from the `source` to the `target` Elements. An undirected Relationship may have either all `source` or all `target` Elements.

A "relationship Element" in the kernel abstract syntax is generically any Element that is an instance of either Relationship or a direct or indirect specialization of Relationship. Any other kind of Element is a "non-relationship Element". It is a convention of the kernel abstract syntax that non-relationship Elements are *only* related via reified relationship Elements. Any meta-associations directly between non-relationship Elements must be derived from underlying reified Relationships.

General Classes

Element

Attributes

`isImplied` : Boolean

Whether this Relationship was generated by tooling to meet semantic rules, rather than being directly created by a modeler.

`ownedRelatedElement` : Element [0..*] {subsets `relatedElement`, ordered}

The `relatedElements` of this Relationship that are owned by the Relationship.

`owningRelatedElement` : Element [0..1] {subsets `relatedElement`}

The `relatedElement` of this Relationship that owns the Relationship, if any.

`/relatedElement` : Element [2..*] {ordered, nonunique}

The Elements that are related by this Relationship, derived as the union of the `source` and `target` Elements of the Relationship. Every Relationship must have at least two `relatedElements`.

`source` : Element [0..*] {subsets `relatedElement`, ordered}

The `relatedElements` from which this Relationship is considered to be directed.

`target` : Element [0..*] {subsets `relatedElement`, ordered}

The `relatedElements` to which this Relationship is considered to be directed.

Operations

`libraryNamespace()` : Namespace [0..1]

Return whether this Relationship has either an `owningRelatedElement` or `owningRelationship` that is a library element.

```

body: if owningRelatedElement <> null then owningRelatedElement.libraryNamespace()
else if owningRelationship <> null then owningRelationship.libraryNamespace()
else null endif endif

```

Constraints

relationshipRelatedElement

The `relatedElements` of a `Relationship` consist of all of its `source` `Elements` followed by all of its `target` `Elements`.

```
relatedElement = source->union(target)
```

8.3.2.2 Annotations Abstract Syntax

8.3.2.2.1 Overview

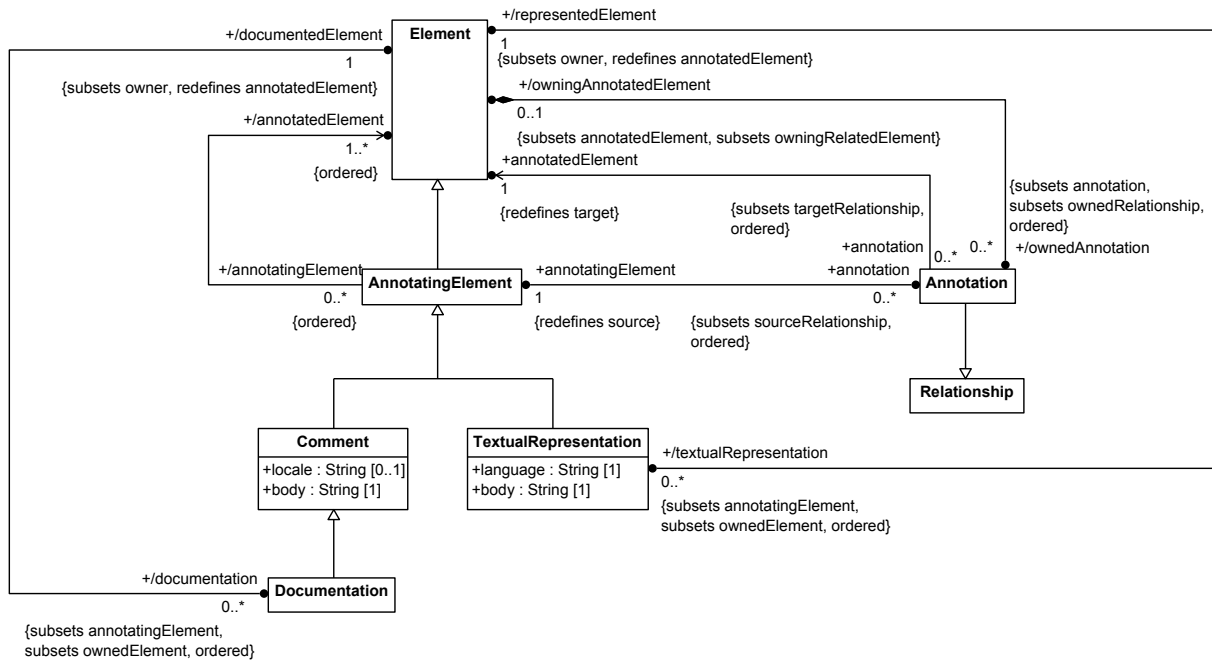


Figure 5. Annotation

8.3.2.2.2 AnnotatingElement

Description

An `AnnotatingElement` is an `Element` that provides additional description of or metadata on some other `Element`. An `AnnotatingElement` is attached to its `annotatedElement` by an `Annotation` `Relationship`.

General Classes

`Element`

Attributes

`/annotatedElement : Element [1..*] {ordered}`

The Elements that are annotated by this AnnotatingElement. If annotation is not empty, this is derived as the annotatedElements of the annotations. If annotation, then it is derived as the owningNamespace of the AnnotatingElement.

annotation : Annotation [0..*] {subsets sourceRelationship, ordered}

The Annotations that relate this AnnotatingElement to its annotatedElements.

Operations

No operations.

Constraints

annotatingElementAnnotatedElement

[no documentation]

```
annotatedElement =  
  if annotation->notEmpty() then annotation.annotatedElement  
  else owningNamespace endif
```

8.3.2.2.3 Annotation

Description

An Annotation is a Relationship between an AnnotatingElement and the Element that is annotated by that AnnotatingElement.

General Classes

Relationship

Attributes

annotatedElement : Element {redefines target}

The Element that is annotated by the annotatingElement of this Annotation.

annotatingElement : AnnotatingElement {redefines source}

The AnnotatingElement that annotates the annotatedElement of this Annotation.

/owningAnnotatedElement : Element [0..1] {subsets annotatedElement, owningRelatedElement}

The annotatedElement of this Annotation, when it is also its owningRelatedElement.

Operations

No operations.

Constraints

None.

8.3.2.2.4 Comment

Description

A Comment is an AnnotatingElement whose `body` in some way describes its `annotatedElements`.

General Classes

AnnotatingElement

Attributes

`body` : String

The annotation text for the Comment.

`locale` : String [0..1]

Identification of the language of the `body` text and, optionally, the region and/or encoding. The format shall be a POSIX locale conformant to ISO/IEC 15897, with the format

`[language[_territory][.codeset][@modifier]]`.

Operations

No operations.

Constraints

None.

8.3.2.2.5 Documentation

Description

Documentation is a Comment that specifically documents a `documentedElement`, which must be its `owner`.

General Classes

Comment

Attributes

`/documentedElement` : Element {subsets owner, redefines annotatedElement}

The Element that is documented by this Documentation.

Operations

No operations.

Constraints

None.

8.3.2.2.6 TextualRepresentation

Description

A TextualRepresentation is an AnnotatingElement whose body represents the representedElement in a given language. The representedElement must be the owner of the TextualRepresentation. The named language can be a natural language, in which case the body is an informal representation, or an artificial language, in which case the body is expected to be a formal, machine-parsable representation.

If the named language of a TextualRepresentation is machine-parsable, then the body text should be legal input text as defined for that language. The interpretation of the named language string shall be case insensitive. The following language names are defined to correspond to the given standard languages:

kerml	Kernel Modeling Language
ocl	Object Constraint Language
alf	Action Language for fUML

Other specifications may define specific language strings, other than those shown in [view link does not exist](#), to be used to indicate the use of languages from those specifications in KerML TextualRepresentations.

If the language of a TextualRepresentation is "kerml", then the body text shall be a legal representation of the representedElement in the KerML textual concrete syntax. A conforming tool can use such a TextualRepresentation Annotation to record the original KerML concrete syntax text from which an Element was parsed. In this case, it is a tool responsibility to ensure that the body of the TextualRepresentation remains correct (or the Annotation is removed) if the annotated Element changes other than by re-parsing the body text.

An Element with a TextualRepresentation in a language other than KerML is essentially a semantically "opaque" Element specified in the other language. However, a conforming KerML tool may interpret such an element consistently with the specification of the named language.

General Classes

AnnotatingElement

Attributes

body : String

The textual representation of the representedElement in the given language.

language : String

The natural or artificial language in which the body text is written.

/representedElement : Element {subsets owner, redefines annotatedElement}

The Element that is represented by this TextualRepresentation.

Operations

No operations.

Constraints

None.

8.3.2.3 Namespace Abstract Syntax

8.3.2.3.1 Overview

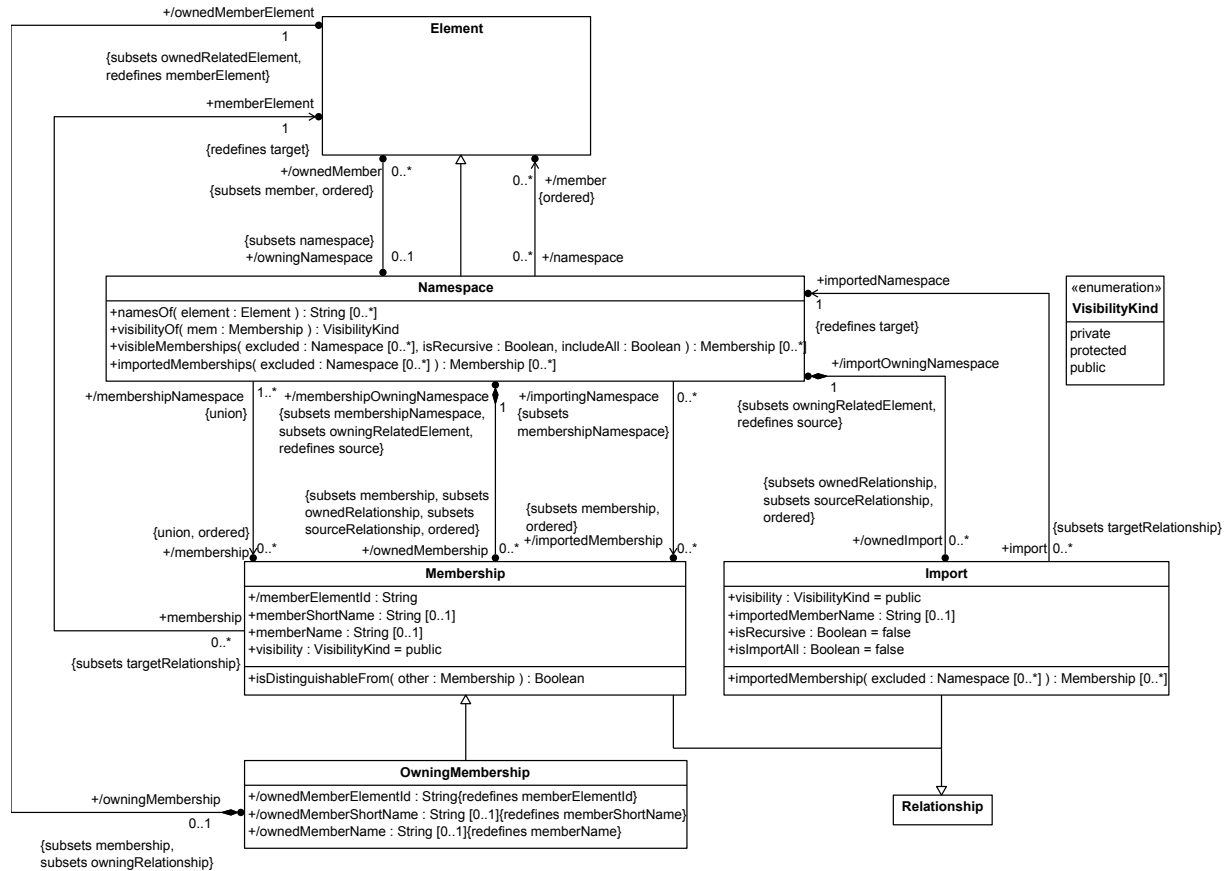


Figure 6. Namespaces

8.3.2.3.2 Import

Description

An **Import** is a **Relationship** between an **importOwningNamespace** in which one or more of the visible **Memberships** of the **importedNamespace** become **importedMemberships** of the **importOwningNamespace**. If **isImportAll** = **false** (the default), then only public **Memberships** are considered "visible". If **isImportAll** = **true**, then all **Memberships** are considered "visible", regardless of their declared **visibility**.

If no **importedMemberName** is given, then all visible **Memberships** are imported from the **importedNamespace**. If **isRecursive** = **true**, then visible **Memberships** are also recursively imported from all visible **ownedMembers** of the **Namespace** that are also **Namespaces**.

If an **importedMemberName** is given, then the **Membership** whose **effectiveMemberName** is that name is imported from the **importedNamespace**, if it is visible. If **isRecursive** = **true** and the imported

`memberElement` is a Namespace, then visible Memberships are also recursively imported from that Namespace and its owned sub-Namespace.

General Classes

Relationship

Attributes

`importedMemberName` : String [0..1]

The `effectiveMemberName` of the Membership of the `importedNamespace` to be imported. If not given, all public Memberships of the `importedNamespace` are imported.

`importedNamespace` : Namespace {redefines target}

The Namespace whose visible `members` are imported by this Import.

`/importOwningNamespace` : Namespace {subsets owningRelatedElement, redefines source}

The Namespace into which `members` are imported by this Import, which must be the `owningRelatedElement` of the Import.

`isImportAll` : Boolean

Whether to import memberships without regard to declared visibility.

`isRecursive` : Boolean

Whether to recursively import Memberships from visible, owned sub-namespaces.

`visibility` : VisibilityKind

The visibility level of the imported `members` from this Import relative to the `importOwningNamespace`.

Operations

`importedMembership(excluded : Namespace [0..*])` : Membership [0..*]

Returns the Memberships of the `importedNamespace` whose `memberElements` are to become imported `members` of the `importOwningNamespace`. By default, this is the set of publicly visible Memberships of the `importedNamespace`, but this may be overridden in specializations of Import. (The `excluded` parameter is used to handle the possibility of circular Import Relationships.)

```
body: let exclusions : Set(Namespace) =
    excluded->including(importOwningNamespace) in
let visibleMemberships : Sequence(Membership) =
    importedNamespace.visibleMemberships(exclusions, false, isImportAll) in
let memberships : Sequence(Membership) =
    if importedMemberName = null then visibleMemberships
    else visibleMemberships->select(effectiveMemberName = importedMemberName)
    endif in
if not isRecursive then memberships
else memberships->union(
    memberships.ownedMember->selectAsKind(Namespace) .
```



```

        visibleMemberships(exclusions, true, isImportAll))
endif

```

Constraints

None.

8.3.2.3.3 Membership

Description

Membership is a Relationship between a Namespace and an Element that indicates the Element is a member of (i.e., is contained in) the Namespace. Any `memberNames` specify how the `memberElement` is identified in the Namespace and the `visibility` specifies whether or not the `memberElement` is publicly visible from outside the Namespace.

If a Membership is an `OwningMembership`, then it owns its `memberElement`, which becomes an `ownedMember` of the `membershipOwningNamespace`. Otherwise, the `memberNames` of a Membership are effectively aliases within the `membershipOwningNamespace` for an Element with a separate `OwningMembership` in the same or a different Namespace.

General Classes

Relationship

Attributes

`memberElement` : Element {redefines target}

The Element that becomes a member of the `membershipOwningNamespace` due to this Membership.

`/memberElementId` : String

The `elementId` of the `memberElement`.

`memberName` : String [0..1]

The name of the `memberElement` relative to the `membershipOwningNamespace`.

`/membershipOwningNamespace` : Namespace {subsets `membershipNamespace`, `owningRelatedElement`, redefines source}

The Namespace of which the `memberElement` becomes a member due to this Membership.

`memberShortName` : String [0..1]

The short name of the `memberElement` relative to the `membershipOwningNamespace`.

`visibility` : VisibilityKind

Whether or not the Membership of the `memberElement` in the `membershipOwningNamespace` is publicly visible outside that Namespace.

Operations

isDistinguishableFrom(other : Membership) : Boolean

Whether this Membership is distinguishable from a given other Membership. By default, this is true if this Membership has no memberShortName or memberName; or each of the memberShortName and memberName are different than both of those of the other Membership; or neither of the metaclasses of the memberElement of this Membership and the memberElement of the other Membership conform to the other. But this may be overridden in specializations of Membership.

```
body: not (memberElement.ocIKindOf(other.memberElement.ocIType()) or
  other.memberElement.ocIKindOf(memberElement.ocIType())) or
(shortMemberName = null or
  (shortMemberName <> other.shortMemberName and
  shortMemberName <> other.memberName)) and
(memberName = null or
  (memberName <> other.shortMemberName and
  memberName <> other.memberName))
```

Constraints

None.

8.3.2.3.4 Namespace

Description

A Namespace is an Element that contains other Elements, known as its members, via Membership Relationships with those Elements. The members of a Namespace may be owned by the Namespace, aliased in the Namespace, or imported into the Namespace via Import Relationships with other Namespaces.

A Namespace can provide names for its members via the memberNames specified by the Memberships in the Namespace. If a Membership specifies a memberName, then that is the name of the corresponding memberElement relative to the Namespace. Note that the same Element may be the memberElement of multiple Memberships in a Namespace (though it may be owned at most once), each of which may define a separate alias for the Element relative to the Namespace.

General Classes

Element

Attributes

/importedMembership : Membership [0..*] {subsets membership, ordered}

The Memberships in this Namespace that result from Import Relationships between the Namespace and other Namespaces.

/member : Element [0..*] {ordered}

The set of all member Elements of this Namespace, derived as the memberElements of all memberships of the Namespace.

/membership : Membership [0..*] {ordered, union}

All Memberships in this Namespace, including (at least) the union of ownedMemberships and importedMemberships.

/ownedImport : Import [0..*] {subsets sourceRelationship, ownedRelationship, ordered}

The ownedRelationships of this Namespace that are Imports, for which the Namespace is the importOwningNamespace.

/ownedMember : Element [0..*] {subsets member, ordered}

The owned members of this Namespace, derived as the ownedMemberElements of the ownedMemberships of the Namespace.

/ownedMembership : Membership [0..*] {subsets membership, sourceRelationship, ownedRelationship, ordered}

The ownedRelationships of this Namespace that are Memberships, for which the Namespace is the membershipOwningNamespace.

Operations

importedMemberships(excluded : Namespace [0..*]) : Membership [0..*]

Derive the imported Memberships of this Namespace as the importedMembership of all ownedImports, excluding those Imports whose importOwningNamespace is in the excluded set, and excluding Memberships that have distinguishability collisions with each other or with any ownedMembership.

```
body: ownedImport->
  excluding(excluded->contains(importOwningNamespace)) .
  importedMembership(excluded)
```

namesOf(element : Element) : String [0..*]

Return the names of the given element as it is known in this Namespace.

```
body: let elementMemberships : Sequence(Membership) =
  memberships->select(memberElement = element)
in
  memberships.memberShortName->
    union(memberships.memberName)->
    asSet()
```

visibilityOf(mem : Membership) : VisibilityKind

Returns this visibility of mem relative to this Namespace. If mem is an importedMembership, this is the visibility of its Import. Otherwise it is the visibility of the Membership itself.

```
body: if importedMembership->includes(mem) then
  ownedImport->any(importedMembership(Set{})->includes(mem)).visibility
else if memberships->includes(mem) then
  mem.visibility
else
  VisibilityKind::private
endif
```

visibleMemberships(excluded : Namespace [0..*],isRecursive : Boolean,includeAll : Boolean) : Membership [0..*]

If includeAll = true, then return all the Memberships of this Namespace. Otherwise, return only the publicly visible Memberships of this Namespace (which includes those ownedMemberships that have a visibility of

public and those importedMemberships imported with a visibility of public). If isRecursive = true, also recursively include all visible Memberships of any visible owned Namespaces.

```
body: let publicMemberships : Sequence(Membership) =
    ownedMembership->
        select(visibility = VisibilityKind::public)->
        union(ownedImport->
            select(visibility = VisibilityKind::public) .
            importedMembership(excluded)) in
if not isRecursive then publicMemberships
else publicMemberships->union(publicMemberships->
    selectAsKind(Namespace) .
    publicMembership(excluded->including(this), true))
endif
```

Constraints

namespaceMembers

The members of a Namespace are the memberElements of all its memberships.

```
member = membership.memberElement
```

namespaceOwnedMember

The ownedMembers of a Namespace are the ownedMemberElements of all its ownedMemberships that are OwingMemberships.

```
ownedMember = ownedMembership->selectByKind(OwningMembership).ownedMemberElement
```

namespaceOwnedMembership

The ownedMemberships of a Namespace are all its ownedRelationships that are Memberships.

```
ownedMembership = ownedRelationship->selectByKind(Membership)
```

namespaceOwnedImport

The ownedImports of a Namespace are all its ownedRelationships that are Imports.

```
ownedImport = ownedRelationship->selectByKind(Import)
```

namespaceDistinguishability

All memberships of a Namespace must be distinguishable from each other.

```
membership->forAll(m1 | membership->forAll(m2 | m1 <> m2 implies m1.isDistinguishableFrom(m2)))
```

namespaceImportedMembership

The importedMemberships of a Namespace are derived using the importedMemberships() operation, with no initially excluded Namespaces.

```
importedMembership = importedMemberships(Set{})
```

8.3.2.3.5 VisibilityKind

Description

VisibilityKind is an enumeration whose literals specify the visibility of a Membership of an Element in a Namespace outside of that Namespace. Note that "visibility" specifically restricts whether an Element in a Namespace may be referenced by name from outside the Namespace and only otherwise restricts access to an Element as provided by specific constraints in the abstract syntax (e.g., preventing the import or inheritance of private Elements).

General Classes

None.

Literal Values

private

Indicates a Membership is not visible outside its owning Namespace.

protected

An intermediate level of visibility between `public` and `private`. By default, it is equivalent to `private` for the purposes of normal access to and import of Elements from a Namespace. However, other Relationships may be specified to include Memberships with `protected` visibility in the list of `memberships` for a Namespace (e.g., Generalization).

public

Indicates that a Membership is publicly visible outside its owning Namespace.

8.3.2.3.6 OwningMembership

Description

An OwningMembership is a Membership that owns its `memberElement` as a `ownedRelatedElement`. The `ownedMemberElementM` becomes an `ownedMember` of the `membershipOwningNamespace`.

General Classes

Membership

Attributes

`/ownedMemberElement : Element {subsets ownedRelatedElement, redefines memberElement}`

The Element that becomes an `ownedMember` of the `membershipOwningNamespace` due to this OwningMembership. Derived as the first `ownedRelatedElement` of the OwningRelationship.

`/ownedMemberElementId : String {redefines memberElementId}`

The `elementId` of the `ownedMemberElement`.

`/ownedMemberName : String [0..1] {redefines memberName}`

The `effectiveName` of the `ownedMemberElement`.

```
/ownedMemberShortName : String [0..1] {redefines memberShortName}
```

The `shortName` of the `ownedMemberElement`.

Operations

No operations.

Constraints

`owningMembershipOwnedMemberShortName`

The `ownedMemberName` of an `OwningMembership` is the `effectiveName` of its `ownedMemberElement`.

```
ownedMemberShortName = ownedMemberElement.shortName
```

`owningMembershipOwnedMemberName`

The `ownedMemberName` of an `OwningMembership` is the `effectiveName` of its `ownedMemberElement`.

```
ownedMemberName = ownedMemberElement.effectiveName
```

8.3.3 Core Abstract Syntax

8.3.3.1 Types Abstract Syntax

Kernel Modeling Language (KerML) v1.0, Submission



Figure 7. Types

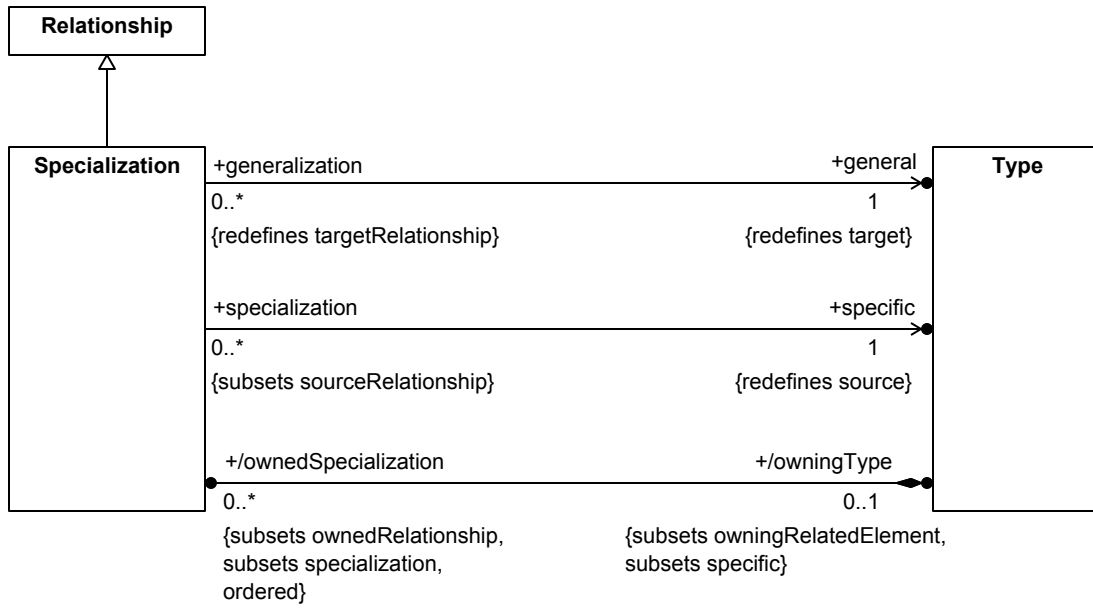


Figure 8. Specialization

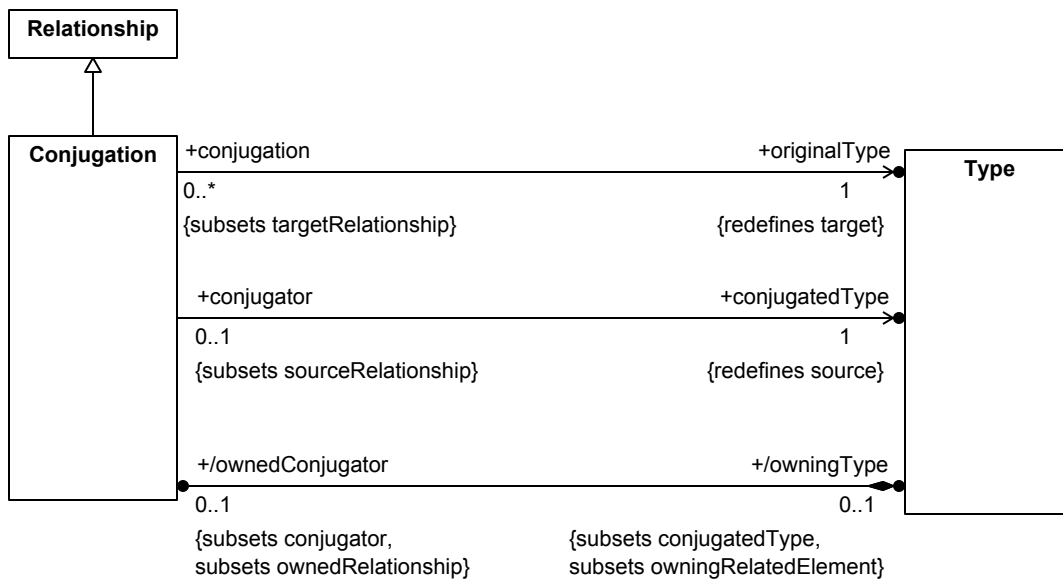


Figure 9. Conjugation

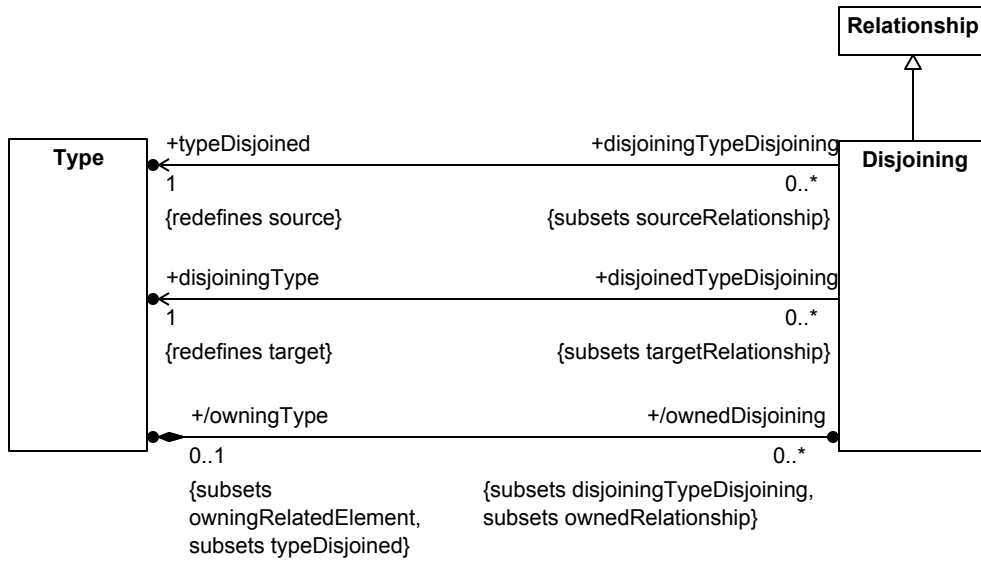


Figure 10. Disjoining

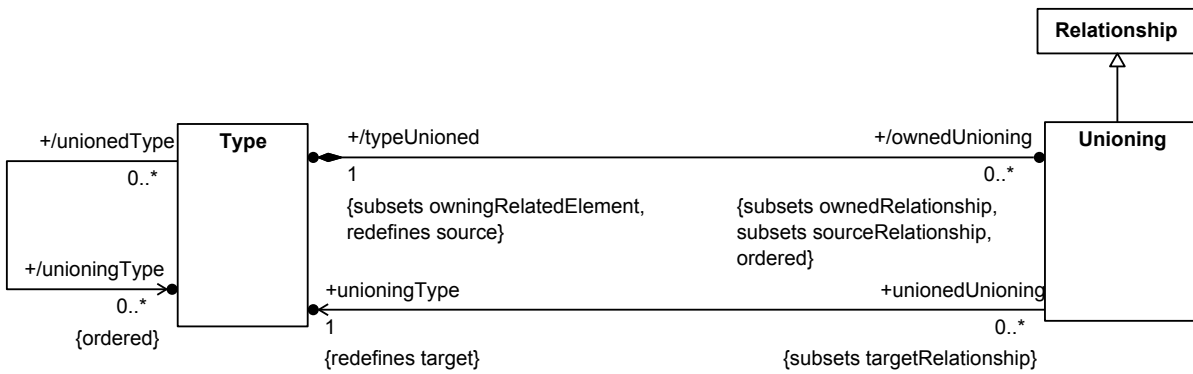


Figure 11. Unioning

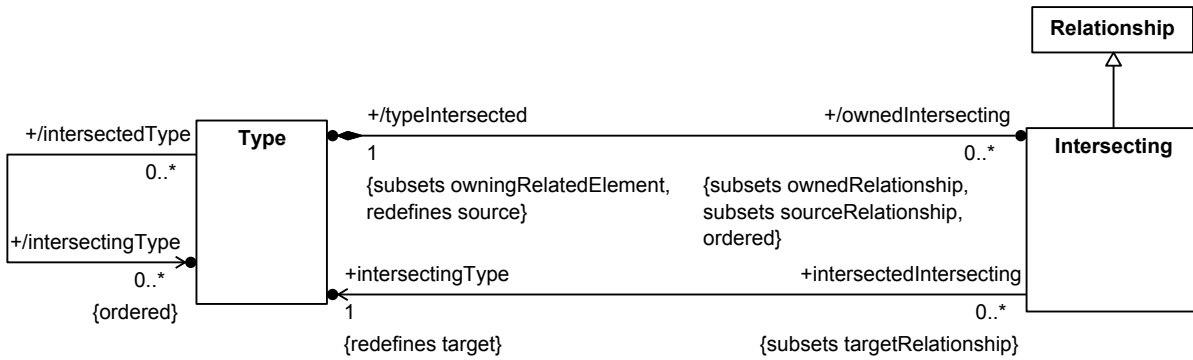


Figure 12. Intersecting

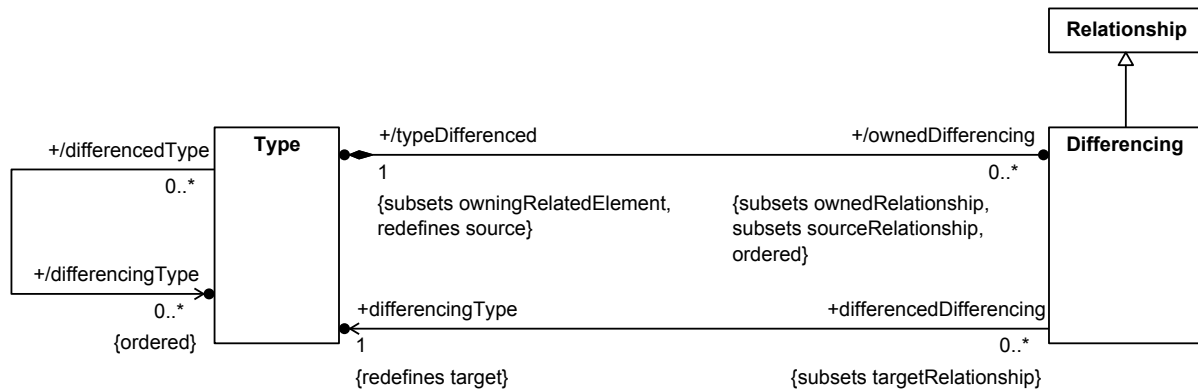


Figure 13. Differencing

8.3.3.1.2 Conjugation

Description

Conjugation is a Relationship between two types in which the `conjugatedType` inherits all the Features of the `originalType`, but with all input and output Features reversed. That is, any Features with a `FeatureMembership` with direction *in* relative to the `originalType` are considered to have an effective direction of *out* relative to the `conjugatedType` and, similarly, Features with direction *out* in the `originalType` are considered to have an effective direction of *in* in the `originalType`. Features with direction *inout*, or with no direction, in the `originalType`, are inherited without change.

A Type may participate as a `conjugatedType` in at most one Conjugation relationship, and such a Type may not also be the `specific` Type in any Generalization relationship.

General Classes

Relationship

Attributes

`conjugatedType` : Type {redefines source}

The Type that is the result of applying Conjugation to the `originalType`.

`originalType` : Type {redefines target}

The Type to be conjugated.

`/owningType` : Type [0..1] {subsets conjugatedType, owningRelatedElement}

The `conjugatedType` of this Type that is also its `owningRelatedElement`.

Operations

No operations.

Constraints

None.

8.3.3.1.3 Differencing

Description

Differencing is a Relationship that makes its `differencingType` one of the `differencingTypes` of its `typeDifferenced`.

General Classes

Relationship

Attributes

`differencingType` : Type {redefines target}

Type that partly determines interpretations of `typeDifferenced`, as described in `Type::differencingType`.

`/typeDifferenced` : Type {subsets `owningRelatedElement`, redefines source}

Type with interpretations partly determined by `differencingType`, as described in `Type::differencingType`.

Operations

No operations.

Constraints

None.

8.3.3.1.4 Disjoining

Description

A Disjoining is a Relationship between Types asserted to have interpretations that are not shared (disjoint) between them, identified as `typeDisjoined` and `disjoiningType`. For example, a Classifier for mammals is disjoint from a Classifier for minerals, and a Feature for people's parents is disjoint from a Feature for their children.

General Classes

Relationship

Attributes

`disjoiningType` : Type {redefines target}

Type asserted to be disjoint with the `typeDisjoined`.

`/owningType` : Type [0..1] {subsets `typeDisjoined`, `owningRelatedElement`}

A `typeDisjoined` that is also an `owningRelatedElement`.

`typeDisjoined` : Type {redefines source}

Type asserted to be disjoint with the `disjoiningType`.

Operations

No operations.

Constraints

None.

8.3.3.1.5 FeatureDirectionKind

Description

FeatureDirectionKind enumerates the possible kinds of `direction` that a Feature may be given as a member of a Type.

General Classes

None.

Literal Values

`in`

Values of the Feature on each instance of its domain are determined externally to that instance and used internally.

`inout`

Values of the Feature on each instance are determined either as *in* or *out* directions, or both.

`out`

Values of the Feature on each instance of its domain are determined internally to that instance and used externally.

8.3.3.1.6 FeatureMembership

Description

FeatureMembership is an `OwningMembership` for a Feature in a Type that is also a `Featuring Relationship` between the Feature and the Type, in which the `featuringType` is the `source` and the `featureOfType` is the `target`. A FeatureMembership is always owned by its `owningType`, which is the `featuringType` for the FeatureMembership considered as a `Featuring`.

General Classes

`Featuring`
`OwningMembership`

Attributes

`/ownedMemberFeature : Feature {redefines ownedMemberElement, feature}`

The Feature that this FeatureMembership relates to its `owningType`, making it an `ownedFeature` of the `owningType`.

`/owningType : Type {subsets type, redefines membershipOwningNamespace, type}`

The Type that owns this FeatureMembership.

Operations

No operations.

Constraints

None.

8.3.3.1.7 Intersecting

Description

Intersecting is a Relationship that makes its `intersectingType` one of the `intersectingTypes` of its `typeIntersected`.

General Classes

Relationship

Attributes

`intersectingType` : Type {redefines target}

Type that partly determines interpretations of `typeIntersected`, as described in `Type :: intersectingType`.

`/typeIntersected` : Type {subsets `owningRelatedElement`, redefines source}

Type with interpretations partly determined by `intersectingType`, as described in `Type :: intersectingType`.

Operations

No operations.

Constraints

None.

8.3.3.1.8 Specialization

Description

Specialization is a Relationship between two Types that requires all instances of the `specific` type to also be instances of the `general` Type (i.e., the set of instances of the `specific` Type is a *subset* of those of the `general` Type, which might be the same set).

General Classes

Relationship

Attributes

`general` : Type {redefines target}

A Type with a superset of all instances of the `specific` Type, which might be the same set.

`/owningType : Type [0..1] {subsets specific, owningRelatedElement}`

The Type that is the `specific` Type of this Specialization and owns it as its `owningRelatedElement`.

`specific : Type {redefines source}`

A Type with a subset of all instances of the `general` Type, which might be the same set.

Operations

No operations.

Constraints

`generalizationSpecificNotConjugated`

The `specific` Type of a Generalization cannot be a conjugated Type.

`not specific.isConjugated`

8.3.3.1.9 Multiplicity

Description

A Multiplicity is a Feature whose co-domain is a set of natural numbers that includes the number of sequences determined below, based on the kind of `typeWithMultiplicity`:

- Classifiers: minimal sequences (the single length sequences of the Classifier).
- Features: sequences with the same feature-pair head. In the case of Features with Classifiers as domain and co-domain, these sequences are pairs, with the first element in a single-length sequence of the domain Classifier (head of the pair), and the number of pairs with the same first element being among the Multiplicity co-domain numbers.

Multiplicity co-domains (in models) can be specified by Expression that might vary in their results. If the `typeWithMultiplicity` is a Classifier, the domain of the Multiplicity shall be *Anything*. If the `typeWithMultiplicity` is a Feature, the Multiplicity shall have the same domain as the `typeWithMultiplicity`.

General Classes

Feature

Attributes

None.

Operations

No operations.

Constraints

None.

8.3.3.1.10 Type

Description

A Type is a Namespace that is the most general kind of Element supporting the semantics of classification. A Type may be a Classifier or a Feature, defining conditions on what is classified by the Type (see also the description of `isSufficient`).

General Classes

Namespace

Attributes

`/differencingType : Type [0..*] {ordered}`

The interpretations of a Type with `differencingTypes` are asserted to be those of the first of those Types, but not including those of the remaining types. For example, a Classifier might be the difference of a Classifier for people and another for people of a particular nationality, leaving people who are not of that nationality. Similarly, a feature of people might be the difference between a feature for their children and a Classifier for people of a particular sex, identifying their children not of that sex (because the interpretations of the children feature that identify those of that sex are also interpretations of the Classifier for that sex).

`/directedFeature : Feature [0..*] {subsets feature, ordered}`

The `features` of this Type that have a non-null `direction`.

`/endFeature : Feature [0..*] {subsets feature, ordered}`

All `features` related to this Type by `EndFeatureMemberships`.

`/feature : Feature [0..*] {subsets member, ordered}`

The `ownedMemberFeatures` of the `featureMemberships` of this Type.

`/featureMembership : FeatureMembership [0..*] {ordered}`

The `FeatureMemberships` for `features` of this Type, which include all `ownedFeatureMemberships` and those `inheritedMemberships` that are `FeatureMemberships` (but does *not* include any `importedMemberships`).

`/inheritedFeature : Feature [0..*] {subsets feature, ordered}`

All the `memberFeatures` of the `inheritedMemberships` of this Type.

`/inheritedMembership : Membership [0..*] {subsets membership, ordered}`

All `Memberships` inherited by this Type via Generalization or Conjugation. These are included in the derived union for the `memberships` of the Type.

`/input : Feature [0..*] {subsets directedFeature, ordered}`

All `features` related to this Type by `FeatureMemberships` that have `direction in` or `inout`.

`/intersectingType : Type [0..*] {ordered}`

The interpretations of a Type with `code>intersectingTypes` are asserted to be those in common among the `intersectingTypes`, which are the Types derived from the `intersectingType` of the `ownedIntersectings` of this Type. For example, a Classifier might be an intersection of Classifiers for people of a particular sex and of a particular nationality. Similarly, a feature for people's children of a particular sex might be the intersection of a feature for their children and a Classifier for people of that sex (because the interpretations of the children feature that identify those of that sex are also interpretations of the Classifier for that sex).

`isAbstract` : Boolean

Indicates whether instances of this Type must also be instances of at least one of its specialized Types.

`/isConjugated` : Boolean

Indicates whether this Type has an `ownedConjugator`. (See Conjugation.)

`isSufficient` : Boolean

Whether all things that meet the classification conditions of this Type must be classified by the Type.

(A Type gives conditions that must be met by whatever it classifies, but when `isSufficient` is false, things may meet those conditions but still not be classified by the Type. For example, a Type `Car` that is not sufficient could require everything it classifies to have four wheels, but not all four wheeled things would need to be cars. However, if the type `Car` were sufficient, it would classify all four-wheeled things.)

`/multiplicity` : Multiplicity [0..1] {subsets member}

The one `member` (at most) of this Type that is a Multiplicity, which constrains the cardinality of the Type. A `multiplicity` can be owned or inherited. If it is owned, the `multiplicity` must redefine the `multiplicity` (if it has one) of any general Type of a Generalization of this Type.

`/output` : Feature [0..*] {subsets directedFeature, ordered}

All `features` related to this Type by `FeatureMemberships` that have `direction out` or `inout`.

`/ownedConjugator` : Conjugation [0..1] {subsets ownedRelationship, conjugator}

A Conjugation owned by this Type for which the Type is the `originalType`.

`/ownedDifferencing` : Differencing [0..*] {subsets sourceRelationship, ownedRelationship, ordered}

The `ownedRelationships` of this Type that are Differencings, having this Type as their `typeDifferenced`.

`/ownedDisjoining` : Disjoining [0..*] {subsets ownedRelationship, disjoiningTypeDisjoining}

The `ownedRelationships` of this Type that are Disjoinings, for which the Type is the `typeDisjoined` Type.

`/ownedEndFeature` : Feature [0..*] {subsets endFeature, ownedFeature, ordered}

All `endFeatures` of this Type that are `ownedFeatures`.

`/ownedFeature` : Feature [0..*] {subsets ownedMember, ordered}

The `ownedMemberFeatures` of the `ownedFeatureMemberships` of this Type.

/ownedFeatureMembership : FeatureMembership [0..*] {subsets ownedMembership, featureMembership, featuringOfType, ordered}

The ownedMemberships of this Type that are FeatureMemberships, for which the Type is the owningType. Each such FeatureMembership identifies an ownedFeature of the Type.

/ownedIntersecting : Intersecting [0..*] {subsets ownedRelationship, sourceRelationship, ordered}

The ownedRelationships of this Type that are Intersectings, have the Type as their typeIntersected.

/ownedSpecialization : Specialization [0..*] {subsets specialization, ownedRelationship, ordered}

The ownedRelationships of this Type that are Specializations, for which the Type is the specific Type.

/ownedUnioning : Unioning [0..*] {subsets ownedRelationship, sourceRelationship, ordered}

The ownedRelationships of this Type that are Unionings, having the Type as their typeUnioned.

/unioningType : Type [0..*] {ordered}

The interpretations of a Type with code>unioningTypes are asserted to be the same as those of all the unioningTypes together, which are the Types derived from the unioningType of the ownedUnionings of this Type. For example, a Classifier for people might be the union of Classifiers for all the sexes. Similarly, a feature for people's children might be the union of features dividing them in the same ways as people in general.

Operations

allSupertypes() : Type [1..*]

Return all Types related to this Type as supertypes directly or transitively by Generalization Relationships.

```
body: ownedSpecialization->  
  closure(general.ownedSpecialization).general->  
  including(self)
```

directionOf(feature : Feature) : FeatureDirectionKind [0..1]

If the given feature is a feature of this type, then return its direction relative to this type, taking conjugation into account.

```
body: if input->includes(feature) and output->includes(feature) then  
  FeatureDirectionKind::inout  
else if input->includes(feature) then  
  FeatureDirectionKind::_in'  
else if output->includes(feature) then  
  FeatureDirectionKind::out  
else  
  null  
endif endif endif
```

inheritedMemberships(excluded : Type [0..*]) : Membership [0..*]

Return the inherited Memberships of this Type, excluding those supertypes in the excluded set.

visibleMemberships(excluded : Namespace [0..*],isRecursive : Boolean,includeAll : Boolean) : Membership [0..*]

The visible Memberships of a Type include inheritedMemberships.

```
body: let visibleInheritedMemberships : Sequence(Membership) =
    inheritedMemberships(excluded)->
        select(includeAll or visibility = VisibilityKind::public) in
self.oclAsType(Namespace).visibleMemberships(excluded, isRecursive, includeAll)->
    union(visibleInheritedMemberships)
```

Constraints

typeOwnedConjugator

[no documentation]

```
let ownedConjugators: Sequence(Conjugator) =
    ownedRelationship->selectByKind(Conjugation) in
    ownedConjugators->size() = 1 and
    ownedConjugator = ownedConjugators->at(1)
```

typeSpecializesAnything

[no documentation]

```
allSupertypes()->includes(Kernel Library::Anything)
```

typeDifferencingType

The differencingTypes of a Type are the differencingTypes of its ownedDifferencings, in the same order.

```
differencingType = ownedDifferencing.differencingType
```

typeValidateIntersectingTypesNotSelf

A Type cannot be one of its own intersectingTypes.

```
intersectingType->excludes(self)
```

typeUnioningType

The unioningTypes of a Type are the unioningTypes of its ownedUnionings.

```
unioningType = ownedUnioning.unioningType
```

typeOwnedSpecialization

[no documentation]

```
ownedSpecialization = ownedRelationship->selectByKind(Specialization)->
    select(g | g.special = self)
```

typeOutput

If this Type is conjugated, then its outputs are the inputs of the originalType. Otherwise, its outputs are all features with FeatureMembership direction of out or inout.

```

output =
  if isConjugated then
    conjugator.originalType.input
  else
    feature->select(direction = out or direction = inout)
  endif

```

typeIntersectingType

The intersectingTypes of a Type are the intersectingTypes of its ownedIntersectings.

```
intersectingType = ownedIntersecting.intersectingType
```

typeMultiplicity

The multiplicity of this Type is all its features that are Multiplicities. (There must be at most one.)

```
multiplicity = feature->select(oclIsKindOf(Multiplicity))
```

typeInheritedMembership

[no documentation]

```
inheritedMembership = inheritedMemberships(Set{})
```

typeValidateDifferencingTypesNotSelf

A Type cannot be one of its own differencingTypes.

```
differencingType->excludes(self)
```

typeDirectedFeature

[no documentation]

```
directedFeature = feature->select(direction <> null)
```

typeFeatureMembership

The featureMemberships of a Type is the union of the ownedFeatureMemberships and those inheritedMemberships that are FeatureMemberships.

```
featureMembership = ownedMembership->union(
  inheritedMembership->selectByKind(FeatureMembership))
```

typeFeature

The features of a Type are the ownedMemberFeatures of its featureMemberships.

```
feature = featureMembership.ownedMemberFeature
```

typeOwnedFeature

The ownedFeatures of a Type are the ownedMemberFeatures of its ownedFeatureMemberships.

```
ownedFeature = ownedFeatureMembership.ownedMemberFeature
```

typeDisjointType

[no documentation]

```
disjointType = disjoiningTypeDisjoining.disjoiningType
```

typeValidateunioningTypesNotSelf

A Type cannot be one of its own unioningTypes.

```
unioningType->excludes(self)
```

typeOwnedFeatureMembership

The ownedFeatureMemberships of a Type are its ownedMemberships that are FeatureMemberships.

```
ownedFeatureMembership = ownedRelationship->selectByKind(FeatureMembership)
```

typeInput

If this Type is conjugated, then its inputs are the outputs of the originalType. Otherwise, its inputs are all features with FeatureMembership direction of in or inout.

```
input =
  if isConjugated then
    conjugator.originalType.output
  else
    feature->select(direction = _'in' or direction = inout)
  endif
```

8.3.3.1.11 Unioning

Description

Unioning is a Relationship that makes its unioningType one of the unioningTypes of its typeUnioned.

General Classes

Relationship

Attributes

/typeUnioned : Type {subsets owningRelatedElement, redefines source}

Type with interpretations partly determined by unioningType, as described in Type::unioningType.

unioningType : Type {redefines target}

Type that partly determines interpretations of typeUnioned, as described in Type::unioningType.

Operations

No operations.

Constraints

None.

8.3.3.2 Classifiers Abstract Syntax

8.3.3.2.1 Overview

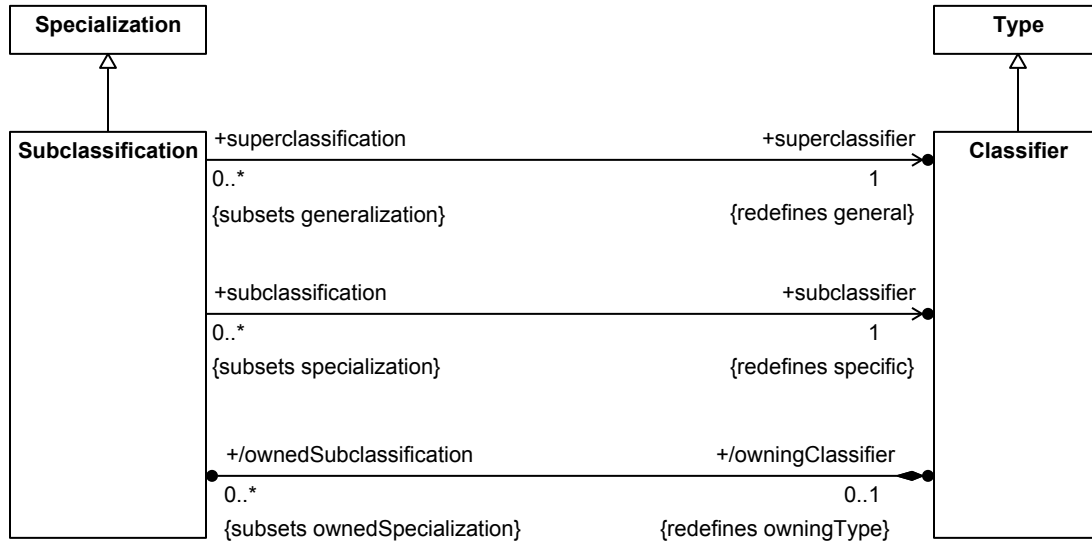


Figure 14. Classifiers

8.3.3.2.2 Classifier

Description

A Classifier is a Type for model elements that classify:

- Things (in the universe) regardless of how Features relate them. These are sequences of exactly one thing (sequence of length 1).
- How the above things are related by Features. These are sequences of multiple things (length > 1).

Classifiers that classify relationships (sequence length > 1) must also classify the things at the end of those sequences (sequence length =1). Because of this, Classifiers specializing Features cannot classify anything (any sequences).

General Classes

Type

Attributes

`/ownedSubclassification : Subclassification [0..*] {subsets ownedSpecialization}`

The `ownedSpecializations` of this Classifier that are Subclassifications, for which this Classifier is the subclassifier.

Operations

No operations.

Constraints

classifierOwnedSuperclassings

[no documentation]

```
ownedSuperclassing = ownedGeneralization->intersection(superclassing)
```

classifierMultiplicityDomain

If a Classifier has a `multiplicity`, then the `multiplicity` shall have no `featuringTypes` (meaning that its domain is implicitly *Base::Anything*).

```
multiplicity <> null implies multiplicity.featuringType->isEmpty()
```

8.3.3.2.3 Subclassification

Description

Subclassification is Specialization in which both the `specific` and `general` Types are Classifiers. This means all instances of the specific Classifier are also instances of the general Classifier.

General Classes

Specialization

Attributes

/owningClassifier : Classifier [0..1] {redefines owningType}

The Classifier that owns this Subclassification relationship, which must also be its `subclassifier`.

subclassifier : Classifier {redefines specific}

The more specific Classifier in this Subclassification.

superclassifier : Classifier {redefines general}

The more general Classifier in this Subclassification.

Operations

No operations.

Constraints

None.

8.3.3.3 Features Abstract Syntax

Kernel Modeling Language (KerML) v1.0, Submission



Figure 15. Features

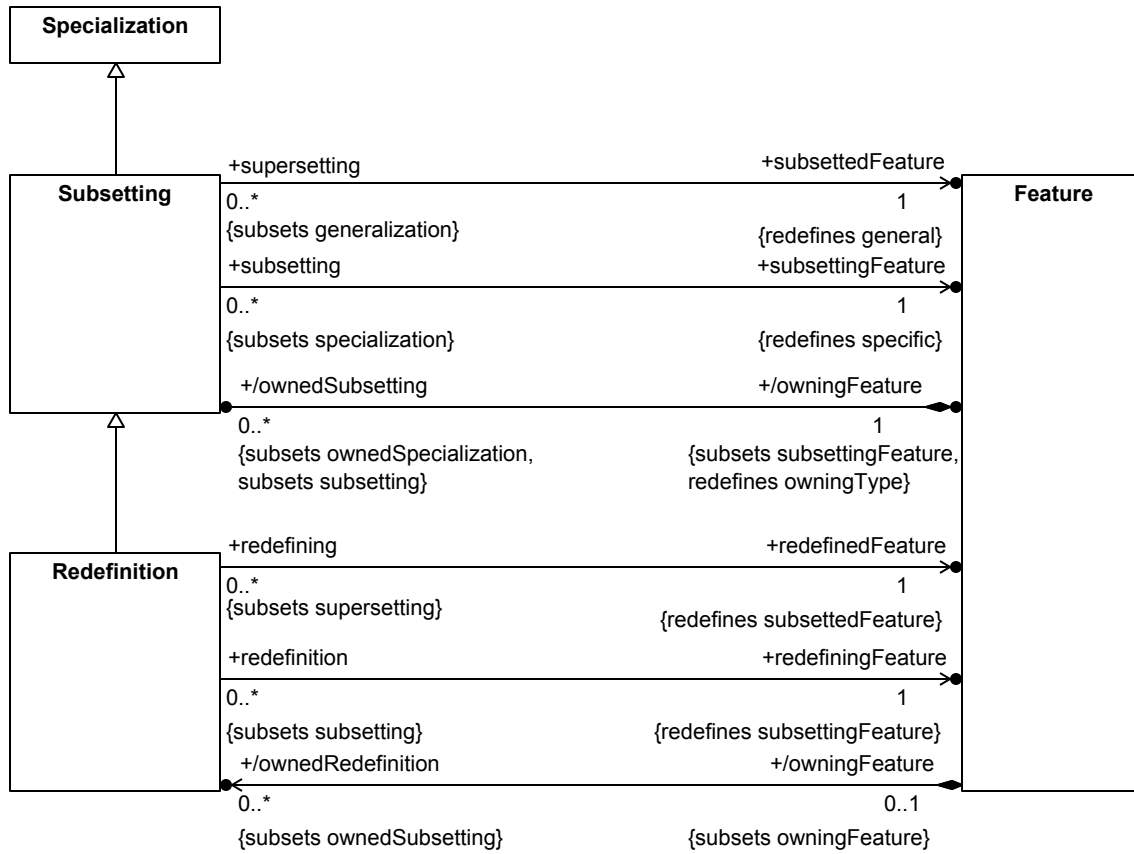


Figure 16. Subsetting

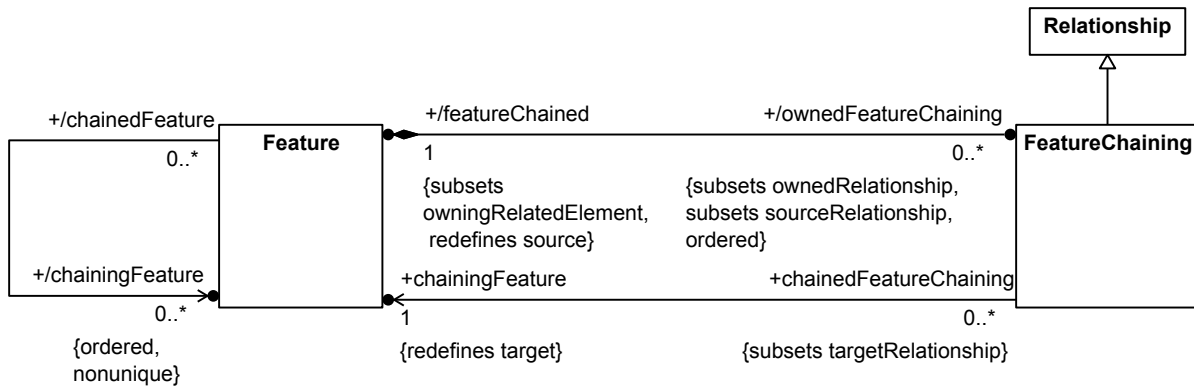


Figure 17. Feature Chaining

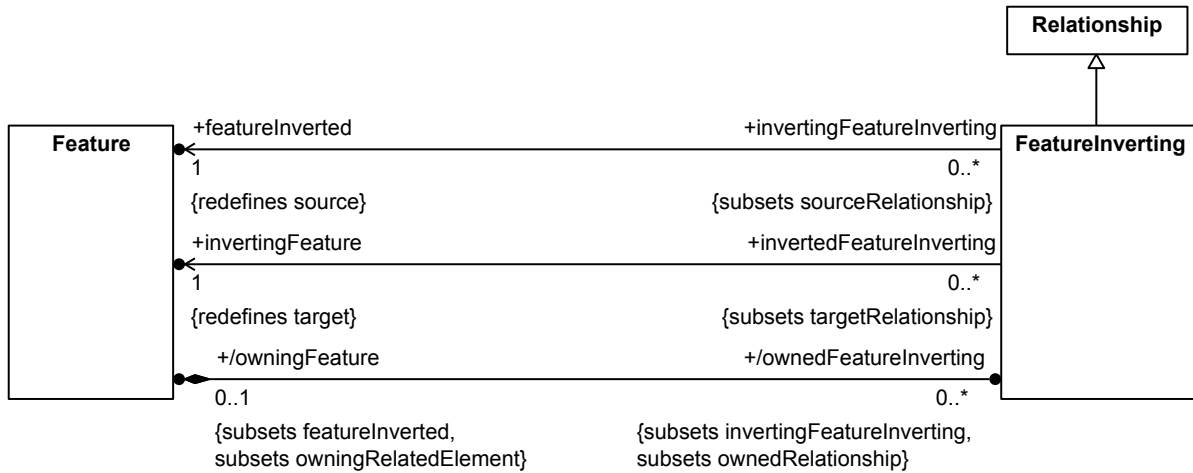


Figure 18. Feature Inverting

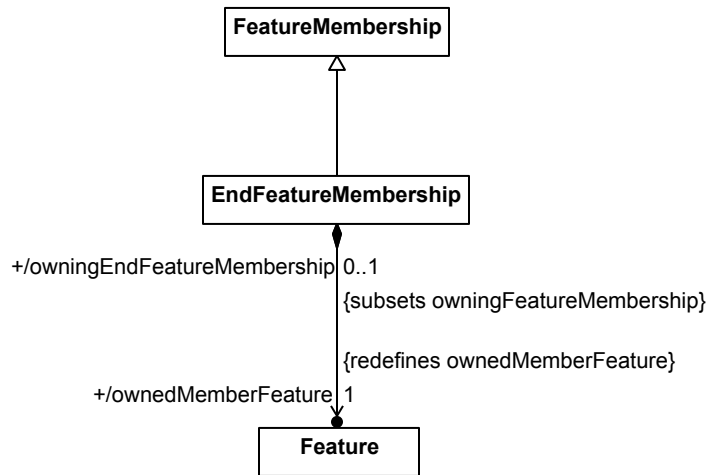


Figure 19. End Feature Membership

8.3.3.3.2 EndFeatureMembership

Description

EndFeatureMembership is a FeatureMembership that requires its `memberFeature` be owned and have `isEnd = true`.

General Classes

FeatureMembership

Attributes

/ownedMemberFeature : Feature {redefines ownedMemberFeature}

Operations

No operations.

Constraints

`endFeatureMembershipIsEnd`

The `ownedMemberFeature` of an `EndFeatureMembership` must be an end Feature.

`ownedMemberFeature.isEnd`

8.3.3.3.3 Feature

Description

A Feature is a Type that classifies sequences of multiple things (in the universe). These must concatenate a sequence drawn from the intersection of the Feature's `featuringTypes` (*domain*) with a sequence drawn from the intersection of its `types` (*co-domain*), treating (co)domains as sets of sequences. The domain of Features that do not have any `featuringTypes` is the same as if it were the library Type `Anything`. A Feature's `types` include at least `Anything`, which can be narrowed to other Classifiers by Redefinition.

In the simplest cases, a Feature's `featuringTypes` and `types` are Classifiers, its sequences being pairs (length = 2), with the first element drawn from the Feature's domain and the second element from its co-domain (the Feature "value"). Examples include cars paired with wheels, people paired with other people, and cars paired with numbers representing the car length.

Since Features are Types, their `featuringTypes` and `types` can be Features. When both are, Features classify sequences of at least four elements (length > 3), otherwise at least three (length > 2). The `featuringTypes` of *nested* Features are Features.

The values of a Feature with `chainingFeatures` are the same as values of the last Feature in the chain, which can be found by starting with values of the first Feature, then from those values to values of the second feature, and so on, to values of the last feature.

General Classes

Type

Attributes

`/chainingFeature : Feature [0..*] {ordered, nonunique}`

The Features that are chained together to determine the values of this Feature, derived from the `chainingFeatures` of the `ownedFeatureChainings` of this Feature, in the same order. The values of a Feature with `chainingFeatures` are the same as values of the last Feature in the chain, which can be found by starting with the values of the first Feature (for each instance of the original Feature's domain), then on each of those to the values of the second Feature in `chainingFeatures`, and so on, to values of the last Feature. The Features related to a Feature by a `FeatureChaining` are identified as its `chainingFeatures`.

`direction : FeatureDirectionKind [0..1]`

Determines how values of this Feature are determined or used (see `FeatureDirectionKind`).

`/endOwningType : Type [0..1] {subsets typeWithEndFeature, owningType}`

The Type that is related to this Feature by an `EndFeatureMembership` in which the Feature is an `ownedMemberFeature`.

/featuringType : Type [0..*] {ordered}

Types that feature this Feature, such that any instance in the domain of the Feature must be classified by all of these Types, including at least all the `featuringTypes` of its `ownedTypeFeaturings`.

isComposite : Boolean

Whether the Feature is a composite feature of its `featuringType`. If so, the values of the Feature cannot exist after the instance of the `featuringType` no longer does.

.

isDerived : Boolean

Whether the values of this Feature can always be computed from the values of other Features.

isEnd : Boolean

Whether or not the this Feature is an end Feature, requiring a different interpretation of the `multiplicity` of the Feature.

An end Feature is always considered to map each domain entity to a single co-domain entity, whether or not a Multiplicity is given for it. If a Multiplicity is given for an end Feature, rather than giving the co-domain cardinality for the Feature as usual, it specifies a cardinality constraint for *navigating* across the `endFeatures` of the `featuringType` of the end Feature. That is, if a Type has n `endFeatures`, then the Multiplicity of any one of those end Features constrains the cardinality of the set of values of that Feature when the values of the other $n-1$ end Features are held fixed.

isOrdered : Boolean

Whether an order exists for the values of this Feature or not.

isPortion : Boolean

Whether the values of this Feature are contained in the space and time of instances of the Feature's domain.

isReadOnly : Boolean

Whether the values of this Feature can change over the lifetime of an instance of the domain.

isUnique : Boolean

Whether or not values for this Feature must have no duplicates or not.

/ownedFeatureChaining : FeatureChaining [0..*] {subsets sourceRelationship, ownedRelationship, ordered}

The `FeatureChainings` that are among the `ownedRelationships` of this Feature (identify their `featureChained` also as an `owningRelatedElement`).

/ownedFeatureInverting : FeatureInverting [0..*] {subsets ownedRelationship, invertingFeatureInverting}

The `ownedRelationships` of this Feature that are `FeatureInvertings`, for which the Feature is the `featureInverted`.

/ownedRedefinition : Redefinition [0..*] {subsets ownedSubsetting}

The `ownedSubsettings` of this Feature that are Redefinitions, for which the Feature is the `redefiningFeature`.

`/ownedReferenceSubsetting : ReferenceSubsetting [0..1] {subsets ownedSubsetting}`

The one `ownedSubsetting` of this Feature, if any, that is a `ReferenceSubsetting`, for which the Feature is the `referencingFeature`.

`/ownedSubsetting : Subsetting [0..*] {subsets ownedSpecialization, subsetting}`

The `ownedGeneralizations` of this Feature that are `Subsettings`, for which the Feature is the `subsettingFeature`.

`/ownedTypeFeaturing : TypeFeaturing [0..*] {subsets ownedRelationship, typeFeaturing, ordered}`

The `ownedRelationships` of this Feature that are `TypeFeaturings`, for which the Feature is the `featureOfType`.

`/ownedTyping : FeatureTyping [0..*] {subsets ownedSpecialization, typing, ordered}`

The `ownedGeneralizations` of this Feature that are `FeatureTypings`, for which the Feature is the `typedFeature`.

`/owningFeatureMembership : FeatureMembership [0..1] {subsets owningMembership, featuring}`

The `FeatureMembership` that owns this Feature as an `ownedMemberFeature`, determining its `owningType`.

`/owningType : Type [0..1] {subsets typeWithFeature, owningNamespace, featuringType}`

The `Type` that is the `owningType` of the `owningFeatureMembership` of this `Type`.

`/type : Type [1..*] {ordered}`

Types that restrict the values of this Feature, such that the values must be instances of all the types. The types of a Feature are derived from its `ownedFeatureTypings` and the types of its `ownedSubsettings`.

Operations

`directionFor(type : Type) : FeatureDirectionKind [0..1]`

Return the `directionOf` this Feature relative to the given `type`.

body: `type.directionOf(self)`

`effectiveName() : String [0..1]`

If a Feature has no `name`, then its effective name is given by the effective name of the Feature returned by `namingFeature`, if any.

body: `if name <> null then
 name
else
 let namingFeature : Feature = namingFeature() in
 if namingFeature = null then
 null
 else
 namingFeature.effectiveName()`

```

    endif
endif

```

isFeaturedWithin(type : Type [0..1]) : Boolean

Return whether this Feature has the given type as a direct or indirect *featuringType*. If type is null, then check if this Feature is implicitly directly or indirectly featured in *Base::Anything*.

body: type = null and feature.featuringType->isEmpty() or
 type <> null and feature.featuringType->includes(type) or
 feature.featuringType->exists(t |
 t.ocIsKindOf(Feature) and
 t.ocAsType(Feature).isFeaturedWithin(type))

namingFeature() : Feature [0..1]

By default, the naming feature of a Feature is given by its first redefined Feature, if any.

body: let redefinitions : Sequence(Redefinition) = ownedRedefinition in
 if redefinitions->isEmpty() then
 null
 else
 redefinitions->at(1).redefinedFeature
 endif

Constraints

featureChainingFeatureNot1

[no documentation]

chainingFeatures->size() <> 1

featureType

If a Feature has chainingFeatures, then its types are the same as the last chainingFeature. Otherwise its types are the union of the types of its ownedTypings and the types of the subsettedFeatures of its ownedSubsettings, with all redundant supertypes removed.

.

featureOwnedSubsettings

[no documentation]

ownedSubsetting = ownedGeneralization->selectByKind(Subsetting)

featureOwnedRedefinitions

[no documentation]

ownedRedefinition = ownedSubsetting->selectByKind(Redefinition)

featureMultiplicityDomain

If a Feature has a multiplicity, then the featuringTypes of the multiplicity must be the same as those of the Feature itself.

```
multiplicity <> null implies multiplicity.featureingType = featuringType
```

featureInvertedFeature

[no documentation]

```
invertedFeature = invertedFeatureInverting.featureInverted
```

featureRequiredSpecialization

A Feature must directly or indirectly specialize `Base::things` from the Kernel Library.

```
allSupertypes()->includes(KernelLibrary::things)
```

featureOwnedTypeFeaturing

[no documentation]

```
ownedTypeFeaturing = ownedRelationship->selectByKind(TypeFeaturing)->  
  select(tf | tf.featureOfType = self)
```

featureOwnedTyping

[no documentation]

```
ownedTyping = ownedGeneralization->selectByKind(FeatureTyping)
```

featureInverseFeatures

[no documentation]

```
inverseFeature = invertingFeatureInverting.featureInverse
```

featureChainingFeaturesNotSelf

A Feature cannot be one of its own chainingFeatures.

```
chainingFeatures->excludes(self)
```

featureIsEnd

[no documentation]

```
isEnd = owningFeatureMembership <> null and owningFeatureMembership.ocIsKindOf(EndFeatureMembership)
```

featureIsDerived

[no documentation]

```
chainingfeatureChainings->notEmpty() implies (owningFeatureMembership <> null implies owningFeatureM
```

featureIsComposite

[no documentation]

```
isComposite = owningFeatureMembership <> null and owningFeatureMembership.isComposite
```

featureOwnedFeatureChaining

The ownedFeatureChainings of this Feature are the ownedRelationships that are FeatureChainings.

```
ownedFeatureChaining = ownedRelationship->selectByKind (FeatureChaining)
```

featureChainingFeature

The chainingFeatures of a Feature are the chainingFeatures of its ownedFeatureChainings.

```
chainingFeature = ownedFeatureChaining.chainingFeature
```

8.3.3.3.4 FeatureChaining

Description

FeatureChaining is a Relationship that makes its target Feature one of the chainingFeatures of its owning Feature.

General Classes

Relationship

Attributes

chainingFeature : Feature {redefines target}

The Feature whose values partly determine values of featureChained, as described in `Feature::chainingFeature`.

`/featureChained : Feature {subsets owningRelatedElement, redefines source}`

The Feature whose values are partly determined by values of the chainingFeature, as described in `Feature::chainingFeature`.

Operations

No operations.

Constraints

None.

8.3.3.3.5 FeatureInverting

Description

A FeatureInverting is a Relationship between Features asserting that their interpretations (sequences) are the reverse of each other, identified as `featureInverted` and `invertingFeature`. For example, a Feature identifying each person's parents is the inverse of a Feature identifying each person's children. A person identified as a parent of another will identify that other as one of their children.

General Classes

Relationship

Attributes

`featureInverted` : Feature {redefines `source`}

Feature that is an the inverse of `invertingFeature`.

`invertingFeature` : Feature {redefines `target`}

Feature that is an inverse of `invertedFeature`.

`/owningFeature` : Feature [0..1] {subsets `owningRelatedElement`, `featureInverted`}

A `featureInverted` that is also an `owningRelatedElement`.

Operations

No operations.

Constraints

None.

8.3.3.3.6 FeatureTyping

Description

FeatureTyping is Specialization in which the `specific` Type is a Feature. This means the set of instances of the (specific) `typedFeature` is a subset of the set of instances of the (general) `type`. In the simplest case, the `type` is a Classifier, whereupon the `typedFeature` subset has instances interpreted as sequences ending in things (in the modeled universe) that are instances of the Classifier.

General Classes

Specialization

Attributes

`/owningFeature` : Feature [0..1] {subsets `typedFeature`, redefines `owningType`}

The Feature that owns this FeatureTyping (which must also be the `typedFeature`).

`type` : Type {redefines `general`}

The Type that is being applied by this FeatureTyping.

`typedFeature` : Feature {redefines `specific`}

The Feature that has its Type determined by this FeatureTyping.

Operations

No operations.

Constraints

None.

8.3.3.3.7 Featuring

Description

Featuring is a Relationship between a Type and a Feature that is featured by that Type. Every instance in the domain of the `feature` must be classified by the `type`. This means that sequences that are classified by the `feature` must have a prefix subsequence that is classified by the `type`.

Featuring is abstract and does not commit to which of `feature` or `type` are the source or target. This commitment is made in the subclasses of Featuring, TypeFeaturing and FeatureMembership, which are directed differently.

General Classes

Relationship

Attributes

`feature` : Feature {subsets relatedElement}

The Feature that is featured by the `featuringType`.

`type` : Type {subsets relatedElement}

The Type that features the `featureOfType`.

Operations

No operations.

Constraints

None.

8.3.3.3.8 Redefinition

Description

Redefinition specializes Subsetting to require the `redefinedFeature` and the `redefiningFeature` to have the same values (on each instance of the domain of the `redefiningFeature`). This means any restrictions on the `redefiningFeature`, such as `type` or `multiplicity`, also apply to the `redefinedFeature` (on each instance of the `owningType` of the `redefiningFeature`), and vice versa. The `redefinedFeature` might have values for instances of the `owningType` of the `redefiningFeature`, but only as instances of the `owningType` of the `redefinedFeature` that happen to also be instances of the `owningType` of the `redefiningFeature`. This is supported by the constraints inherited from Subsetting on the domains of the `redefiningFeature` and `redefinedFeature`. However, these constraints are narrowed for Redefinition to require the `owningTypes` of the `redefiningFeature` and `redefinedFeature` to be different and the `redefinedFeature` to not be imported into the `owningNamespace` of the `redefiningFeature`. This enables the `redefiningFeature` to have the same name as the `redefinedFeature` if desired.

General Classes

Subsetting

Attributes

`redefinedFeature` : Feature {redefines `subsettingFeature`}

The Feature that is redefined by the `redefiningFeature` of this Redefinition.

`redefiningFeature` : Feature {redefines `subsettingFeature`}

The Feature that is redefining the `redefinedFeature` of this Redefinition.

Operations

No operations.

Constraints

None.

8.3.3.3 Subsetting

Description

Subsetting is Generalization in which the `specific` and `general` Types that are Features. This means all values of the `subsettingFeature` (on instances of its domain, i.e., the intersection of its `featuringTypes`) are values of the `subsettingFeature` on instances of its domain. To support this, the domain of the `subsettingFeature` must be the same or specialize (at least indirectly) the domain of the `subsettingFeature` (via Generalization), and the range (intersection of a Feature's types) of the `subsettingFeature` must specialize the range of the `subsettingFeature`. The `subsettingFeature` is imported into the `owningNamespace` of the `subsettingFeature` (if it is not already in that namespace), requiring the names of the `subsettingFeature` and `subsettingFeature` to be different.

General Classes

Specialization

Attributes

`/owningFeature` : Feature {subsets `subsettingFeature`, redefines `owningType`}

The Feature that owns this Subsetting relationship, which must also be its `subsettingFeature`.

`subsettingFeature` : Feature {redefines `general`}

The Feature that is subsetting by the `subsettingFeature` of this Subsetting.

`subsettingFeature` : Feature {redefines `specific`}

The Feature that is a subset of the `subsettingFeature` of this Subsetting.

Operations

No operations.

Constraints

None.

8.3.3.3.10 TypeFeaturing

Description

A TypeFeaturing is a Featuring Relationship in which the `featureOfType` is the source and the `featuringType` is the target. A TypeFeaturing may be owned by its `featureOfType`.

General Classes

Featuring

Attributes

`featureOfType` : Feature {redefines source, feature}

The Feature that is featured by the `featuringType`. It is the source of the Relationship.

`featuringType` : Type {redefines target, type}

The Type that features the `featureOfType`. It is the target of the Relationship.

`/owningFeatureOfType` : Feature [0..1] {subsets featureOfType, owningRelatedElement}

The Feature that owns this TypeFeaturing and is also the `featureOfType`.

Operations

No operations.

Constraints

None.

8.3.4 Kernel Abstract Syntax

8.3.4.1 Data Types Abstract Syntax

8.3.4.1.1 Overview

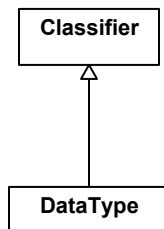


Figure 20. Data Types

8.3.4.1.2 DataType

Description

A DataType is a Classifier of things (in the universe) that can only be distinguished by how they are related to other things (via Features). This means multiple things classified by the same DataType

- Cannot be distinguished when they are related to other things in exactly the same way, even when they are intended to be about different things.
- Can be distinguished when they are related to other things in different ways, even when they are intended to be about the same thing.

General Classes

Classifier

Attributes

None.

Operations

No operations.

Constraints

datatypeClassifiesDataValue

[no documentation]

```
allSupertypes() -> includes (Kernel Library::DataValue)
```

datatypeValidSpecialization

A DataType must not specialize a Class or an Association.

8.3.4.2 Classes Abstract Syntax

8.3.4.2.1 Overview

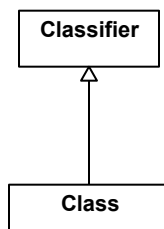


Figure 21. Classes

8.3.4.2.2 Class

Description

A Class is a Classifier of things (in the universe) that can be distinguished without regard to how they are related to other things (via Features). This means multiple things classified by the same Class can be distinguished, even when they are related other things in exactly the same way.

General Classes

Classifier

Attributes

None.

Operations

No operations.

Constraints

classValidSpecialization

A Class must not specialize a DataType.

classClassifiesOccurrence

[no documentation]

```
allSupertypes() -> includes (Kernel Library::Occurrence)
```

8.3.4.3 Structures Abstract Syntax

8.3.4.3.1 Overview

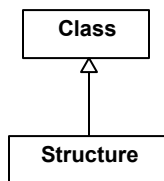


Figure 22. Structures

8.3.4.3.2 Structure

Description

A Structure is a Class of objects in the modeled universe that are primarily structural in nature. While an Object is not itself behavioral, it may be involved in and acted on by Behaviors, and it may be the performer of some of them.

General Classes

Class

Attributes

None.

Operations

No operations.

Constraints

structureClassifiesObject

[no documentation]

```
allSupertypes() -> includes(Kernel Library::Object)
```

8.3.4.4 Associations Abstract Syntax

8.3.4.4.1 Overview

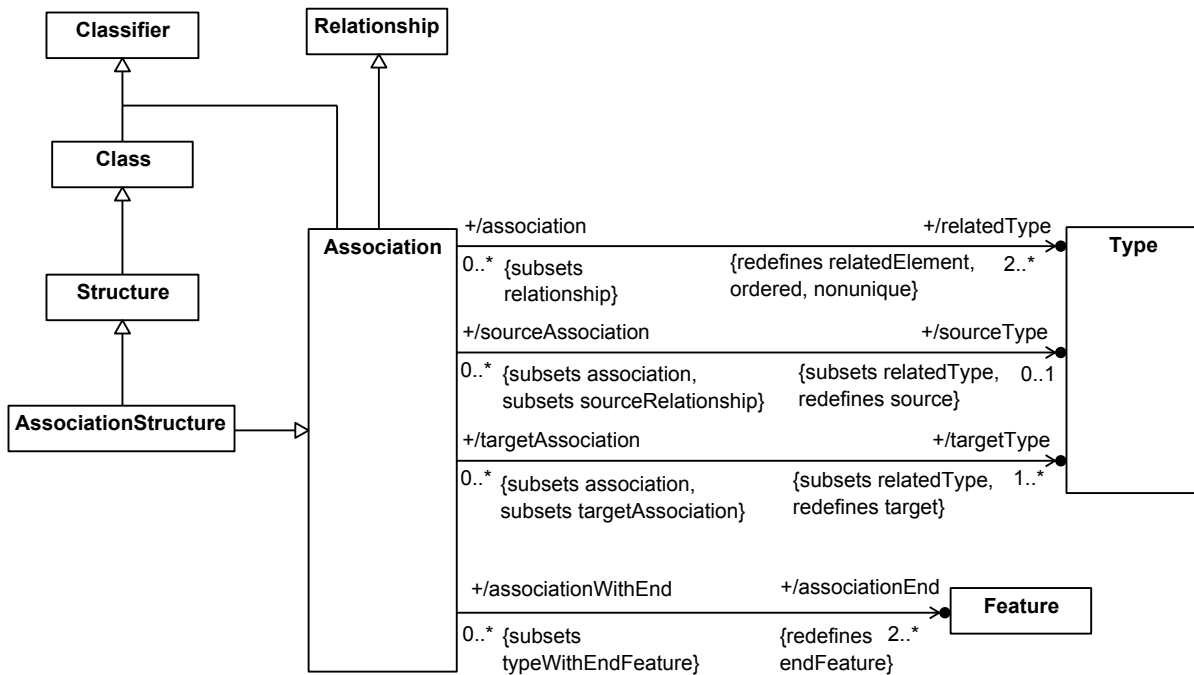


Figure 23. Associations

8.3.4.4.2 Association

Description

An Association is a Relationship and a Classifier to enable classification of links between things (in the universe). The co-domains (types) of the associationEnd Features are the relatedTypes, as co-domain and participants (linked things) of an Association identify each other.

General Classes

Relationship
Classifier

Attributes

/associationEnd : Feature [2..*] {redefines endFeature}

The `features` of the Association that identify the things that can be related by it. An Association must have at least two `associationEnds`. When it has exactly two, the Association is called a *binary* Association.

/relatedType : Type [2..*] {redefines relatedElement, ordered, nonunique}

The `types` of the `endFeatures` of the Association, which are the `relatedElements` of the Association considered as a Relationship.

/sourceType : Type [0..1] {subsets relatedType, redefines source}

The source `relatedType` for this Association. If this is a binary Association, then the `sourceType` is the first `relatedType`, and the first `associationEnd` of the Association must redefine the `source` Feature of the Association *BinaryLink* from the Kernel Library. If this Association is not binary, then it has no `sourceType`.

/targetType : Type [1..*] {subsets relatedType, redefines target}

The target `relatedTypes` for this Association. This includes all the `relatedTypes` other than the `sourceType`. If this is a binary Association, then the `associationEnds` corresponding to the `relatedTypes` must all redefine the `target` Feature of the Association *BinaryLink* from the Kernel Library.

Operations

No operations.

Constraints

AssociationLink

[no documentation]

```
let numend : Natural = associationEnd->size() in
  allSupertypes()->includes(
    if numend = 2 then Kernel Library::BinaryLink
    else Kernel Library::Link)
```

associationClassifiesLink

[no documentation]

```
allSupertypes()->includes(Kernel Library::Link)
```

AssociationStructureIntersection

[no documentation]

```
oclIsKindOf(Structure) = oclIsKindOf(AssociationStructure)
```

associationRelatedTypes

[no documentation]

```
relatedTypes = associationEnd.type
```

8.3.4.4.3 AssociationStructure

Description

General Classes

Structure
Association

Attributes

None.

Operations

No operations.

Constraints

associationStructureClassifiesLinkObject

[no documentation]

`allSupertypes() -> includes (Kernel Library::LinkObject)`

8.3.4.5 Connectors Abstract Syntax

8.3.4.5.1 Overview

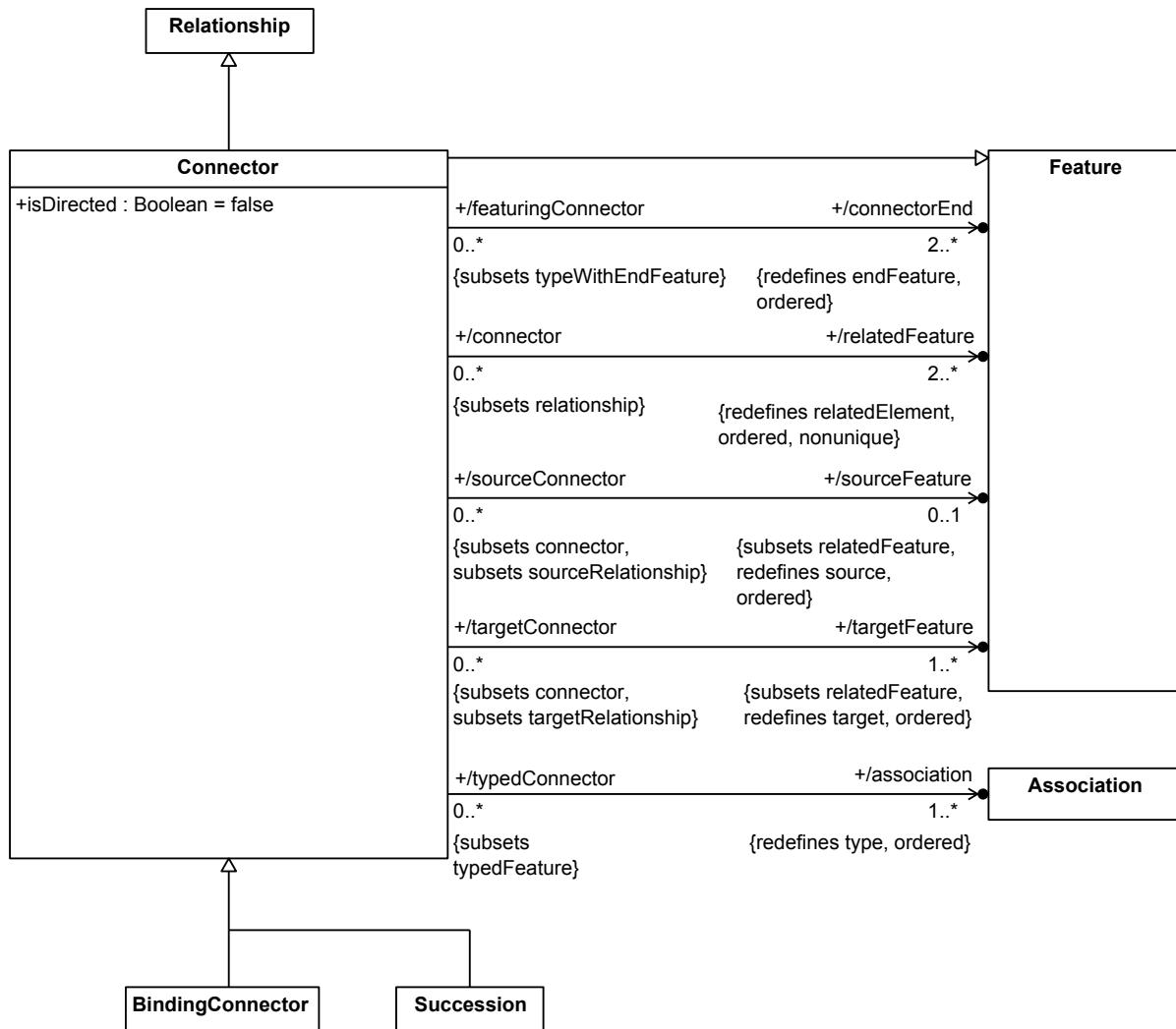


Figure 24. Connectors

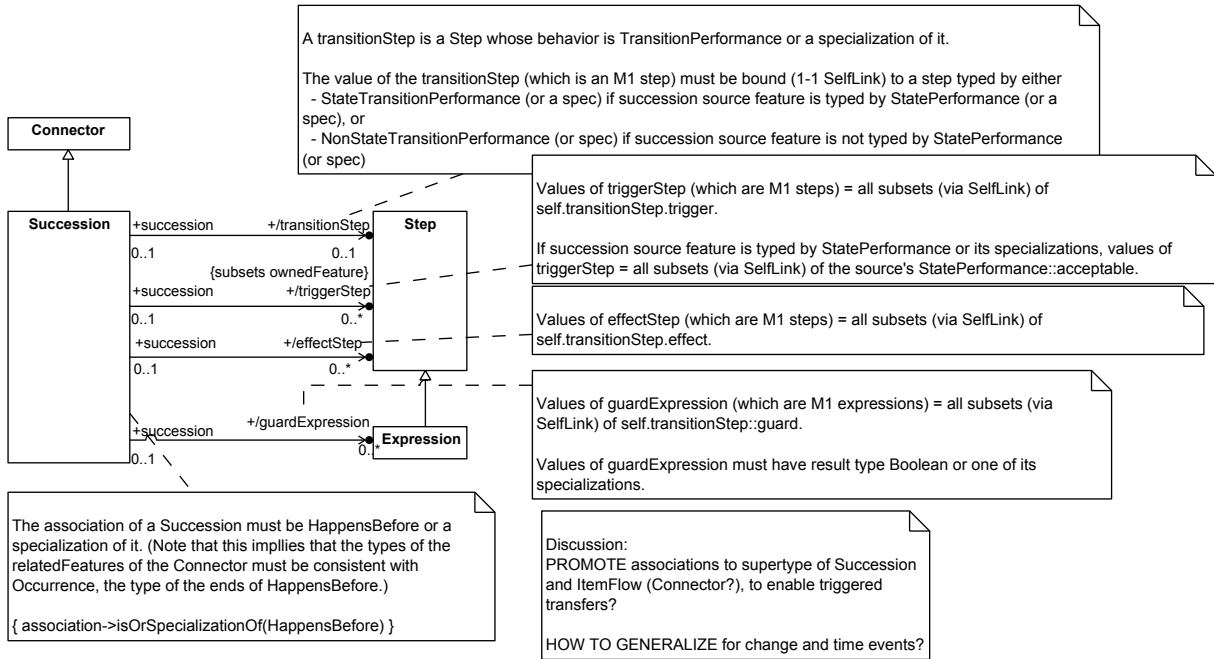


Figure 25. Successions

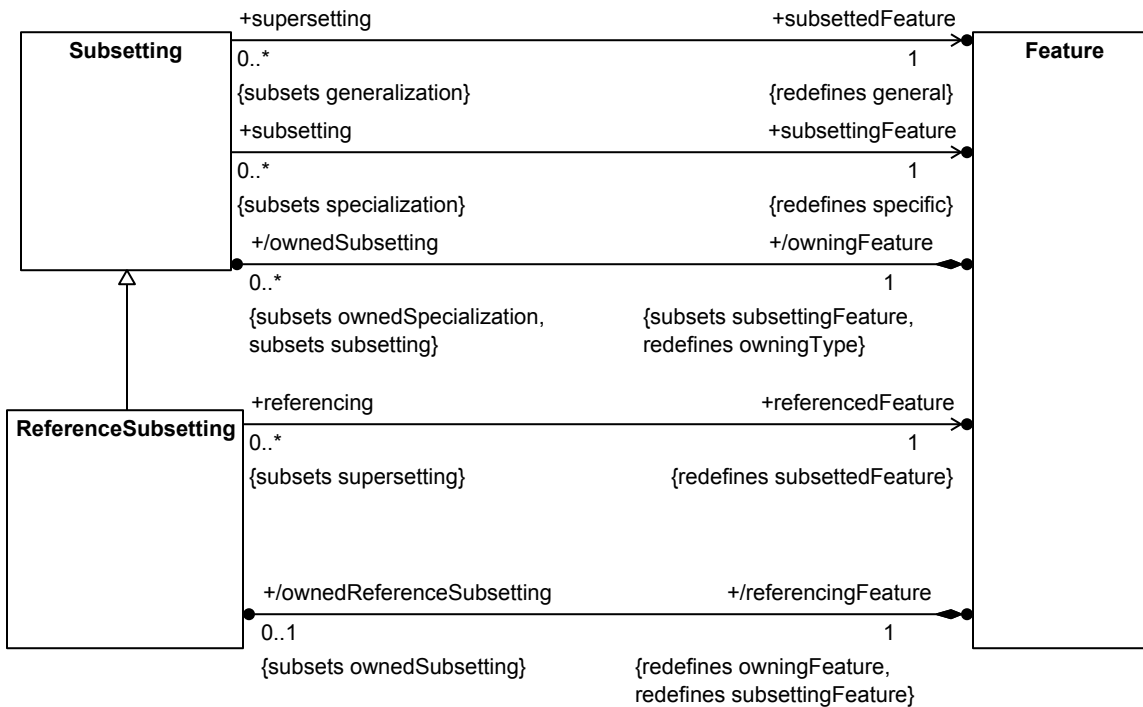


Figure 26. Reference Subsetting

8.3.4.5.2 Binding Connector

Description

A Binding Connector is a binary Connector that requires its `relatedFeatures` to identify the same things (have the same values).

A BindingConnector must be directly or indirectly typed by the *SelfLink* Association from the *Links library model*. Both end multiplicities must be 1..1 when the `relatedFeatures` have unique values.

General Classes

Connector

Attributes

None.

Operations

No operations.

Constraints

None.

8.3.4.5.3 Connector

Description

A Connector is a usage of Associations, with links restricted to instances of the Type in which it is used (domain of the Connector). Associations restrict what kinds of things might be linked. The Connector further restricts these links to between values of two Features on instances of its domain.

General Classes

Relationship
Feature

Attributes

`/association` : Association [1..*] {redefines type, ordered}

The Associations that type the Connector.

`/connectorEnd` : Feature [2..*] {redefines endFeature, ordered}

The `endFeatures` of a Connector, which redefine the `endFeatures` of the associations of the Connector. The `connectorEnds` determine via ReferenceSubsetting Relationships which Features are related by the Connector.

`isDirected` : Boolean

For a binary Connector, whether or not the Connector should be considered to have a direction from `source` to `target`.

`/relatedFeature` : Feature [2..*] {redefines relatedElement, ordered, nonunique}

The Features that are related by this Connector considered as a Relationship, derived as the referenced Features of the `connectorEnds` of the Connector.

`/sourceFeature : Feature [0..1] {subsets relatedFeature, redefines source, ordered}`

The source `relatedFeature` for this Connector. If this is a binary Connector, then the `sourceFeature` is the first `relatedFeature`, and the first end Feature of the Connector must redefine the `source` Feature of the Connector *binaryLinks* from the Kernel Semantic Library. If the Connector is not binary, then it has no `sourceFeature`.

`/targetFeature : Feature [1..*] {subsets relatedFeature, redefines target, ordered}`

The target `relatedFeatures` for this Connector. This includes all the `relatedFeatures` other than the `sourceFeature`. If this is a binary Connector, then the end Feature corresponding to the `targetFeature` must redefine the `target` Feature of the Connector *binaryLinks* from the Kernel Library.

Operations

No operations.

Constraints

connectorEndRedefinition

For each association of a Connector, each `associationEnd` must be redefined by a different `connectorEnd` of the Connector.

```
association->forall(a |
  a.associationEnd->forall(ae |
    connectorEnd->one(ce |
      ce.ownedRedefinition.redefinedFeature->includes(ae))))
```

connectorTargetFeature

The `targetFeatures` of a Connector are the `relatedFeatures` other than the `sourceFeature`.

```
targetFeature =
  if sourceFeature = null then relatedFeature
  else relatedFeature->excluding(sourceFeature)
endif
```

connectorConnectorEnd

The `connectorEnds` of a Connector are its `endFeatures`.

```
connectorEnd = feature->select(isEnd)
```

connectorRelatedFeatures

The `relatedFeatures` of a Connector are the referenced Features of its `connectorEnds`.

```
relatedFeature = connectorEnd.ownedReferenceSubsetting.subsettedFeature
```

connectorFeaturingType

Each `relatedFeature` of a Connector must have some `featuringType` of the Connector as a direct or indirect `featuringType` (where a Feature with no `featuringType` is treated as if the Classifier *Base::Anything* was its `featuringType`).

```
relatedFeature->forall(f |
  if featuringType->isEmpty() then f.isFeaturedWithin(null)
  else featuringType->exists(t | f.isFeaturedWithin(t))
endif)
```

`connectorSourceFeature`

If this is a binary Connector, then the `sourceFeature` is the first `relatedFeature`. If this Connector is not binary, then it has no `sourceFeature`.

```
sourceFeature =
  if relatedFeature->size() = 2 then relatedFeature->at(1)
  else null
endif
```

8.3.4.5.4 ReferenceSubsetting

Description

ReferenceSubsetting is a kind of Subsetting in which the `referencedFeature` is syntactically distinguished from other Features subsetting by the `referencingFeature`. ReferenceSubsetting has the same semantics as Subsetting, but the `referenceFeature` may have a special purpose relative to the `referencingFeature`. For instance, ReferenceSubsetting is used to identify the `relatedFeatures` of a Connector.

ReferenceSubsetting is always an `ownedRelationship` of its `referencingFeature`. A Feature can have at most one `ownedReferenceSubsetting`.

General Classes

Subsetting

Attributes

`referencedFeature` : Feature {redefines `subsettingFeature`}

The Feature that is referenced by the `referencingFeature` of this ReferenceSubsetting.

`/referencingFeature` : Feature {redefines `subsettingFeature`, `owningFeature`}

The Feature that owns this ReferenceSubsetting relationship, which is also its `subsettingFeature`.

Operations

No operations.

Constraints

None.

8.3.4.5.5 Succession

Description

A Succession is a binary Connector that requires its `relatedFeatures` to happen separately in time. A Succession must be typed by the Association *HappensBefore* from the Kernel Model Library (or a specialization of it).

General Classes

Connector

Attributes

/effectStep : Step [0..*]

Steps that represent occurrences that are side effects of the `transitionStep` occurring.

/guardExpression : Expression [0..*]

Expressions that must evaluate to true before the `transitionStep` can occur.

/transitionStep : Step [0..1] {subsets ownedFeature}

A Step that is typed by the Behavior *TransitionPerformance* (from the Model Library) that has this Succession as its *transitionLink*.

/triggerStep : Step [0..*]

Steps that map incoming events to the timing of occurrences of the `transitionStep`. The values of `triggerStep` subset the list of acceptable events to be received by a Behavior or the object that performs it.

Operations

No operations.

Constraints

None.

8.3.4.6 Behaviors Abstract Syntax

8.3.4.6.1 Overview

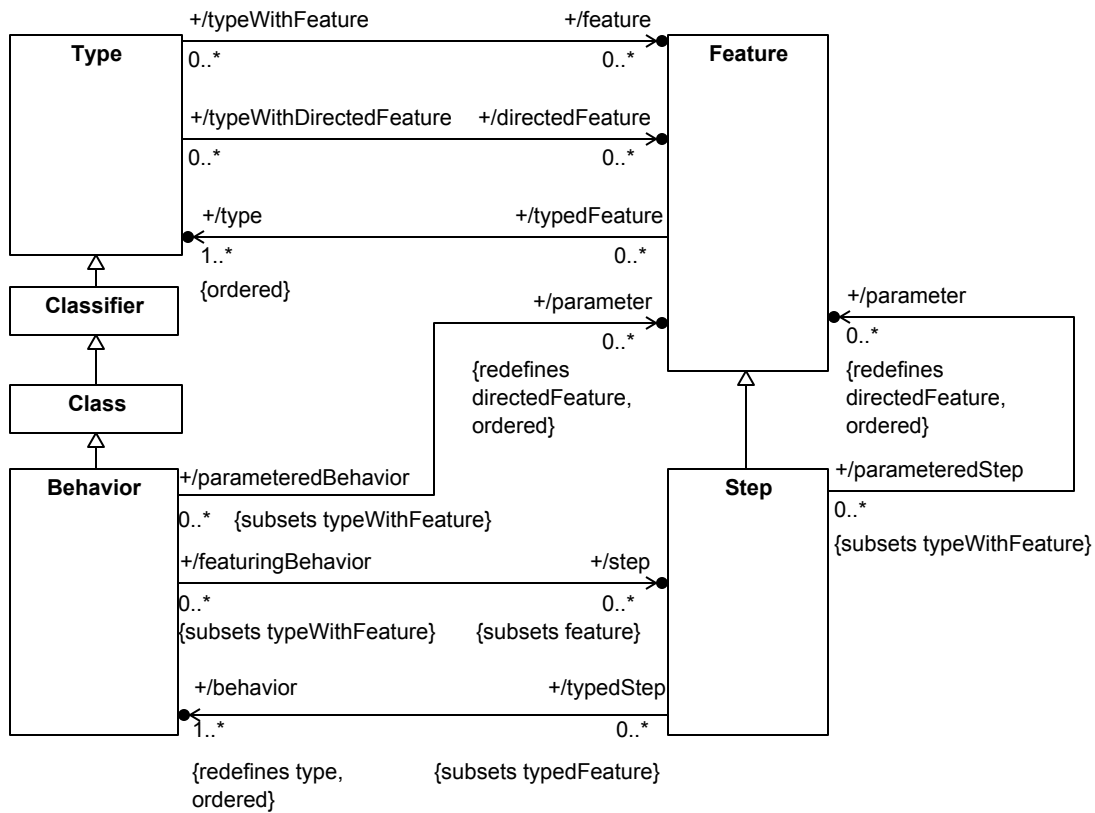


Figure 27. Behaviors

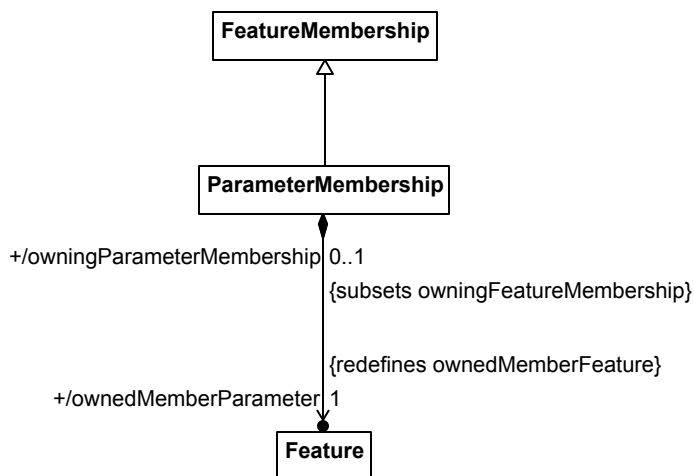


Figure 28. Parameter Memberships

8.3.4.6.2 Behavior

Description

A Behavior coordinates occurrences of other Behaviors, as well as changes in objects. Behaviors can be decomposed into Steps and be characterized by parameters.

General Classes

Class

Attributes

/parameter : Feature [0..*] {redefines directedFeature, ordered}

The parameters of this Behavior, which are all its directedFeatures, whose values are passed into and/or out of a performance of the Behavior.

/step : Step [0..*] {subsets feature}

The Steps that make up this Behavior.

Operations

No operations.

Constraints

behaviorClassifiesPerformance

[no documentation]

allSupertypes() -> includes (Kernel Library::Performance)

8.3.4.6.3 Step

Description

A Step is a Feature that is typed by one or more Behaviors. Steps may be used by one Behavior to coordinate the performance of other Behaviors, supporting the steady refinement of behavioral descriptions. Steps can be ordered in time and can be connected using ItemFlows to specify things flowing between their parameters.

General Classes

Feature

Attributes

/behavior : Behavior [1..*] {redefines type, ordered}

The Behaviors that type this Step.

/parameter : Feature [0..*] {redefines directedFeature, ordered}

The parameters of this Expression, which are all its directedFeatures, whose values are passed into and/or out of a performance of the Behavior.

Operations

No operations.

Constraints

None.

8.3.4.6.4 ParameterMembership

Description

A ParameterMembership is a FeatureMembership that identifies its `memberFeature` as a parameter, which is always owned, and must have a `direction`. A ParameterMembership must be owned by a Behavior or a Step.

General Classes

FeatureMembership

Attributes

`/ownedMemberParameter : Feature {redefines ownedMemberFeature}`

The Feature that is identified as a parameter by this ParameterMembership, which is always owned by the ParameterMembership.

Operations

No operations.

Constraints

None.

8.3.4.7 Functions Abstract Syntax

8.3.4.7.1 Overview

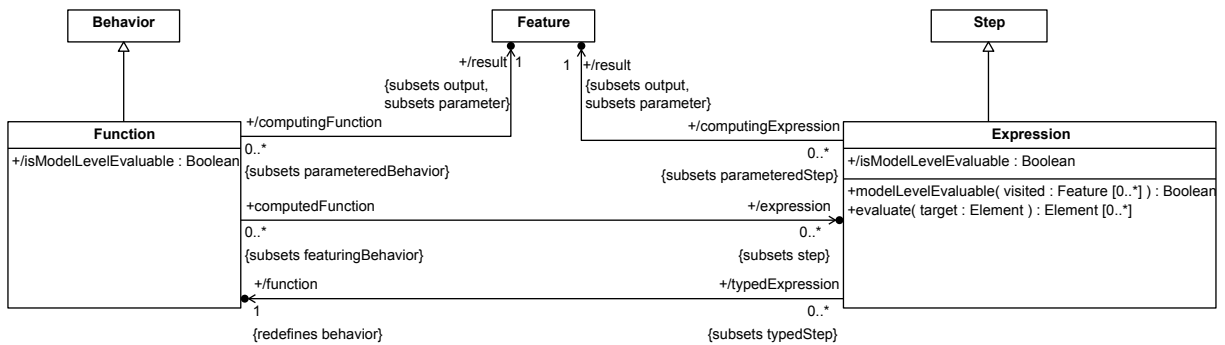


Figure 29. Functions

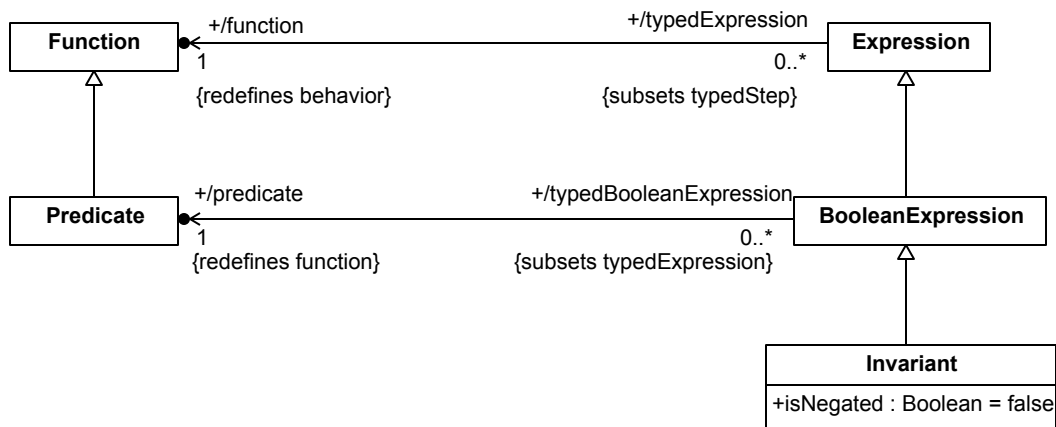


Figure 30. Predicates

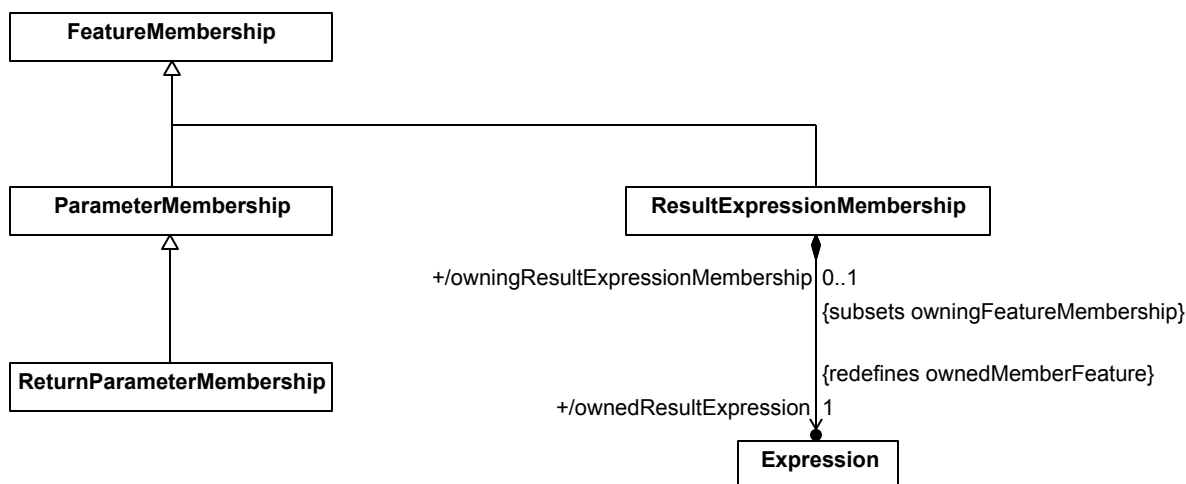


Figure 31. Function Memberships

8.3.4.7.2 BooleanExpression

Description

A BooleanExpression is a Boolean-valued Expression whose type is a Predicate. It represents a logical condition resulting from the evaluation of the Predicate.

A BooleanExpression must subset, directly or indirectly, the Expression *booleanEvaluations* from the Base model library, which is typed by the base Predicate *BooleanEvaluation*. As a result, a BooleanExpression must always be typed by BooleanEvaluation or a subclass of BooleanEvaluation.

General Classes

Expression

Attributes

/predicate : Predicate {redefines function}

The Predicate that types the Expression.

Operations

No operations.

Constraints

None.

8.3.4.7.3 Expression

Description

An Expression is a Step that is typed by a Function. An Expression that also has a Function as its `featuringType` is a computational step within that Function. An Expression always has a single `result` parameter, which redefines the `result` parameter of its defining `function`. This allows Expressions to be interconnected in tree structures, in which inputs to each Expression in the tree are determined as the results of other Expressions in the tree.

General Classes

Step

Attributes

`/function` : Function {redefines behavior}

The Function that types this Expression.

`/isModelLevelEvaluable` : Boolean

Whether this Expression meets the constraints necessary to be evaluated at *model level*, that is, using metadata within the model.

`/result` : Feature {subsets parameter, output}

The `result` parameter of the Expression, derived as the single `parameter` of the Expression with direction `out`. The result of an Expression must either be inherited from its `function` or (directly or indirectly) redefine the `result` parameter of its `function`.

Operations

`evaluate(target : Element) : Element [0..*]`

If this Expression `isModelLevelEvaluable`, then evaluate it using the `target` as the context Element for resolving Feature names and testing classification. The result is a collection of Elements, each of which must be a `LiteralExpression` or a Feature that is not an Expression.

pre: `isModelLevelEvaluable`

body:

`modelLevelEvaluable(visited : Feature [0..*]) : Boolean`

>p>Return whether this Expression is model-level evaluable. The `visited` parameter is used to track possible circular feature references. Such circular references are not allowed in model-level evaluable expressions.

An Expression that is not otherwise specialized is model-level evaluable if all of its `features` are either in parameters, its single `resultParameter` or a result Expression owned via a `ResultExpressionMembership` (and possibly its implicit `BindingConnector`). The `parameters` parameters must not have and `ownedFeatures` and the result Expression must be model-level evaluable.

```
body: parameters->forAll(  
  p | directionOf(p) = FeatureDirectionKind::_'in' and  
  p.valuation = null) and  
ownedFeatureMembership->  
  select(oclIsKindOf(ResultExpressionMembership))->  
  forAll(resultExpression.modelLevelEvaluable(visited))
```

Constraints

`expressionDerivesModelLevelEvaluable`

Whether an Expression `isModelLevelEvaluable` is determined by the `modelLevelEvaluable()` operation.

```
isModelLevelEvaluable = modelLevelEvaluable(Set(Element){})
```

8.3.4.7.4 Function

Description

A Function is a Behavior that has a single `out` parameter that is identified as its `result`. Any other parameters of a Function than the `result` must have direction `in`. A Function represents the performance of a calculation that produces the values of its `result` parameter. This calculation may be decomposed into Expressions that are `steps` of the Function.

General Classes

Behavior

Attributes

`/expression` : Expression [0..*] {subsets `step`}

The Expressions that are `steps` in the calculation of the `result` of this Function.

`/isModelLevelEvaluable` : Boolean

Whether this Function can be used as the `function` of a model-level evaluable `InvocationExpression`.

`/result` : Feature {subsets `parameter`, `output`}

The `result` parameter of the Function, derived as the single `parameter` of the Function with direction `out`.

Operations

No operations.

Constraints

None.

8.3.4.7.5 Invariant

Description

An Invariant is a BooleanExpression that is asserted to have a specific Boolean result value. If `isNegated = false`, then the Invariant must subset, directly or indirectly, the BooleanExpression *trueEvaluations* from the Kernel library, meaning that the result is asserted to be true. If `isNegated = true`, then the Invariant must subset, directly or indirectly, the BooleanExpression *falseEvaluations* from the Kernel library, meaning that the result is asserted to be false.

General Classes

BooleanExpression

Attributes

`isNegated` : Boolean

Whether this Invariant is asserted to be false rather than true.

Operations

No operations.

Constraints

None.

8.3.4.7.6 Predicate

Description

A Predicate is a Function whose `result` Parameter has type *Boolean* and multiplicity 1..1.

General Classes

Function

Attributes

None.

Operations

No operations.

Constraints

None.

8.3.4.7.7 ResultExpressionMembership

Description

A `ResultExpressionMembership` is a `FeatureMembership` that indicates that the `ownedResultExpression` provides the result values for the Function or Expression that owns it. The owning Function or Expression must contain a `BindingConnector` between the `result` parameter of the `ownedResultExpression` and the `result` parameter of the Function or Expression.

General Classes

`FeatureMembership`

Attributes

`/ownedResultExpression : Expression {redefines ownedMemberFeature}`

The Expression that provides the result for the owner of the `ResultExpressionMembership`.

Operations

No operations.

Constraints

None.

8.3.4.7.8 ReturnParameterMembership

Description

A `ReturnParameterMembership` is a `ParameterMembership` that indicates that the `memberParameter` is the `result` parameter of a Function or Expression. The `direction` of the `memberParameter` must be `out`.

General Classes

`ParameterMembership`

Attributes

None.

Operations

No operations.

Constraints

None.

8.3.4.8 Expressions Abstract Syntax

8.3.4.8.1 Overview

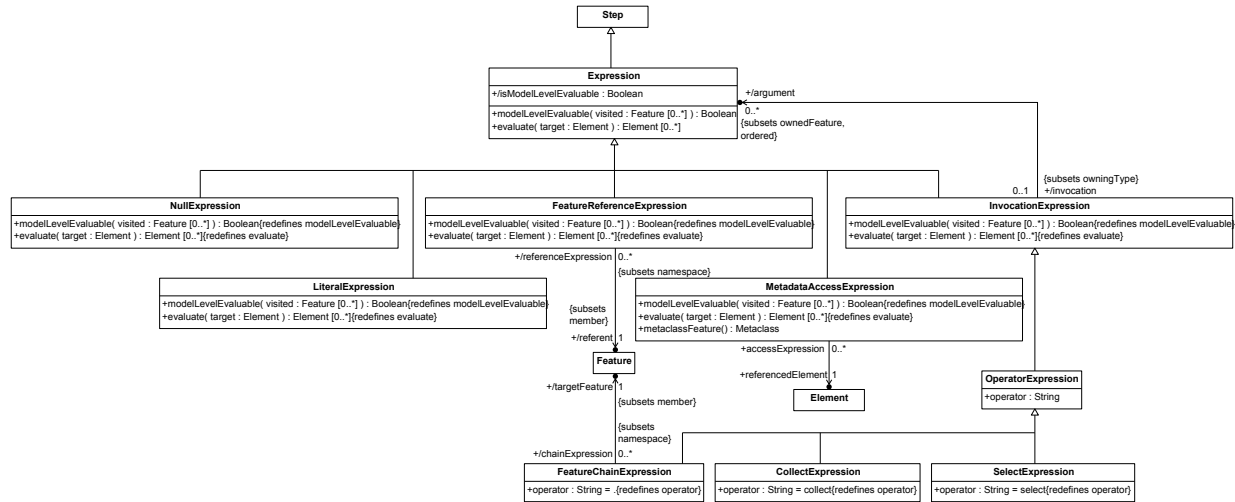


Figure 32. Expressions

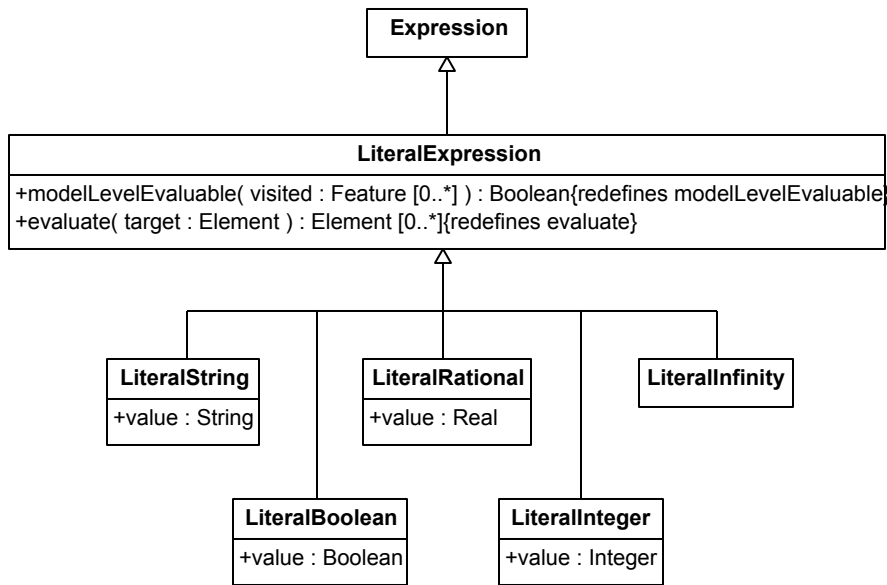


Figure 33. Literal Expressions

8.3.4.8.2 CollectExpression

Description

A CollectExpression is an OperatorExpression whose operator is "collect", which resolves to the library Function *ControlFunctions::collect*.

General Classes

OperatorExpression

Attributes

operator : String {redefines operator}

Operations

No operations.

Constraints

None.

8.3.4.8.3 FeatureChainExpression

Description

A FeatureChainExpression is an OperatorExpression whose operator is ". ", which resolves to the library Function *ControlFunctions::'.'*. It evaluates to the result of chaining the *result* Feature of its single argument Expression with its *targetFeature*.

The first two *members* of a FeatureChainExpression must be its single argument Expression and its *targetFeature*. Its only other *members* shall be those necessary to complete it as an InvocationExpression.

General Classes

OperatorExpression

Attributes

operator : String {redefines operator}

/targetFeature : Feature {subsets member}

The Feature that is accessed by this FeatureChainExpression, derived as its second *member* Feature (the first being its one argument Expression). This Feature must redefine the *target Feature of the Function* *ControlFunctions::'.'*.

Operations

No operations.

Constraints

None.

8.3.4.8.4 FeatureReferenceExpression

Description

A FeatureReferenceExpression is an Expression whose *result* is bound a *referent* Feature. The only *members* allowed for a FeatureReferenceExpression are the *referent*, the *result* and the BindingConnector between them.

General Classes

Expression

Attributes

/referent : Feature {subsets member}

The Feature that is referenced by this FeatureReferenceExpression, derived as its first member Feature.

Operations

evaluate(target : Element) : Element [0..*]

First, determine a value Expression for the referent:

- If the target Element is a Type that has a feature that is referent or (directly or indirectly) redefines it, then the value Expression of the FeatureValue for that feature (if any).
- Else, if the referent has no featuringTypes, the value Expression of the FeatureValue for the referent (if any).

Then:

- If such a value Expression exists, return the result of evaluating that Expression on the target.
- Else, if the referent is not an Expression, return the referent.
- Else return the empty sequence.

```
body: if not target.ocIsKindOf(Type) then Sequence{}  
else  
  let feature: Sequence(Feature) =  
    target.ocIsType(Type).feature->select(f |  
      f.ownedRedefinition.redefinedFeature->  
        includes(referent)) in  
    if feature->notEmpty() then  
      feature.valuation.value.evaluate(target)  
    else if referent.featuringType->isEmpty()  
      then referent  
    else Sequence{}  
    endif endif  
endif
```

modelLevelEvaluable(visited : Feature [0..*]) : Boolean

A FeatureReferenceExpression is model-level evaluable if it's referent

- conforms to the self-reference feature *Anything::self*;
- is an Expression that is model-level evaluable;
- has an owningType that is a Metaclass or MetadataFeature; or
- has no featuringTypes and, if it has a FeatureValue, the value Expression is model-level evaluable.

```
body: referent.conformsTo("Anything::self") or  
visited->excludes(referent) and  
(referent.ocIsKindOf(Expression) and  
  referent.ocIsType(Expression).modelLevelEvaluable(visited->including(referent)) or  
referent.owningType <> null and  
  (referent.owningType.isOclKindOf(Metaclass) or  
  referent.owningType.isOclKindOf(MetadataFeature)) or  
referent.featuringType->isEmpty() and  
  (referent.valuation = null or  
  referent.valuation.modelLevelEvaluable(visited->including(referent))))
```

Constraints

None.

8.3.4.8.5 InvocationExpression

Description

An InvocationExpression is an Expression each of whose input parameters are bound to the result of an owned argument Expression. Each input parameter may be bound to the result of at most one argument.

General Classes

Expression

Attributes

/argument : Expression [0..*] {subsets ownedFeature, ordered}

The value Expressions of the FeatureValues of the input parameters of the InvocationExpression.

Operations

evaluate(target : Element) : Element [0..*]

Apply the Function that is the type of this InvocationExpression to the argument values resulting from evaluating each of the argument Expressions on the given target. If the application is not possible, then return an empty sequence.

modelLevelEvaluable(visited : Feature [0..*]) : Boolean

An InvocationExpression is model-level evaluable if all its argument Expressions are model-level evaluable and its function is model-level evaluable.

```
body: argument->forAll(modelLevelEvaluable(visited)) and  
      function.isModelLevelEvaluable
```

Constraints

invocationExpressionIsModelLevelEvaluable

An InvocationExpression is model-level evaluable if all its argument Expressions are model-level evaluable and its function is model-level evaluable.

```
isModelLevelEvaluable =  
  argument->forAll(isModelLevelEvaluable) and  
  function.isModelLevelEvaluable
```

8.3.4.8.6 LiteralBoolean

Description

LiteralBoolean is a LiteralExpression that provides a *Boolean* value as a result. It must have an owned result parameter whose type is *Boolean*.

General Classes

LiteralExpression

Attributes

value : Boolean

The Boolean value that is the result of evaluating this Expression.

Operations

No operations.

Constraints

None.

8.3.4.8.7 LiteralExpression

Description

A LiteralExpression is an Expression that provides a basic value as a result. It must directly or indirectly specialize the Function *LiteralEvaluation* from the *Base* model library, which has no parameters other than its result, which is a single *DataValue*.

General Classes

Expression

Attributes

None.

Operations

evaluate(target : Element) : Element [0..*]

The model-level value of a LiteralExpression is itself.

body: Sequence{self}

modelLevelEvaluable(visited : Feature [0..*]) : Boolean

A LiteralExpression is always model-level evaluable.

body: true

Constraints

literalExpressionIsModelLevelEvaluable

A LiteralExpression is always model-level evaluable.

isModelLevelEvaluable = true

8.3.4.8.8 LiteralInteger

Description

A LiteralInteger is a LiteralExpression that provides an Integer value as a result. It must have an owned `result` parameter whose type is *Integer*.

General Classes

LiteralExpression

Attributes

value : Integer

The Integer value that is the result of evaluating this Expression.

Operations

No operations.

Constraints

None.

8.3.4.8.9 LiteralReal

Description

A LiteralRational is a LiteralExpression that provides a Rational value as a result. It must have an owned `result` parameter whose type is *Rational*.

General Classes

LiteralExpression

Attributes

value : Real

The value whose rational approximation is the result of evaluating this Expression.

Operations

No operations.

Constraints

None.

8.3.4.8.10 LiteralString

Description

A `LiteralString` is a `LiteralExpression` that provides a `String` value as a result. It must have an owned `result` parameter whose type is *String*.

General Classes

`LiteralExpression`

Attributes

value : `String`

The `String` value that is the result of evaluating this `Expression`.

Operations

No operations.

Constraints

None.

8.3.4.8.11 `LiteralInfinity`

Description

A `LiteralInfinity` is a `LiteralExpression` that provides the positive infinity value ("*"). It must have an owned `result` parameter whose type is *Positive*.

General Classes

`LiteralExpression`

Attributes

None.

Operations

No operations.

Constraints

None.

8.3.4.8.12 `MetadataAccessExpression`

Description

A `MetadataAccessExpression` is an `Expression` whose `result` is a sequence of instances of `MetaClasses` representing all the `MetadataFeature` annotations of the `referencedElement`. In addition, the sequence includes an instance of the reflective `MetaClass` corresponding to the MOF class of the `referencedElement`, with values for all the abstract syntax properties of the `Element`.

General Classes

Expression

Attributes

referencedElement : Element

The Element whose metadata is being accessed.

Operations

evaluate(target : Element) : Element [0..*]

Return the ownedElements of the referencedFeature that are MetadataFeatures and have the referencedElement as an annotatedElement, plus a MetadataFeature whose annotatedElement is the referencedElement, whose metaclass is the reflective Metaclass corresponding to the MOF class of the referencedElement and whose ownedFeatures are bound to the MOF properties of the referencedElement.

```
body: referencedElement.ownedElement->
  select (oclIsKindOf (MetadataFeature)
    and annotatedElement->includes (referencedElement)) ->
    including (metaclassFeature())
```

metaclassFeature() : Metaclass

Return a MetadataFeature whose annotatedElement is the referencedElement, whose metaclass is the reflective Metaclass corresponding to the MOF class of the referencedElement and whose ownedFeatures are bound to the MOF properties of the referencedElement.

modelLevelEvaluable(visited : Feature [0..*]) : Boolean

A MetadataAccessExpression is always model-level evaluable.

```
body: true
```

Constraints

None.

8.3.4.8.13 NullExpression

Description

A NullExpression is an Expression that results in a null value. It must be typed by a *NullEvaluation* that results in an empty value.

General Classes

Expression

Attributes

None.

Operations

`evaluate(target : Element) : Element [0..*]`

The model-level value of a `NullExpression` is an empty sequence.

body : `Sequence{ }`

`modelLevelEvaluable(visited : Feature [0..*]) : Boolean`

A `NullExpression` is always model-level evaluable.

body : `true`

Constraints

None.

8.3.4.8.14 OperatorExpression

Description

An `OperatorExpression` is an `InvocationExpression` whose `function` is determined by resolving its `operator` in the context of one of the standard Function packages from the Kernel Model Library.

General Classes

`InvocationExpression`

Attributes

`/operand : Expression [0..*] {ordered}`

Implementation note. This property is currently just an implementation workaround and is not part of the normative abstract syntax.

`operator : String`

An operator symbol that names a corresponding Function from one of the standard Function packages from the Kernel Model Library .

Operations

No operations.

Constraints

None.

8.3.4.8.15 SelectExpression

Description

A `SelectExpression` is an `OperatorExpression` whose operator is `"select"`, which resolves to the library Function `ControlFunctions::select`.

General Classes

OperatorExpression

Attributes

operator : String {redefines operator}

Operations

No operations.

Constraints

None.

8.3.4.9 Interactions Abstract Syntax

8.3.4.9.1 Overview

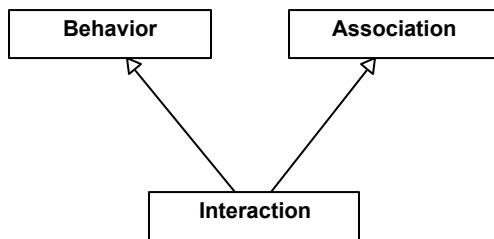


Figure 34. Interactions

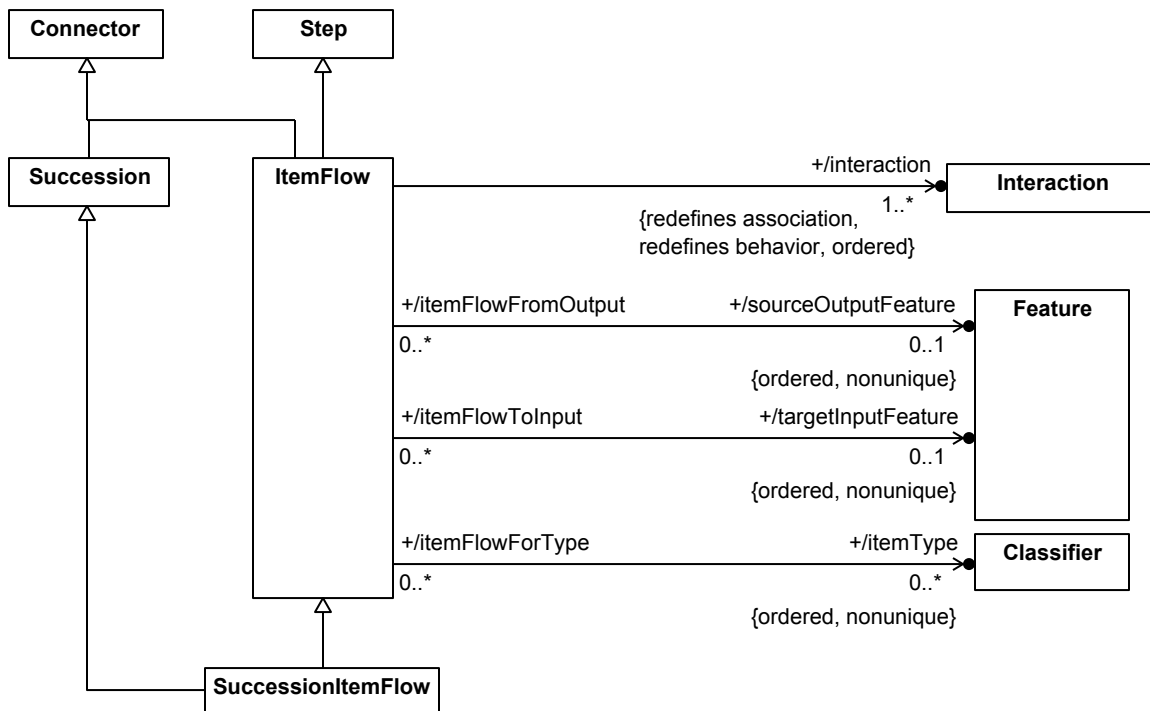


Figure 35. Item Flows

8.3.4.9.2 ItemFlow

Description

An ItemFlow is a Step that represents the transfer of objects or values from one Feature to another. ItemFlows can take non-zero time to complete.

An ItemFlow must be typed by the Interaction *Transfer* from the Kernel Semantic Library, or a specialization of it.

General Classes

Connector

Step

Attributes

/interaction : Interaction [1..*] {redefines association, behavior, ordered}

The Interactions that type this ItemFlow. Interactions are both Associations (which type Connectors) and Behaviors (which type Steps).

/itemFeature : ItemFeature [0..1] {subsets ownedFeature}

The Feature representing the Item in transit between the source and the target during the transfer. (IMPL)

/itemFlowEnd : ItemFlowEnd [2..*] {redefines connectorEnd}

A *connectorEnd* of this ItemFlow. (IMPL)

/itemFlowFeature : ItemFlowFeature [2..*]

The *sourceOutputFeatures* and *targetInputFeatures* of this ItemFlow. (IMPL).

/itemType : Classifier [0..*] {ordered, nonunique}

The type of the item transferred, derived as the *type* of the *feature* of the ItemFlow that directly or indirectly redefines *Transfer::item*.

/sourceOutputFeature : Feature [0..1] {ordered, nonunique}

The Feature that originates the ItemFlow. It must be an owned *output* of the *source* of the ItemFlow. If there is no such Feature, then the ItemFlow must be abstract.

/targetInputFeature : Feature [0..1] {ordered, nonunique}

The Feature that receives the ItemFlow. It must be an owned *output* of the *target* participant of the ItemFlow. If there is no such Feature, then the ItemFlow must be abstract.

Operations

No operations.

Constraints

None.

8.3.4.9.3 Interaction

Description

An Interaction is a Behavior that is also an Association, providing a context for multiple objects that have behaviors that impact one another.

General Classes

Behavior
Association

Attributes

None.

Operations

No operations.

Constraints

None.

8.3.4.9.4 SuccessionItemFlow

Description

A SuccessionItemFlow is an ItemFlow that also provides temporal ordering. It classifies *Transfers* that cannot start until the source *Occurrence* has completed and that must complete before the target *Occurrence* can start.

A SuccessionItemFlow must be typed by the Interaction *TransferBefore* from the Kernel Library, or a specialization of it.

General Classes

Succession
ItemFlow

Attributes

None.

Operations

No operations.

Constraints

None.

8.3.4.10 Feature Values Abstract Syntax

8.3.4.10.1 Overview

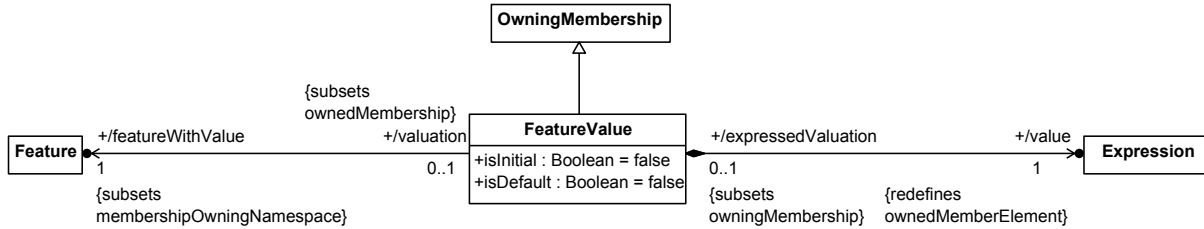


Figure 36. Feature Values

8.3.4.10.2 FeatureValue

Description

A FeatureValue is a Membership that identifies a particular member Expression that provides the value of the Feature that owns the FeatureValue. The value is specified as either a bound value or an initial value, and as either a concrete or default value. A Feature can have at most one FeatureValue.

If `isInitial = false`, then the result of the `value` expression is bound to the `featureWithValue` using a BindingConnector. Otherwise, the `featureWithValue` is initialized using a FeatureWritePerformance.

If `isDefault = false`, then the above semantics of the FeatureValue are realized for the given `featureWithValue`. Otherwise, the semantics are realized for any individual of the `featuringType` of the `featureWithValue`, unless another value is explicitly given for the `featureWithValue` for that individual.

General Classes

OwningMembership

Attributes

`/featureWithValue : Feature {subsets membershipOwningNamespace}`

The Feature to be provided a value.

`isDefault : Boolean`

Whether this FeatureValue is a concrete specification of the bound of initial value of the `featureWithValue`, or just a default value that may be overridden.

`isInitial : Boolean`

Whether this FeatureValue specifies a bound value or an initial value for the `featureWithValue`.

`/value : Expression {redefines ownedMemberElement}`

The Expression that provides the value of the `featureWithValue` as its result.

Operations

No operations.

Constraints

featureValueBindingConnector

The `valueConnector` must be an `ownedMember` of the `featureWithValue` whose `relatedElements` are the `featureWithValue` and the result of the `value Expression` and whose `featuringTypes` are the same as those of the `featureWithValue`.

```
valueConnector.owningNamespace = featureWithValue and
valueConnector.relatedFeature->includes(featureWithValue) and
valueConnector.relatedFeature->includes(value.result) and
valueConnector.featuringType = featureWithValue.featuringType
```

featureValueExpressionDomain

The `value Expression` must have the same `featuringTypes` as the `featureWithValue`.

```
value.featuringType = featureWithValue.featuringType
```

8.3.4.11 Multiplicities Abstract Syntax

8.3.4.11.1 Overview

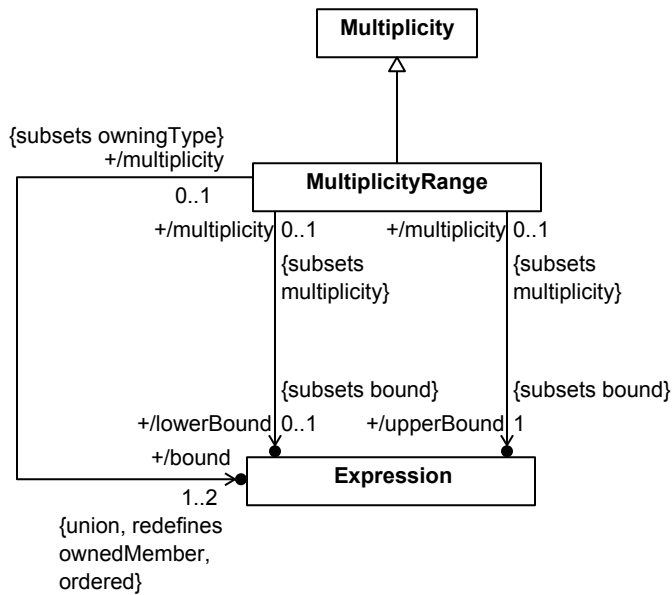


Figure 37. Multiplicities

8.3.4.11.2 MultiplicityRange

Description

A `MultiplicityRange` is a `Multiplicity` whose value is defined to be the (inclusive) range of natural numbers given by the result of a `lowerBound Expression` and the result of an `upperBound Expression`. The result of the `lowerBound Expression` shall be of type *Natural*, while the result of the `upperBound Expression` shall be of type *UnlimitedNatural*. If the result of the `upperBound Expression` is the unbounded value `*`, then the specified range includes all natural numbers greater than or equal to the `lowerBound` value.

General Classes

Multiplicity

Attributes

/bound : Expression [1..2] {redefines ownedMember, ordered, union}

The bound Expressions of the MultiplicityRange. These shall be the only `ownedMembers` of the MultiplicityRange.

/lowerBound : Expression [0..1] {subsets bound}

The Expression whose result provides the lower bound of MultiplicityRange. If no `lowerBound` Expression is given, then the lower bound shall have the same value as the upper bound, unless the upper bound is unbounded (*), in which case the lower bound shall be 0.

/upperBound : Expression {subsets bound}

The Expression whose result is the upper bound of the MultiplicityRange.

Operations

No operations.

Constraints

`multiplicityRangeExpressionDomain`

The bounds of a MultiplicityRange shall have the same `featuringTypes` as the MultiplicityRange.

```
bound->forAll(b | b.featuringType = self.featuringType)
```

8.3.4.12 Metadata Abstract Syntax

8.3.4.12.1 Overview

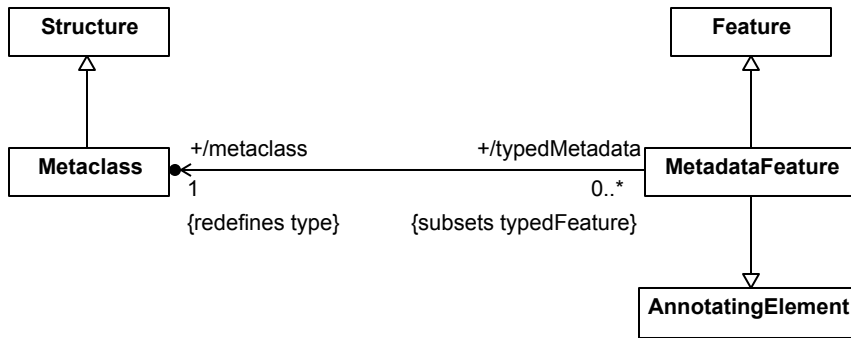


Figure 38. Metadata Annotation

8.3.4.12.2 Metaclass

Description

A Metaclass is a Structure used to type MetadataFeatures. It must subclassify, directly or indirectly, the base type *Metadata* from the Kernel Library.

General Classes

Structure

Attributes

None.

Operations

No operations.

Constraints

None.

8.3.4.12.3 MetadataFeature

Description

A MetadataFeature is a Feature that is an AnnotatingElement used to annotate another Element with metadata. It is typed by a Metaclass. All its `ownedFeatures` must `redefine` `features` of its `metaclass` and any feature bindings must be model-level evaluable.

A MetadataFeature must subset, directly or indirectly, the base MetadataFeature *metadata* from the Kernel Library.

General Classes

AnnotatingElement
Feature

Attributes

/metaclass : Metaclass {redefines type}

The `type` of this AnnotatingFeature, which must be a DataType.

Operations

No operations.

Constraints

None.

8.3.4.13 Packages Abstract Syntax

8.3.4.13.1 Overview

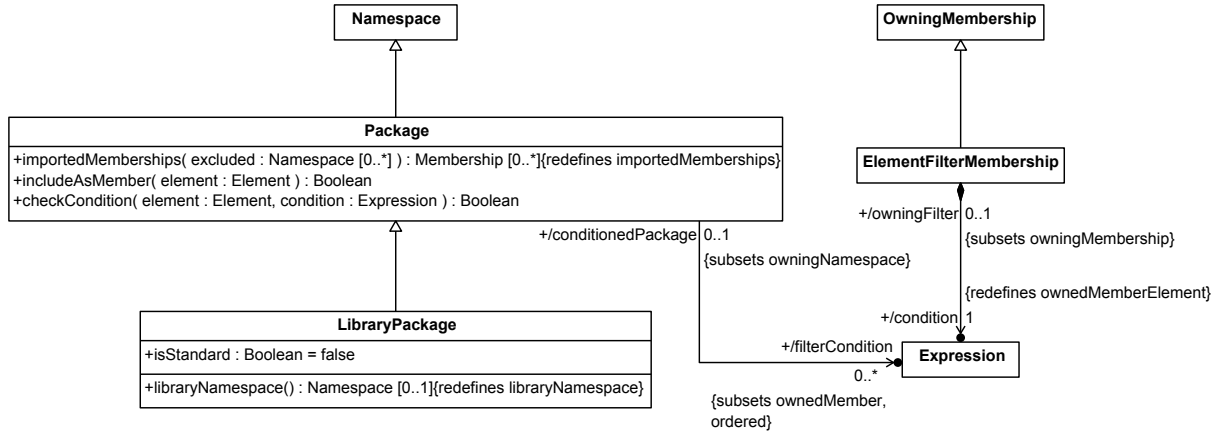


Figure 39. Packages

8.3.4.13.2 ElementFilterMembership

Description

ElementFilterMembership is a Membership between a Namespace and a model-level evaluable Boolean Expression, asserting that imported members of the Namespace should be filtered using the condition Expression. A general Namespace does not define any specific filtering behavior, but such behavior may be defined for various specialized kinds of Namespaces.

General Classes

OwningMembership

Attributes

/condition : Expression {redefines ownedMemberElement}

The model-level evaluable Boolean Expression used to filter the members of the membershipOwningNamespace of this ElementFilterMembership.

Operations

No operations.

Constraints

elementFilterIsBoolean

The result Feature of the condition Expression must have *ScalarValues::Boolean* as a type.

elementFilterIsModelLevelEvaluable

The condition Expression must be model-level evaluable.

condition.isModelLevelEvaluable

8.3.4.13.3 LibraryPackage

Description

A LibraryPackage is a Package that is the container for a model library. A LibraryPackage is itself a library Element as are all Elements that are directly or indirectly contained in it.

General Classes

Package

Attributes

isStandard : Boolean

Whether this LibraryPackage contains a standard library model. This should only be set to true for LibraryPackage in the standard Kernel Libraries or in normative model libraries for a language built on KerML.

Operations

libraryNamespace() : Namespace [0..1]

The library Namespace for a LibraryPackage is itself.

body: self

Constraints

None.

8.3.4.13.4 Package

Description

A Package is a Namespace used to group Elements, without any instance-level semantics. It may have one or more model-level evaluable `filterCondition` Expressions used to filter its `importedMemberships`. Any imported member must meet all of the `filterConditions`.

General Classes

Namespace

Attributes

/filterCondition : Expression [0..*] {subsets ownedMember, ordered}

The model-level evaluable Boolean Expressions used to filter the `members` of this Package, derived as those `ownedMembers` of the Package that are owned via `ElementFilterMembership`.

Operations

checkCondition(element : Element, condition : Expression) : Boolean

Model-level evaluate the given `condition` Expression with the given `element` as its target. If the result is a `LiteralBoolean`, return its `value`. Otherwise return `false`.


```

body: let results: Sequence(Element) = condition.evaluate(element) in
    result->size() = 1 and
    results->at(1).oclIsKindOf(LiteralBoolean) and
    results->at(1).oclAsType(LiteralBoolean).value

```

importedMemberships(excluded : Namespace [0..*]) : Membership [0..*]

Exclude Elements that do not meet all the filterConditions.

```

body: self.oclAsType(Namespace).importedMemberships(excluded)->
    select(m | self.includeAsMember(m.memberElement))

```

includeAsMember(element : Element) : Boolean

Determine whether the given element meets all the filterConditions.

```

body: let metadataAnnotations: Sequence(AnnotatingElement) =
    element.ownedAnnotation.annotatingElement->
        select(oclIsKindOf(AnnotatingFeature)) in
    self.filterCondition->forall(cond |
        metadataAnnotations->exists(elem |
            self.checkCondition(elem, cond)))

```

Constraints

packageImportVisibility

The ownedImports of a Package must not have a visibility of protected.

```
ownedImport->forall(visibility <> VisibilityKind::protected)
```

packageOwnedMembershipVisibility

The ownedMemberships of a Package must not have a visibility of protected.

```
ownedMembership->forall(visibility <> VisibilityKind::protected)
```

8.4 Semantics

8.4.1 Semantics Overview

A KerML model is intended to *represent* a system being modeled. The model is *interpreted* to make statements about the modeled system. The model may describe an existing system, in which case, if the model is correct, the statements it is interpreted to make about the system should all be true. A model may also be used to specify an imagined or planned system, in which case the statements the model is interpreted to make should be true for any system that is properly constructed and operated according to the model.

The *semantics* of KerML specify how a KerML model is to be interpreted. The semantics are defined in terms of the abstract syntax representation of the model, and only for models which are *valid* relative to the structure and constraints specified for the KerML abstract syntax (see [8.3](#)). As further specified in this subclause, models expressed in KerML are given semantics by implicitly reusing elements from the semantic models in the Kernel Model Library (see [Clause 9](#)). These library models represent conditions on the structure and behavior of the system being modeled, which are further augmented in a user model as appropriate.

A formal specification of semantics allows models to be interpreted consistently. In particular, all KerML models extend library models expressed in KerML itself, understandable by KerML modelers. These library models can

then be ultimately reduced to a small, core subset of KerML, which is grounded in mathematical logic. The goal is to provide uniform model interpretation, which improves communication between everyone involved in modeling, including modelers and tool builders.

KerML semantics are specified by a combination of mathematics and model libraries, as illustrated in [Fig. 40](#). The left side of this diagram shows the abstract syntax packages corresponding to the three layers of KerML (see 6.1). The right side shows the corresponding semantic layering.

1. The Root Layer defines the syntactic foundation KerML and, as such, does not have a semantic interpretation relative to the modeled system.
2. The Core Layer is grounded in mathematical semantics, supported by the `Base` package from the Kernel Model Library (see [9.2.2](#)). Subclause [8.4.2](#) specifies the semantics of the Core layer.
3. The Kernel Layer is given semantics fully through its relationship to the Model Library (see [Clause 9](#)). The semantic specification for each Kernel sub-package summarizes constraints on Kernel abstract syntax elements that specify how the model library is used when models are constructed following the abstract syntax. Subclause [8.4.3](#) specifies the semantics for the Core and Kernel Layers of KerML .

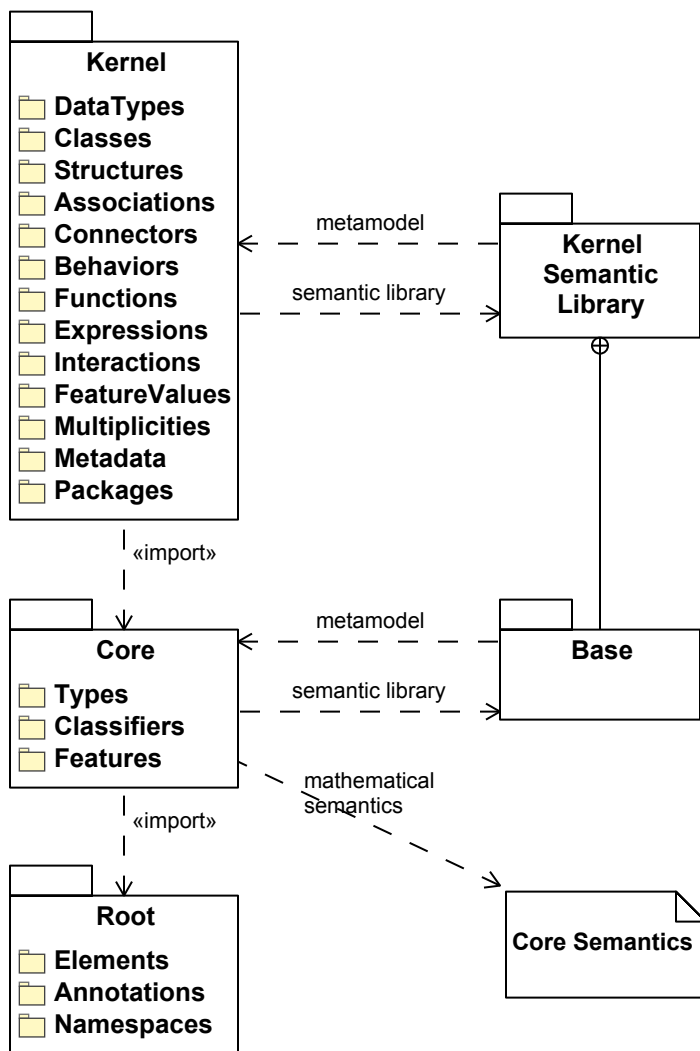


Figure 40. KerML Semantic Layers

8.4.2 Core Semantics

8.4.2.1 Core Semantics Overview

The Core semantics are defined mathematically, using a model-theoretic approach. Core mathematical semantics is expressed in first order logic notation, extended as follows:

1. Quantifiers can specify that variable values must be members of particular sets, rather than leaving this to the body of the statement ($\forall t_g \in V_T \dots$ is short for $\forall t_g \ t_g \in V_T \Rightarrow \dots$). The same set can be given once for multiple variables ($\forall t_g, t_s \in V_T \dots$ is short for $\forall t_g, t_s \ t_g \in V_T \wedge t_s \in V_T \Rightarrow \dots$).
2. Dots (.) appearing between metaproperty names have the same meaning as in OCL, including implicit collections [OCL].
3. Sets are identified in the usual set-builder notation, which specifies members of a set between curly braces ("{}"). The notation is extended with "#" before an opening brace to refer to the cardinality of a set.

Element names appearing in the mathematical semantics refer to the element itself, rather than its instances, using the same font conventions as given in [8.1](#).

The mathematical semantics use the following model-theoretic terms, explained in terms of this specification:

- *Vocabulary*: Model elements conforming to the KerML abstract syntax, with additional restrictions given in this subclause.
- *Universe*: All actual or potential things the vocabulary could possibly be about.
- *Interpretation*: The relationship between vocabulary and mathematical structures made of elements of the universe.

The above terms are formally defined below.

- A vocabulary $V = (V_T, V_C, V_F)$ is a 3-tuple where:
 - V_T is a set of types (model elements classified by Type or its specializations, see [8.3.3.1](#)).
 - $V_C \subseteq V_T$ is a set of classifiers (model elements classified by Classifier or its specializations, see [8.3.3.2](#)), including at least *Base::Anything* from KerML model library, see [9.2.2](#)).
 - $V_F \subseteq V_T$ is a set of features (model elements classified by Feature or its specializations, see [8.3.3.3](#)), including at least *Base::things* from the KerML model library (see [9.2.2](#)).
 - $V_T = V_C \cup V_F$
- An interpretation $I = (\mathcal{A}, \cdot^T)$ for V is a 2-tuple where:
 - \mathcal{A} is a non-empty set (*universe*), and
 - \cdot^T is an (*interpretation*) function relating elements of the vocabulary to sets of sequences of elements of the universe. It has domain V_T and co-domain that is the power set of S , where

$$S = \cup_{i \in \mathbb{Z}^+} \mathcal{A}^i$$
 S is the set of all n-ary Cartesian products of \mathcal{A} with itself, including 1-products, but not 0-products, which are called *sequences*. The Semantics subclauses give other restrictions on the interpretation function.

The semantics of KerML are restrictions on the interpretation relationship, as given mathematically in this and subsequent subclauses on the Core semantics. The phrase *result of interpreting* a model (vocabulary) element refers to sequences paired with the element by \cdot^T . This specification also refers to this as the *interpretation* of the model element, for short.

The function \cdot^{minT} specializes \cdot^T to the subset of sequences in an interpretation that have no others as tails, except when applied to *Anything*.

$$\forall t \in \text{Type}, s_1 \in S \quad s_1 \in (t)^{minT} \equiv s_1 \in (t)^T \wedge (t \neq \text{Anything} \Rightarrow (\forall s_2 \in S \ s_2 \in (t)^T \wedge s_2 \neq s_1 \Rightarrow \neg \text{tail}(s_2, s_1)))$$

Functions and predicates for sequences are introduced below. Predicates prefixed with `form:` are defined in [fUML], Clause 10 (Base Semantics).

- *length* is a function version of fUML's *sequence-length*.

$$\forall s, n \quad n = \text{length}(s) \equiv (\text{form:sequence-length } s \ n)$$

- *at* is a function version of fUML's *in-position-count*.

$$\forall x, s, n \quad x = \text{at}(s, n) \equiv (\text{form:in-position-count } s \ n \ x)$$

- *head* is true if the first sequence is the same as the second for some or all of the second starting at the beginning, otherwise is false.

$$\begin{aligned} \forall s_1, s_2 \quad \text{head}(s_1, s_2) &\Rightarrow \text{form:Sequence}(s_1) \wedge \text{form:Sequence}(s_2) \\ \forall s_1, s_2 \quad \text{head}(s_1, s_2) &\equiv (\text{length}(s_1) \leq \text{length}(s_2)) \wedge \\ &(\forall p \in \mathbb{Z}^+ \quad p \geq 1 \wedge p \leq \text{length}(s_1) \Rightarrow \text{at}(s_1, p) = \text{at}(s_2, p)) \end{aligned}$$

- *tail* is true if the first sequence is the same as the second for some or all of the second finishing at the end, otherwise is false:

$$\begin{aligned} \forall s_1, s_2 \quad \text{tail}(s_1, s_2) &\Rightarrow \text{form:Sequence}(s_1) \wedge \text{form:Sequence}(s_2) \\ \forall s_1, s_2 \quad \text{tail}(s_1, s_2) &\equiv (\text{length}(s_1) \leq \text{length}(s_2)) \wedge \\ &(\forall h, p \in \mathbb{Z}^+ \quad (h = \text{length}(s_2) - \text{length}(s_1)) \wedge (p > h) \wedge (p \leq \text{length}(s_2) \Rightarrow \text{at}(s_1, p - h) = \text{at}(s_2, p)) \end{aligned}$$

- *concat* is true if the first sequence has the second as head, the third as tail, and its length is the sum of the lengths of the other two, otherwise is false.

$$\begin{aligned} \forall s_0, s_1, s_2 \quad \text{concat}(s_0, s_1, s_2) &\Rightarrow \text{form:Sequence}(s_0) \wedge \text{form:Sequence}(s_1) \wedge \text{form:Sequence}(s_2) \\ \forall s_0, s_1, s_2 \quad \text{concat}(s_0, s_1, s_2) &\equiv (\text{length}(s_0) = \text{length}(s_1) + \text{length}(s_2)) \wedge \text{head}(s_1, s_0) \wedge \text{tail}(s_2, s_0) \end{aligned}$$

- *reverse* is true if the sequences have the same elements, but in reverse order, otherwise is false.

$$\begin{aligned} \forall s_1, s_2 \quad \text{reverse}(s_1, s_2) &\Rightarrow \text{form:Sequence}(s_1) \wedge \text{form:Sequence}(s_2) \\ \forall s_1, s_2 \quad \text{reverse}(s_1, s_2) &\equiv (\text{length}(s_1) = \text{length}(s_2)) \wedge \\ &(\forall p \in \mathbb{Z}^+ \quad p \geq 1 \wedge p \leq \text{length}(s_1) \Rightarrow \text{at}(s_1, (\text{length}(s_1) - p + 1)) = \text{at}(s_2, p)) \end{aligned}$$

8.4.2.2 Types Semantics

Required Specializations of Model Library

1. All Types shall directly or indirectly specialize `Base::Anything` (see [9.2.2.2.1](#)).

Type Semantics

The interpretation of Types in a model shall satisfy the following rules:

1. All sequences in the interpretation of a Type are in the interpretations of the Types it specializes.

$$\forall t_g, t_s \in V_T \quad t_g \in t_s.\text{specialization.general} \Rightarrow (t_s)^T \subseteq (t_g)^T$$

2. No sequences in the interpretation of a Type are in the interpretations of its disjoining Types.

$$\forall t, t_d \in V_T \quad t_d \in t.\text{disjoiningTypeDisjoining.disjoiningType} \Rightarrow ((t)^T \cap (t_d)^T = \emptyset)$$

8.4.2.3 Classifiers Semantics

Required Specializations of Model Library

See [8.4.2.2](#).

Classifier Semantics

The interpretation of the `Classifiers` in a model shall satisfy the following rules:

1. If the interpretation of a `Classifier` includes a sequence, it also includes the 1-tail of that sequence.

$$\forall c \in V_C, s_1 \in S \quad s_1 \in (c)^T \Rightarrow (\forall s_2 \in S \quad \text{tail}(s_2, s_1) \wedge \text{length}(s_2) = 1 \Rightarrow s_2 \in (c)^T)$$

2. The interpretation of the `Classifier Anything` includes all sequences of all elements of the universe.

$$(\text{Anything})^T = S$$

8.4.2.4 Features Semantics

Required Specializations of Model Library

1. All Features shall directly or indirectly specialize `Base::things` (see [9.2.2.2.6](#)) (implied by Rule 1 and 2 below combined with the definition of \cdot^T in [8.4.2.1](#)).

Feature Semantics

The interpretation of the Features in a model shall satisfy the following rules:

1. The interpretations of features must have length greater than one.

$$\forall s \in S, f \in V_F \quad s \in (f)^T \Rightarrow \text{length}(s) > 1$$

2. The interpretation of the Feature `things` is all sequences of length greater than one.

$$(\text{things})^T = \{ s \mid s \in S \wedge \text{length}(s) > 1 \}$$

See other rules below.

Features interpreted as sequences of length two or more can be treated as if they were interpreted as sets of ordered pairs (binary relations), where the first and second elements of each pair are from the domain and co-domain of the Feature, respectively. The predicate *feature-pair* below determines whether two sequences can be treated in this way.

Two sequences are a *feature pair* of a Feature if and only if the interpretation of the Feature includes a sequence s_0 such that following are true:

- s_0 is the concatenation of the two sequences, in order.
- The first sequence is in the minimal interpretation of all `featuringTypes` of the Feature.
- The second sequence is in the minimal interpretations of all `types` of the Feature.

$$\begin{aligned} \forall s_1, s_2 \in S, f \in V_F \quad & \text{feature-pair}(s_1, s_2, f) \equiv \\ & \exists s_0 \in S \quad s_0 \in (f)^T \wedge \text{concat}(s_0, s_1, s_2) \wedge \\ & (\forall t_1 \in V_T \quad t_1 \in f.\text{featuringType} \Rightarrow s_1 \in (t_1)^{\text{minT}}) \wedge \\ & (\forall t_2 \in V_T \quad t_2 \in f.\text{type} \Rightarrow s_2 \in (t_2)^{\text{minT}}) \end{aligned}$$

The interpretation of the Features in a model shall satisfy the following rules:

3. All sequences in an interpretation of a Feature have a non-overlapping head and tail that are feature pairs of the Feature.

$$\forall s_0 \in S, f \in V_F \quad s_0 \in (f)^T \Rightarrow \exists s_1, s_2 \in S \quad \text{head}(s_1, s_0) \wedge \text{tail}(s_2, s_0) \wedge (\text{length}(s_0) \geq \text{length}(s_1) + \text{length}(s_2)) \wedge \text{feature-pair}(s_1, s_2, f)$$

4. Values of `redefiningFeatures` are the same as the values of their `redefinedFeatures` restricted to the domain of the `redefiningFeature`.

$$\forall f_g, f_s \in V_F \quad f_g \in f_s.\text{redefinedFeature} \Rightarrow (\forall s_1 \in S \quad (\forall f_{t_s} \in V_T \quad f_{t_s} \in f_s.\text{featuringType} \Rightarrow s_1 \in (f_{t_s})^{\text{minT}}) \Rightarrow (\forall s_2 \in S \quad (\text{feature-pair}(s_1, s_2, f_s) \equiv \text{feature-pair}(s_1, s_2, f_g))))$$

5. The multiplicity of a Feature includes the cardinality of its values.

$$\forall s_1 \in S, f \in V_F \quad \#\{s_2 \mid \text{feature-pair}(s_1, s_2, f)\} \in (f.\text{multiplicity})^T$$

6. Sequences in the interpretation of an inverting feature are the reverse of those in the inverted feature.

$$\forall f_1, f_2 \in V_F \quad f_2 \in f_1.\text{invertingFeatureInverting.invertingFeature} \Rightarrow (\forall s_1 \in S \quad s_1 \in (f_1)^T \equiv (\exists s_2 \in S \quad s_2 \in (f_2)^T \wedge \text{reverse}(s_2, s_1)))$$

7. The interpretation of a Feature with a chain is determined by the interpretations of the subchains, see additional predicates below.

$$\forall f \in V_F, cfl \quad cfl = f.\text{chainingFeature} \wedge \text{form:Sequence}(cfl) \wedge \text{length}(cfl) > 1 \Rightarrow \text{chain-feature-n}(f, cfl)$$

The interpretations of a Feature (f) derived from a chain of two others (f_1 and f_2) are all the sequences formed from feature pairs of the two others that share the same sequence as second and first in their pairs, respectively.

$$\begin{aligned} \forall f, f_1, f_2 \quad \text{chain-feature-2}(f, f_1, f_2) &\Rightarrow f \in V_F \wedge f_1 \in V_F \wedge f_2 \in V_F \\ \forall f, f_1, f_2 \quad \text{chain-feature-2}(f, f_1, f_2) &\equiv \\ (\forall s_d, s_{cd} \in S \quad \text{feature-pair}(s_d, s_{cd}, f) &\equiv \\ \exists s_m \in S \quad \text{feature-pair}(s_d, s_m, f_1) \wedge \text{feature-pair}(s_m, s_{cd}, f_2)) \end{aligned}$$

The interpretations of a Feature (f) derived from a chain of two or more others (fl , a list of features longer than 1) is the last in a series of features (flc) that are features derived from subchains, starting with the first two Features in fl , (deriving the first Feature in flc), then the first three (deriving the second Feature in flc), and so on, to all the Features in fl (deriving the last feature in flc , which is the original Feature f).

$$\begin{aligned} \forall f, fl \quad \text{chain-feature-n}(f, fl) &\Rightarrow \\ f \in V_F \wedge fl \subseteq V_F \wedge \text{form:Sequence}(fl) \wedge \text{length}(fl) > 1 \\ \forall f, fl \quad \text{chain-feature-n}(f, fl) &\equiv \\ \exists flc \quad flc \subseteq V_F \wedge \text{form:Sequence} \wedge \text{length}(flc) = \text{length}(fl) - 1 \wedge \\ (\forall i \in \mathbb{Z}^+ \quad i > 1 \wedge i \leq \text{length}(fl) &\Rightarrow \\ \text{chain-feature-2}(\text{at}(flc, i - 1), \text{at}(fl, i - 1), \text{at}(fl, i))) \wedge \\ f = \text{at}(flc, \text{length}(flc)) \end{aligned}$$

8.4.3 Kernel Semantics

8.4.3.1 Kernel Semantics Overview

The semantics of constructs in the Kernel Layer are specified in terms of the foundational constructs defined in the Core layer supported by reuse of model elements from the Kernel Semantic Model Library (see [9.2](#)). The most common way in which model elements are used is through specialization, in order to meet subtyping constraints specified in the abstract syntax. For example, `Classes` are required to (directly or indirectly) subclassify `Object` from the `Objects` library model, while `Features` typed by `Classes` must subset `objects`. Similarly, `Behaviors` must subclassify `Performance` from the `Performances` library model, while `Steps` (`Features` typed by `Behaviors`) must subset `performances`.

Sometimes more complicated reuse patterns are needed. For example, binary `Associations` (with exactly two ends) specialize `BinaryLink` from the library, and additionally require the ends of the `Association` to redefine the `source` and `target` ends of `BinaryLink`. In all cases, all Kernel syntactic constructs can be ultimately reduced to semantically equivalent Core patterns. Various elements of the Kernel abstract syntax essentially act as "markers" for modeling patterns typing the Kernel to the Core.

The following subclauses specify the semantics for each syntactic area of the Kernel Layer in terms of the Core pattern it represents and the model library elements that are reused to support this.

8.4.3.2 Data Types Semantics

Required Specializations of Model Library

1. `DataTypes` shall (indirectly) specialize `Base::DataValue` (see [9.2.2.2.2](#)).
2. `Features` typed by `DataTypes` shall (indirectly) subset `Base::dataValues` (see [9.2.2.2.3](#)).

DataType Semantics

For all the things at the end of sequences in the interpretation of a `DataType`, the heads of sequences ending in that thing shall be the same as heads of sequences ending in the other things.

8.4.3.3 Classes Semantics

Required Specializations of Model Library

1. `Classes` shall directly or indirectly specialize `Occurrences::Occurrence` (see [9.2.4.2.16](#)).
2. `Features` typed by `Classes` shall directly or indirectly subset `Occurrences::occurrences` (see [9.2.4.2.17](#)).

Class Semantics

For all the things at the end of sequences in the interpretation of a `Class`, the heads of sequences ending in that thing shall be different than the heads of sequences ending in the other things.

8.4.3.4 Structures Semantics

Required Specializations of Model Library

1. `Structures` shall directly or indirectly specialize `Objects::Object` (see [9.2.5.2.7](#)).
2. `Features` typed by `Structures` shall directly or indirectly subset `Objects::objects` (see [9.2.5.2.8](#)).

8.4.3.5 Associations Semantics

Required Specializations of Model Library

1. `Associations` shall directly or indirectly specialize `Links::Link` (see [9.2.3.2.3](#)).

2. Every `associationEnd` of an `Association` shall directly or indirectly subset `Link::participant`.
3. Associations with exactly two `associationEnds` shall directly or indirectly specialize `Links::BinaryLink` (see [9.2.3.2.1](#)).
4. Features typed by Associations shall directly or indirectly specialize `Links::links` (see [9.2.3.2.4](#)).
5. Features typed by Associations with exactly two `associationEnds` shall directly or indirectly specialize `Links::binaryLinks` (see [9.2.3.2.2](#)).
6. `AssociationStructures` shall directly or indirectly specialize `Objects::LinkObject` (see [9.2.5.2.5](#)).
7. Features typed by `AssociationStructures` shall directly or indirectly specialize `Objects::linkObjects` (see [9.2.5.2.6](#)).

Association Semantics

Association `associationEnds` are given a special semantics compared to other members.

An N-ary Association of the form

```
assoc A {
  end feature e1;
  end feature e2;
  ...
  end feature eN;
}
```

is semantically equivalent to the Core model

```
classifier A specializes Links::Link {
  end feature e1 subsets Links::Link::participant;
  end feature e2 subsets Links::Link::participant;
  ...
  end feature eN subsets Links::Link::participant;
}
```

The general semantics for the multiplicity of an `endFeature` is such that, even if a multiplicity other than `1..1` is specified, the Feature is required to effectively have multiplicity `1..1` relative to the `Link`. The `Link` instance for an `Association` is a tuple of participants, each one of which is a value of an `endFeature` of the `Association`. Note that the Feature `Link::participant` is declared **readonly**, meaning that the participants in a link cannot change once the link is created.

If an `associationEnd` has a multiplicity specified other than `1..1`, then this shall be interpreted as follows: For an `Association` with N `associationEnds`, consider the i -th `associationEnd` e_i . The multiplicity, ordering and uniqueness constraints specified for e_i apply to each set of instances of the `Association` that have the same (singleton) values for each of the $N-1$ `associationEnds` other than e_i .

For example, each instance of the `Association`

```
assoc Ternary {
  end feature a[1];
  end feature b[0..2];
  end feature c[*] nonunique ordered;
}
```

consists of three participants, one value for each of the `associationEnds` a , b and c . The multiplicities specified for the `associationEnds` then assert that:

1. For any specific values of b and c , there must be exactly one instance of *Ternary*, with the single value allowed for a .
2. For any specific values of a and c , there may be up to two instances of *Ternary*, all of which must have different values for b (default uniqueness).
3. For any specific values of a and b , there may be any number of instance of *Ternary*, which are ordered and allow repeated values for c .

Release Note. The special semantics for the multiplicity of end Features is still under discussion.

If an Association has an `ownedSuperclassing` to another Association, then its `associationEnds` redefine the `associationEnds` of the superclass Association. In this case, the subclass Association will indirectly specialize `Link` through a chain of Superclassings, and each of its `associationEnds` will indirectly subset `Links::participant` through a chain of redefinitions and a subsetting.

Binary Association Semantics

Following the usual rules for the `associationEnds` of a specialized Association, the first `associationEnd` of the binary Association will redefine `BinaryLink::source` and the second `associationEnd` of the binary Association will redefine `BinaryLink::target`. The Association `BinaryLink` specializes *Link* and the Features `BinaryLink::source` and `BinaryLink::target` subset `Link::participant`. Therefore, the semantics for binary Associations are consistent with the semantics given above for Associations in general. In addition, the equivalent core model for a binary Association adds implicit nested *navigation* Features to each of the `associationEnds` of the Association, as described below.

A binary Association of the form

```
assoc A {
    end feature e1;
    end feature e2;
}
```

is semantically equivalent to the Core model

```
classifier A specializes Links::BinaryLink {
    end feature e1 redefines Links::BinaryLink::source {
        feature e2 = A::e2(e1);
    }
    end feature e2 redefines Links::BinaryLink::target {
        feature e1 = A::e1(e2);
    }
}
```

As shown above, the added navigation Feature for each end has the same name as the (effective) name of the *other* end. If the name of a navigation Feature is the same as an inheritable Feature from the `ownedGeneralizations` of the containing `associationEnd`, then the navigation Feature shall redefine that otherwise inherited Feature. The notation `A::e2(e1)` means "all values of the end $e2$ of all instances of A that have the given value for the end $e1$ ". Therefore, for each value of `A::e1`, `A::e1::e2` gives the values of $e2$ that have $e1$ at the other end, that is, it defines a *navigation* across A from $e1$ to $e2$. The meaning of `A::e2::e1` is similar.

Release Note. The model for navigation across binary Associations is still under discussion.

AssociationStructure Semantics

An AssociationStructure has the same semantics as given above for Associations in general, except that, rather than specializing *Links::Link*, it specializes *Objects::LinkObject*, which in turn specializes *Object*, giving AssociationStructures the semantics of Structures (see [8.4.3.4](#)) as well as Associations.

8.4.3.6 Connectors Semantics

Required Specializations of Model Library

1. Connectors shall directly or indirectly specialize *Links::links* (see [9.2.3.2.4](#)), which means they shall be typed by Associations ([8.3.4.4.2](#)).
2. Connectors with exactly two *relatedFeatures* shall (indirectly) specialize *Links::binaryLinks* (see [9.2.3.2.2](#)).
3. Connectors with at least one *type* that is an AssociationStructure shall (indirectly) specialize *Objects::linkObjects* (see [9.2.5.2.6](#)).
4. BindingConnectors shall directly or indirectly specialize *Links::selfLink* (see [9.2.3.2.6](#)), which means they shall be typed by (a specialization of) *SelfLink* (see [9.2.3.2.5](#)).
5. Successions shall (indirectly) specialize *Occurrences::happensBeforeLinks* (see [9.2.4.2.4](#)), which means they shall be typed by (a specialization of) *HappensBefore* (see [9.2.4.2.3](#)).

Connector Semantics

An N-ary Connector of the form

```
connector c : A (f1, f2, ... fN);
```

is semantically equivalent to the Core model

```
feature c : A subsets Links::links {  
  end feature e1 redefines A::e1 subsets f1;  
  end feature e2 redefines A::e2 subsets f2;  
  ...  
  end feature eN redefines A::eN subsets fN;  
}
```

where *e1, e2, ..., eN* are the names of *associationEnds* of the Association *A*, in the order they are defined in *A*. If explicit multiplicities are given for the *connectorEnds*, then these become the multiplicities of the *endFeatures* in the equivalent core model. (If *A* is an AssociationStructure, then *Links::link* is replaced by *Objects::LinkObjects*, above and in the following.)

If the named notation is used for pairing *connectorEnds* to *associationEnds*:

```
connector c : A (e_f1 ::> f1, e_f2 ::> f2, ... e_fN ::> fN);
```

then the model is similar:

```
feature c : A subsets Links::links {  
  end feature e_f1 redefines A::e_f1 subsets f1;  
  end feature e_f2 redefines A::e_f2 subsets f2;  
  ...  
  end feature e_fN redefines A::e_fN subsets fN;  
}
```

where the *e_f1, e_f2, ..., e_fN* are again names of *associationEnds* of the Association *A*, but now not necessarily in the order in which they are defined in *A*.

The semantic model of a binary Connector is just that of an N-ary Connector with $N = 2$. In particular, if no type is explicitly declared for a binary Connector, then its `connectorEnds` simply redefine the *source* and *target* ends of the Association *BinaryLink*, which are inherited by the Feature *binaryLinks*.

A binary Connector of the form

```
connector c : A from f1 to f2;
```

is semantically equivalent to

```
feature c : A subsets Links::binaryLinks {
  end feature source redefines Objects::binaryLinks::source subsets f1;
  end feature target redefines Objects::binaryLinks::target subsets f2;
}
```

If *A* is an AssociationStructure, then the equivalent Feature also subsets *Objects::linkObjects*.

Binding Connector Semantics

BindingConnectors are typed by *SelfLinks*, which have two `associationEnds` that subset each other, meaning they identify the same things (have the same values, see [9.2.3.2.5](#)). This applies to BindingConnector `connectorEnds` also by redefining the `associationEnds` of *SelfLink*.

A BindingConnector of the form

```
binding f1 = f2;
```

is semantically equivalent to the Core model

```
feature subsets Links::selfLinks {
  end feature thisThing redefines selfLinks::thisThing subsets f1;
  end feature thatThing redefines selfLinks::thatThing subsets f2;
}
```

where *selfLinks* is typed by *SelfLink* and, so, inherits the `endFeatures` *self* and *myself*.

Succession Semantics

Successions are typed by *HappensBefore*, which require the *Occurrence* identified by (value of) its first `associationEnd` (*earlierOccurrence*) to precede the one identified by its second (*laterOccurrence*, see [9.2.4.2.3](#)). This applies to Succession `connectorEnds` also by redefining the `associationEnds` of *HappensBefore*.

A Succession of the form

```
succession first f1 then f2;
```

is semantically equivalent to the Core model

```
feature subsets Occurrences::successions {
  end feature earlierOccurrence
    redefines Occurrences::successions::earlierOccurrence subsets f1;
  end feature laterOccurrence
    redefines Occurrences::successions::laterOccurrence subsets f2;
}
```

where *succession* is typed by *HappensBefore* and, so, inherits the endFeatures *earlierOccurrence* and *laterOccurrence*.

8.4.3.7 Behavior Semantics

Required Specializations of Model Library

1. Behaviors shall directly or indirectly specialize *Performances::Performance* (see [9.2.6.2.11](#)).
2. Steps shall directly or indirectly specialize *Performances::performances* (see [9.2.6.2.12](#)), which means they shall be typed by Behaviors.

Behavior Semantics

A Behavior of the form

```
behavior B { in x; out y; inout z; }
```

is semantically equivalent to

```
class B specializes Performances::Performance {  
    in feature x;  
    out feature y;  
    inout feature z;  
}
```

while a Behavior that explicitly specializes another Behavior:

```
behavior B1 specializes B { in x1; out y1; }
```

is semantically equivalent to

```
class B1 specializes B {  
    in feature x1 redefines x;  
    out feature y1 redefines y;  
}
```

Step Semantics

A Step of the form

```
step s { in u; out v; inout w; }
```

is semantically equivalent to

```
feature s subsets Performances::performances {  
    in feature u;  
    out feature v;  
    inout feature w;  
}
```

while a Step that explicitly specializes Behaviors and/or Steps:

```
step b : B subsets s { in xx; out yy; }
```

is semantically equivalent to

```

feature b : B subsets s {
  in feature xx redefines B::x, s::u;
  out feature yy redefines B::y, s::v;
}

```

Note. The behaviors of Steps can have their own Steps, providing for (repeated) refinement of Behaviors by other Behaviors.

8.4.3.8 Functions Semantics

Required Specializations of Model Library

1. Functions shall directly or indirectly specialize *Performances::Evaluation* (see [9.2.6.2.3](#)).
2. Predicates shall directly or indirectly specialize *Performances::BooleanEvaluation* (see [9.2.6.2.1](#)).
3. Expressions shall directly or indirectly specialize *Performances::evaluations* (see [9.2.6.2.4](#)), which means they shall be directly or indirectly typed by *Performances::Evaluation*.
4. BooleanExpressions (including Invariants) shall directly or indirectly specialize *Performances::booleanEvaluations* (see [9.2.6.2.2](#)), which means they shall be typed by (a specialization of) *Performances::BooleanEvaluation*.

Function Semantics

A Function of the form

```

function F { in a; in b; return result;
  resultExpr
}

```

is semantically equivalent to

```

class F specializes Performances::Evaluation {
  in a;
  in b;
  out result redefines Performances::Evaluation::result
    = resultExpr;
}

```

where the binding to *resultExpr* is interpreted as a FeatureValue (see [Clause](#)).

Expression Semantics

An Expression of the form

```

expr e : F { in a; in b; return result;
  resultExpr
}

```

is semantically equivalent to

```

feature e : F subsets Performances::evaluations {
  in a redefines F::a;
  in b redefines F::b;
  out result redefines F::result
    = resultExpr;
}

```

Predicate Semantics

A Predicate is simply a Function with a Boolean result (see [Clause](#)) and, otherwise, has no additional semantics.

Boolean Expression and Invariant Semantics

An Invariant of the form

```
inv i { ... return result;  
      resultExpr  
}
```

is semantically equivalent to

```
feature i subsets Performances::trueEvaluations {  
  ...  
  out result redefines Performances::booleanEvaluations::result  
    = resultExpr;  
}
```

A negated invariant is the same, except that it subsets `Performances::falseEvaluations`.

8.4.3.9 Expressions Semantics

Required Specializations of Model Library

1. LiteralExpressions shall directly or indirectly specialize `Performances::literalEvaluations` (see [9.2.6](#)), which means their function is `Performances::LiteralEvaluations` or a specialization of it.
2. NullExpressions shall directly or indirectly specialize `Performances::nullEvaluations` (see [9.2.6](#)), which means their function is `Performances::NullEvaluations` or a specialization of it.

Also see Required Generalizations for Expressions in [8.4.3.8](#).

Null Expression Semantics

Invocations of NullExpressions do not produce any `result` values (see rules above and [Clause](#)).

Literal Expression Semantics

With the exception of LiteralInfinity, each kind of LiteralExpression has a `value` meta-property with its own primitive Type, which is given a required constant value in models to specify the value of the `result` of *LiteralEvaluations* classified by each LiteralExpression (see [9.2.6.1](#)). LiteralInfinity does not have a `value` property, because its `result` parameter value is always a number greater than all the integers ("infinity"), but treated like one, notated by `*`, from the standard DataType *Natural*.

LiteralExpressions are Expressions that have the values of their `result` parameter specified as a constant in models by a LiteralExpression's `value` property, ultimately being *DataValues* in the `result` parameter of *LiteralEvaluations* classified by the LiteralExpression (see [9.2.6.1](#)). LiteralInfinities are LiteralExpressions resulting in a number greater than all the integers ("infinity"), but treated like one, notated as `*` (see [9.3.2.1](#)).

Release Note. The semantics of literals will be more formally addressed in the final submission.

Feature Reference Expression Semantics

A FeatureReferenceExpression for a Feature `f` is semantically equivalent the Expression

```

    expr {
        return result = f;
    }

```

where the types of the `result` parameter are considered to be implicitly the same as those of `f`.

Invocation Expression Semantics

Given a function of the form

```
function F { in a; in b; ... return result; }
```

an `InvocationExpression` of the form

```
F(expr_1, expr_2, ...)
```

is semantically equivalent to `e.result`, where the Expression `e` is

```

expr e : F {
    in a = expr_1;
    in b = expr_2;
    ...
    return result;
}

```

and each `e_n` is the equivalent of `expr_n` according to this subclause.

With the exception of operators that map to control Functions (see below), the concrete syntax operator Expression notation (see [Clause](#)) is simply special surface syntax for `InvocationExpressions` of standard library Functions. For example, a unary operator Expression such as

```
! expr
```

is equivalent to the `InvocationExpression`

```
DataFunctions::'!' (expr)
```

and a binary operator Expression such as

```
expr_1 + expr_2
```

is equivalent to the `InvocationExpression`

```
DataFunctions::'+' (expr_1, expr_2)
```

where the `InvocationExpressions` are then semantically interpreted as above.

The `+` and `-` operators are the only operators that have both unary and binary usages. However, the corresponding library functions have optional 0..1 multiplicity on their second parameters, so it is acceptable to simply not provide an input for the second argument when mapping the unary usages of these operators.

Release Note. Functions in the library Packages *BaseFunctions* and *ScalarFunctions* are extensively specialized in other library Packages to constrain their `parameter types` (e.g., the Package *RealFunctions* constrains `parameter types` to be *Real*, etc.). The semantics of Function specialization and dynamic dispatch based on `parameter types` will be addressed in the final submission.

Expression Body Semantics

An Expression body used as a base expression (see [Clause](#)) is equivalent to a `FeatureReferenceExpression` that contains the Expression body as its owned referent. That is, a Expression body of the form

```
{ body }
```

is semantically equivalent to

```
expr {  
  return result;  
  expr e { body }  
  binding result = e;  
}
```

Control Function Invocation Semantics

Certain operator expressions (see [Clause](#)) denote invocations of Functions in the *ControlFunctions* library model that have one or more parameters that are Expressions (see [9.4.17](#)). The arguments corresponding to these parameters are handled by special rules that wrap the given argument Expressions in Expression bodies so they can be passed without being immediately evaluated.

The second and third operands of the ternary conditional test operator `?` are for Expression parameters. Therefore, a conditional test Expression of the form

```
if expr_1 ? expr_2 else expr_3
```

is semantically equivalent to

```
ControlFunctions::'if'(expr_1, { expr_2 }, { expr_3 })
```

The second operand of the binary conditional logical operators **and**, **or**, and **implies** is for an Expression parameter. Therefore, a conditional logical Expression of the form

```
expr_1 and expr_2
```

is semantically equivalent to

```
ControlFunctions::'and'(expr_1, { expr_2 })
```

and similarly for **or** and **implies**.

Model-Level Evaluable Expression Semantics

As defined in [Clause](#), a model-level evaluable Expression is an Expression that can be evaluated using metadata available within a model itself. This means that the evaluation rules for such an expression can be defined entirely within the abstract syntax. If an Expression is model-level evaluable, then using `evaluate` operation on it gives the model-level evaluation of the Expression as an ordered list of Elements.

A model-level evaluable Expression is evaluated on a given *target* object (see [8.4.3.13](#) and [8.4.3.14](#) for the targets used in the case of metadata values and filterConditions, respectively), according to the following rules.

1. A `NullExpression` evaluates to the empty list.
2. A `LiteralExpression` evaluates to itself.

3. An `FeatureReferenceExpression` evaluates to one of the following.
 - If the target Element has a `MetadataFeature` (see [Clause](#)) with a nested Feature that redefines the `referent`, then the `FeatureReferenceExpression` evaluates to the result of evaluating the corresponding bound `value` expression on the same target Element (if any).
 - Otherwise, if the `referent` is a Feature with no `FeaturingTypes` or with *Anything* as a `FeaturingType`, then the `FeatureReferenceExpression` evaluates to the `referent`.
 - Otherwise, the `FeatureReferenceExpression` evaluates to the empty list.
4. An `InvocationExpression` evaluates to an application of its `function` to argument values corresponding by the results of evaluating each of the `argument` Expressions of the `InvocationExpression`, with the correspondence as given below.

Every Element in the list resulting from a model-level evaluation of an Expression according to the above rules will be either a `LiteralExpression` or a Feature of *Anything*. If each of these Elements is further evaluated according to its regular instance-level semantics, then the resulting list of instances will correspond to the result that would be obtained by evaluating the original Expression using its regular semantics on the referenced metadata of the target Element.

Release Note. In the final submission, the semantics of model-level evaluation may be more formally defined as Expression evaluation on a reflective KerML abstract syntax model of the KerML.

8.4.3.10 Interactions Semantics

Required Specializations of Model Library

1. Interactions shall directly or indirectly specialize `Links::Link` (see [9.2.3](#)), or `Links::BinaryLink` (see for Interactions with exactly two participants).
2. Interactions shall directly or indirectly specialize `Performances::Performance` (see [9.2.6.2.11](#)).
3. ItemFlows shall directly or indirectly specialize `Transfers::transfers` (see [9.2.7.2.6](#)), which means they shall be typed by (a specialization of) `Transfers::Transfer` (see [9.2.7.2.4](#)).
4. The `connectorEnds` of ItemFlows shall
 - a. Redefine `source` and `target` of `Transfers::Transfer` (see [9.2.7.2.4](#)).
 - b. Nest Features that redefine `source::sourceOutput` and `target::targetInput`, and subset the `sourceOutputFeature` and `targetInputFeature` of the ItemFlow.
5. ItemFlows that specify the kind of item flowing (`itemType`) shall add an `ownedFeature` that directly or indirectly redefines `Transfer::item` with that Type.
6. SuccessionItemFlows directly or indirectly specialize `Transfers::flows` (see [9.2.7.2.7](#)), which means they shall be typed by (a specialization of) `Transfers::TransferBefore` (see [9.2.7.2.5](#)).

Interaction Semantics

An Interaction of the form

```
interaction I {
  in feature x;
  out feature y;
  inout feature z;
  end feature e1;
  end feature e2;
}
```

is semantically equivalent to the Core model

```
classifier I specializes Link::BinaryLink, Performances::Performance {
  in feature x;
  out feature y;
```

```

    inout feature z;

    end feature e1 redefines Link::BinaryLink::source {
        feature e2 = I::e2(e1);
    }
    end feature e2 redefines Link::BinaryLink::target {
        feature e1 = I::e1(e2);
    }
}

```

Item Flow Semantics

An ItemFlow of the form

```
flow of i : T from f1.fl_out to f2.f2_in;
```

is semantically equivalent to the core model

```

feature subsets Transfers::transfers {
    feature i : T redefines item;
    end feature redefines source subsets f1 {
        feature redefines sourceOutput subsets f1_out;
    }
    end feature redefines target subsets f2 {
        feature redefines targetInput subsets f2_in;
    }
}

```

A SuccessionItemFlow is semantically the same, except that *Transfers::transfersBefore* is used instead of *transfers*.

8.4.3.11 Feature Values Semantics

A FeatureVale of the form

```
feature f = expr;
```

is semantically equivalent to

```

feature f {
    expr e { ... }
    binding f = e.result featured by T;
}

```

where *e* is the interpretation of *expr* as described in [8.4.3.9](#) and *T* is the owningType of *f*, if it has one, or is otherwise not included.

8.4.3.12 Multiplicities Semantics

Required Specializations of Model Library

1. MultiplicityRanges shall directly subset *Base::naturals* (see [9.2.2.2.4](#)), which means they shall be typed by (a specialization of) *ScalarValues::Natural*.

Multiplicity Range Semantics

A MultiplicityRange of the form

`[expr_1.. expr_2]`

represents a range of data values of the DataType *Natural* (see [9.3.2.2.4](#)) that are greater than or equal to the result of the Expression *expr_1* and less than or equal to the result of the Expression *expr_2*. Essentially, this is

```
all Natural -> select n (expr_1 <= n & n <= expr_2)
```

where, if *expr_2* evaluates to the unbounded value ***, all *Natural* data values are less than it.

A MultiplicityRange having only a single expression:

`[expr]`

is interpreted in one of the following ways:

- If *expr* evaluates to ***, then the values of the MultiplicityRange are the entire extent of *Natural*.
- Otherwise, the values of the MultiplicityRange are all *Natural* data values less than or equal to the result of *expr*.

```
all Natural -> select n (n <= expr)
```

Note. A conforming tool is not expected to compute the entire set of *Natural* numbers that are values of a MultiplicityRange. It is sufficient to check that the values of a Type have a cardinality that is within the range specified by MultiplicityRange.

8.4.3.13 Metadata Semantics

Required Specializations of Model Library

1. Metaclasses shall directly or indirectly specialize *Metaobjects::Metaobject* (see [9.2.16.2.1](#)).
2. MetadataFeatures shall directly or indirectly specialize *Metaobjects::metaobjects* (see [9.2.16.2.2](#)), which means they shall be typed by Metaclasses.
3. If a MetadataFeature directly or indirectly specializes *Metaobjects::SemanticMetadata* (see [9.2.16.2.3](#)), then
 - If one of the following holds:
 - the annotated Type is neither a Classifier nor a Feature
 - the annotated Type is a Classifier and the Type bound to the *baseType* Feature of the MetadataFeature is a Classifier
 - the annotated Type is a Feature and the Type bound to the *baseType* Feature of the MetadataFeature is a Featurethen the annotated Type shall directly or indirectly specialize the Type referenced by the *baseType*.
 - If the annotated Type is a Classifier and the Type bound to the *baseType* Feature of the MetadataFeature is a Feature, then the annotated classifier shall directly or indirectly specialize each *type* of the Feature referenced by the *baseType*.

Metadata

While MetadataFeatures are Features, they are defined only within a model and do not have instance-level semantics (i.e., they do not affect instances, as specified in Core – see [8.4.2.4](#)). However, at a meta-level, a MetadataFeature can be treated as if the (reflective) Metaclasses of its *annotatedElements* were its *featuringTypes*. In this case, the MetadataFeature defines a map from its *annotatedElements*, as instances of their Metaclasses, to a single instance of its *metaclass*.

Further, a model-level evaluable Expression is simply an Expression that can be evaluated using metadata available within a model itself (see [8.4.3.9](#)). If a model-level evaluable Expression is evaluated on such metadata according to

the regular semantics of Expressions, then the result will be the same as the static evaluation of the Expression within the model. Therefore, if a `MetadataFeature` is instantiated as above, the binding of its features to the results of evaluating the model-level evaluable Expressions given as `featureValues` can be interpreted according to the regular semantics of `FeatureValues` (see [8.4.3.11](#)) and `BindingConnectors` (see [8.4.3.6](#)).

When a `value` Expression is model-level evaluated (as described in [8.4.3.9](#)), its target is the `MetadataFeature` that owns the associated `metadataFeature`. This means that the `value` Expression for a nested Feature of a `MetadataFeature` may reference other Features of the `MetadataFeature`, as well as Features with no `featuringTypes` or *Anything* as a `featuringType`.

8.4.3.14 Packages Semantics

Packages do not have semantics (they do not affect instances).

The `filterConditions` of a `Package` are model-level evaluable Expressions that are evaluated as described in [8.4.3.9](#). All `filterConditions` are checked against every `Membership` that would otherwise be imported into the `Package` if it had no `filterCondition`. A `Membership` shall be imported into the `Package` if and only if every `filterCondition` evaluates to true either with no target `Element`, or with any `MetadataFeature` of the `memberElement` of the `Membership` as the target `Element`.

Implementation Note. A `MetadataFeature` must be owned by the imported `Element` in order to be accessed when evaluating a `filterCondition`.

9 Model Libraries

9.1 Model Libraries Overview

A *model library* is a collection of library models that can be reused across many user models. KerML includes three standard model libraries: the Semantic Library (see [9.2](#)), the Data Type Library (see [9.3](#)), and the Function Library (see [9.4](#)). The normative representation of these library models is in the textual concrete syntax, as provided in machine-readable files associated with this specification document. They are described for reference in subclauses of this Clause.

9.2 Semantic Library

9.2.1 Semantic Library Overview

The Semantic Library is a collection of KerML models that are part of the semantics of the metamodel (see [Clause 8](#)). They are reused when constructing KerML user models (instantiating the abstract syntax), as specified by constraints and semantics of metaelements, such as Types being required to specialize *Anything* from the library and Behaviors specializing *Performance* (see [8.4](#)). The library can be specialized for particular applications, such as systems modeling.

The Semantic Library contains a set of packages, one for each library model, as described in a subsequent subclauses. The following are the major areas covered in the Semantic Library.

1. The *Base* library model (see [9.2.2](#)) begins the Specialization hierarchy for all KerML Types, including the most general Classifier *Anything* and the most general Feature *things*. It also contains the most general DataType *DataValue* and its corresponding Feature *dataValues*. The *Links* library model (see [9.2.3](#)) specializes *Base* to provide the semantics for Associations between things.
2. The *Occurrences* library model (see [9.2.4](#)) introduces *Occurrence*, the most general Class of things that exist or happen in time and space, as well as the basic temporal Associations between them. The *Objects* library model (see [9.2.5](#)) specializes *Occurrences* to provide a model of *Objects* and *LinkObjects*, giving semantics to Structures and AssociationStructures, respectively. The *Performances* library model (see [9.2.6](#)) specializes *Occurrences* to provide a model of *Performances* and *Evaluations*, giving semantics to Behaviors and Expressions, respectively. Temporal associations can be used by Successions to specify the order in which *Performances* are carried out during other *Performances*, or when *Objects* exist in relation to each other, or combinations involving *Performances* and *Objects*. The *Transfers* library model (see [9.2.7](#)) models asynchronous flow of items between *Occurrences*, giving semantics to Interactions and ItemFlows. The *FeatureAccessPerformances* library model (see [9.2.8](#)) defines specialized *Performances* for access and modifying the values of features at specific points in time.
3. The *ControlPerformances*, *TransitionPerformances* and *StatePerformances* library models (see [9.2.9](#), [9.2.11](#), and [9.2.10](#)) provide for coordination of multiple *Performances* to carry out some task by using them as types of Steps in an overall containing Behavior. KerML does not provide syntax specific to these library elements (e.g., KerML does not have any "control node" or "state machine" syntax), though it is expected that other languages built on KerML, and using these library models, can add syntax as needed by their applications.

9.2.2 Base

9.2.2.1 Base Overview

This library model begins the Specialization hierarchy for all KerML Types (see [7.3.2](#)), starting with the most general Classifier *Anything*, the `type` of the most general Feature *things*, which classify everything in the modeled universe and the relations between them, respectively. Being the most general library elements for their metaclasses means all Classifiers and Features in models, including in libraries, specialize them, respectively. They are specialized into most general DataType *DataValue*, the `type` of *dataValues*, the most general Feature typed by DataTypes, respectively (see [7.4.2](#)). *DataValues* are *Anything* that can only be distinguished by how they are related to other things (via Features and Associations). These are further specialized into *Natural* and *naturals*, respectively, an extension for mathematical natural numbers (integers zero and greater) extended with a number greater than all the integers ("infinity"), but treated like one, notated as *** (see [9.3.2.1](#)). The Feature *self* of *Anything* relates each thing in the universe to itself only (see *SelfLinks* in [9.2.3.1](#)).

9.2.2.2 Elements

9.2.2.2.1 Anything

Element

Classifier

Description

Anything is the most general Classifier (M1 instance of M2 Classifier). All other M1 elements (in libraries or user models) specialize it (directly or indirectly). Anything is the `type` for *things*, the most general Feature. Since FeatureTyping is a kind of Generalization, this means that Anything is also a generalization of *things*.

General Types

None.

Features

`self : Anything {subsets selfSameLife}`

The source of a SelfLink of this thing to itself. `self` is thus a feature that relates everything to itself. It is also the value of the nested `that` feature of all other things featured by this thing.

Constraints

None.

9.2.2.2.2 DataValue

Element

DataType

Description

A DataValue is Anything that can only be distinguished by how it is related to other things (via Features). DataValue is the most general Datatype (M1 instance of M2 Datatype). All other M1 Datatypes (in libraries or user models) specialize it (directly or indirectly).

General Types

Anything

Features

None.

Constraints

None.

9.2.2.2.3 dataValues

Element

Feature

Description

`dataValues` is a specialization of `things` restricted to type `DataValue`. All other Features typed by `DataValue` or its specializations (in libraries or user models) specialize it (directly or indirectly).

General Types

`DataValue`

`things`

Features

None.

Constraints

None.

9.2.2.2.4 naturals

Element

Feature

Description

General Types

`Natural`

`dataValues`

Features

None.

Constraints

None.

9.2.2.2.5 SelfSameLifeLink

Element

Association

Description

SelfLifeLinks are all and only BinaryLinks where the sourceParticipant and targetParticipant are either

- Occurrences (which might be lives) that are portions of the same life, or
- Data values that are equal.

General Types

BinaryLink

Features

myselfSameLife : Anything [1..*] {redefines toSources}

The target end of a SelfLifeLink.

selfSameLife : Anything [1..*] {redefines toTargets}

The source end of a SelfLifeLink.

sourceDataValue : DataValue [0..1] {subsets source}

Same as the sourceParticipant when it is a data value.

sourceOccurrence : Occurrence [0..1] {subsets source}

Same as the sourceParticipant when it is an occurrence.

targetDataValue : DataValue [0..1] {subsets target}

Same as the targetParticipant when it is a data value.

targetOccurrence : Occurrence [0..1] {subsets target}

Same as the targetParticipant when it is an occurrence.

Constraints

None.

9.2.2.2.6 things

Element

Feature

Description

`things` is the most general Feature (M1 instance of M2 Feature). All other Features (in libraries or user models) specialize it (subset or redefine, directly or indirectly). It is typed by `Anything`.

`things` has multiplicity lower bound 1 because, for any featuring instance, it includes at least that instance as the value of `Anything::self`.

General Types

`Anything`

Features

`that` : `Anything`

For each value of `things`, the "featuring instance" of that value. Formally, for any sequence s classified by `things`, the `that` includes a sequence whose prefix is s , followed by the second-to-last element of s . This is enforced by declaring `Anything::self` to be the chaining of `things.that`, restricting `that` to the single value of `self` for all `things`.

Constraints

None.

9.2.3 Links

9.2.3.1 Links Overview

This library model introduces the most general Association *Link*, the type of *links*, the most general Feature typed by Associations (see [Clause](#)). The *participant* Feature of *Link* is the most general *associationEnd*, identifying the things being linked by (at the "ends" of) each *Link* (exactly one thing per end, which might be the same things). *Link* is specialized into *BinaryLink*, the most general Association with exactly two *associationEnds*, *source* and *target*, which subset *participant* and identify the two things linked, which might be the same thing. *BinaryLink* is the type of *binaryLinks*, the most general Feature typed by binary Associations. They are specialized into *SelfLink* and *selfLinks*, respectively, for links that have the same thing on both ends, identified by *thisThing* and *thatThing*, redefining *source* and *target*, respectively. These are used by BindingConnectors to specify that Features have the same values (see [Clause](#)). *SelfLinks* are not in time or space (they are not Occurrences, see [9.2.5.1](#)).

9.2.3.2 Elements

9.2.3.2.1 BinaryLink

Element

Association

Description

BinaryLink is a Link with exactly two participant Features ("binary" Association). All other binary associations (in libraries or user models) specialize it (directly or indirectly).

General Types

`Link`

Features

participant : Anything {redefines participant, ordered, nonunique}

The participants of this BinaryLink, which are restricted to be exactly two.

source : Anything {subsets participant}

The participant that is the source of this BinaryLink.

target : Anything {subsets participant}

The participant that is the target of this BinaryLink.

toSources : Anything [0..*]

The end Feature of this BinaryLink corresponding to the sourceParticipant.

toTargets : Anything [0..*]

The end Feature of this BinaryLink corresponding to the targetParticipant.

Constraints

None.

9.2.3.2.2 binaryLinks

Element

Feature

Description

`binaryLinks` is a specialization of `links` restricted to type `BinaryLink`. All other Features typed by `BinaryLink` or its specializations (in libraries or user models) specialize it (directly or indirectly).

General Types

`links`

`BinaryLink`

Features

[no name] : Anything

[no name] : Anything

Constraints

None.

9.2.3.2.3 Link

Element

Association

Description

Link is the most general Association (M1 instance of M2 Association). All other Associations (in libraries or user models) specialize it (directly or indirectly). Specializations of Link are domains of Features subsetting Link::participants, exactly as many as associationEnds of the Association classifying it, each with multiplicity 1. Values of Link::participants on specialized Links must be a value of at least one of its subsetting Features.

General Types

Anything

Features

participant : Anything [2..*] {ordered, nonunique}

The participants that are associated by this Link.

Constraints

None.

9.2.3.2.4 links

Element

Feature

Description

links is a specialization of things restricted to type Link. It is the most general feature typed by Link. All other Features typed by Link or its specializations (in libraries or user models) specialize it (directly or indirectly).

General Types

Link
things

Features

None.

Constraints

None.

9.2.3.2.5 SelfLink

Element

Association

Description

SelfLink is a BinaryLink where the sourceParticipant and targetParticipant are the same. All other BinaryLinks where this is the case specialize it (directly or indirectly).

General Types

BinaryLink
SelfSameLifeLink

Features

myself : Anything {subsets myselfSameLife}

The target end of a SelfLink.

sameThing : Anything {subsets thisThing, redefines source}

The source participant of this SelfLink, which must be the same as the target participant.

thisThing : Anything {subsets sameThing, redefines target}

The target participant of this SelfLink, which must be the same as the source participant.

Constraints

None.

9.2.3.2.6 selfLinks

Element

Feature

Description

selfLinks is a specialization of binaryLinks restricted to type SelfLink. It is the most general BindingConnector. All other BindingConnectors (in libraries or user models) specialize it (directly or indirectly).

General Types

SelfLink
binaryLinks

Features

[no name] : Anything

[no name] : Anything

Constraints

None.

9.2.4 Occurrences

9.2.4.1 Occurrences Overview

Occurrences

This library adds a time and space model, starting with *Occurrence*, the most general Class (see [Clause](#)), which classifies *Anything* that takes up time and space, and *occurrences*, the most general Feature typed by Classes. *Occurrences* can take up the same or overlapping time and space when they represent different things happening or existing in it. For example, the time and space taken by a room might have air moving in it, as well as light, radio waves, and so on.

Occurrences divide into *Objects* and *Performances* (see [9.2.5.1](#) and [9.2.6.1](#), respectively), corresponding to Classes dividing into Structures and Behaviors (see [Clause](#) and [Clause](#), respectively). This subclause covers what is in common between *Objects* and *Performances*.

Temporal and Spatial Associations

Occurrences can be completely separated in time or space, or both, as indicated by these specialized *Links*:

- *HappensBefore Links* between *Occurrences* indicate they are completely separate in time, with one happening or existing completely before another. The *predecessors* and *successors* of *Occurrences* are those that *HappenBefore* them and after them (those that they *HappenBefore*), respectively. *HappensJustBefore Links* are *HappensBefore Links* between *Occurrences* where there is no possibility of other *Occurrences* happening or existing in the time between them. The *immediatePredecessors* and *immediateSuccessors* of *Occurrences* are those that *HappenJustBefore* them and just after them (those that they *HappenJustBefore*), respectively. *Occurrences* separated in time are not necessarily separated in space.
- *OutsideOf Links* between *Occurrences* indicate they are completely separate in space, without specifying their relative positions (such as above or to the left). *JustOutsideOf Links* are *OutsideOf Links* between *Occurrences* where there is no possibility of other *Occurrences* happening or existing in the space between at least some of their *spaceBoundaries*, see space boundaries below. *Occurrences* separated in space are not necessarily separated in time.

Without Links between *Occurrences* are provided as a convenience to indicate one *HappenBefore* another or is *OutsideOf* the other or both. This means they do not overlap at all in space-time.

Occurrences can completely overlap others in time or space, or both, as indicated by these specialized *Links*:

- *HappensDuring Links* between *Occurrences* indicate one happens or exists completely within the time taken by another, with the *timeEnclosedOccurrences* of an *Occurrence* being the ones that *HappenDuring* it. *Occurrences* overlapping in time do not necessarily overlap in space.
- *InsideOf Links* between *Occurrences* indicate one happens or exists completely within the space taken by another, with the *spaceEnclosedOccurrences* of an *Occurrence* being the ones that *InsideOf* it. *Occurrences* overlapping in space do not necessarily overlap in time.

Within Links between *Occurrences* are provided as a convenience to indicate one *HappensDuring* another and is *InsideOf* that other. This means one is completely overlapped by the other in space-time.

Occurrences cannot be linked by both *HappensBefore* and *HappensDuring*, *OutsideOf* and *InsideOf*, or *Within* and *Without*. They also cannot *HappenBefore* or be *OutsideOf* or *Without* themselves, but always *HappenDuring* and are *InsideOf* and *Within* themselves. When an *Occurrence* *HappensBefore* another, all *Occurrences* that *HappenDuring* the earlier one (including itself) also *HappenBefore* those that *HappenDuring* the later one (including itself).

Occurrences that *HappenDuring* each other both ways (circularly) happen or exist at the same time, which is provided for convenience by *HappensWhile*, a specialization of *HappenDuring*. *Occurrences* that are *InsideOf* each other both ways occupy exactly the same space, even though they might happen or exist at separate times. *Occurrences* that are *Within* each other both ways happen at exactly the same time and occupy exactly the same space, which is provided for convenience by *WithinBoth*, a specialization of *Within*.

The *Links* above do not take up time or space, they are temporal and spatial relations between things that do (they are disjoint with *LinkObject*, see [9.2.5.1](#)).

Other Time-Space Relations

The time and space taken by an *Occurrence* can be related in three ways to the time and space taken by others, identified by the Features below. An *Occurrence* with values for these Features takes the same time and space as

- *unionOf*: taken by all the other *Occurrences* together.
- *intersectionOf*: is common to all the other *Occurrences*.
- *differencesOf*: the first other *Occurrence* that is not taken by the rest.

The values of the above Features are *Sets* of *Occurrences* to enable the time and space of an *Occurrence* to be specified in multiple ways, with each set taken as a complete specification of the time and space taken by the *Occurrence*.

Portions

It is useful to consider *Occurrences* during only some of the time and space they take up, which are other *Occurrences* identified as *portions* (the most general portion Feature, see [Clause](#)). These are the same "thing" as their larger *Occurrences*, just considered for a potentially smaller period of time and region in space. They must be classified the same way as the *Occurrences* they are *portionsOf*, or more specialized.

Occurrences are always *portionsOf* themselves. *Occurrences* that are only *portionsOf* of themselves are *Lives* (classified by the library Class *Life*). *Lives* take up the entire time and space of a thing that happens or exists. *Occurrences* have the same *Life* as those they are *portionsOf*, identified by *portionOfLife*. This means following *portionsOf* repeatedly will always reach a single *Life*, even though some *Occurrences* along the way might be *portionsOf* of more than one other *Occurrence*.

SelfSameLifeLinks include *SelfLinks* (*Links* between each thing and itself, see [9.2.3.1](#)), as well as *Links* between *Occurrences* that are *portionsOf* the same *Life* (have the same *portionOfLife*).

Time and Space Slices

Time slices are *portions* that include all the space of their larger *Occurrences* within a potentially smaller period of time than the whole *Occurrence*, identified as *timeSlices* of the *Occurrences* they are *portionsOf*. Time slices might have Feature values and *Links* to other things peculiar to their smaller period of time. *Occurrences* are always *timeSlicesOf* themselves. The *snapshots* of *Occurrences* are *timeSlices* that take no time. The earliest *snapshot* of an *Occurrence* is its *startShot*, the latest is its *endShot*. All the others happen during its *middleTimeSlice*. *Occurrences* with a *startShot* the same as their *endShot* take no time, have no *middleTimeSlice*, and vice-versa.

Space slices are *portions* that include all the space of their larger *Occurrences*, but not necessary all their time, identified as *spaceSlices* of the *Occurrences* they are *portionsOf*. Space slices might have Feature values and *Links* to other things peculiar to their smaller region in space. *Occurrences* are always *spaceSlicesOf* themselves. The *spaceShots* of *Occurrences* are *spaceSlices* that have a lower *innerSpaceDimension* than the *Occurrences* they are *spaceSlicesOf*, which is the number of variables needed to identify any space point occupied by an *Occurrence*, without regard to higher dimensional spaces in which it might be embedded. For

example, the *innerSpaceDimension* of a *Curve* is 1 (see [9.2.5.1](#)), because points on it can be identified by the distance from one end, even if the curve bends in two or three dimensions. A *Curve* can be a *spaceShot* of a *Surface* or *Body*, which have *innerSpaceDimension* of 2 and 3, respectively. The *spaceSlices* of an *Occurrence* that are not *spaceShots* must have the same *innerSpaceDimension* as the *Occurrence*. How much an *Occurrence* bends in higher dimensions is its *outerSpaceDimension* (see [9.2.5.1](#)). For example, the *outerSpaceDimension* of a planar curve is 2 or 1 (*Line*), while it is 3 for non-planar.

Space Boundaries and Interiors

The *spaceSlices* of each *Occurrence* are divided into a *spaceBoundary*, which is a *spaceShot*, and a *spaceInterior*, which is a *spaceSlice* that is not a *spaceShot* (has the same *innerSpaceDimension* as the *Occurrence*). They are *JustOutsideOf* each other and union (see below) to the entire *Occurrence*. Space boundaries cannot have a *spaceBoundary*, which means they also cannot have a *spaceInterior*, indicated by *isClosed*=true. For example, a ball has a sphere as its *spaceBoundary*, but the sphere *isClosed*.

A *spaceBoundary* might have *spaceSlices* that are also closed and have the same *innerSpaceDimension* as the *spaceBoundary* (not among its *spaceShots*). In some cases one of these *spaceSlices* surrounds the others, identified as the *outer*, a nested feature of *spaceBoundary*, and the others as the *inner* ones. This means the *outer* one can be taken as the *spaceBoundary* of another *Occurrence* with a *spaceInterior* that completely includes the *innners*. The *inner spaceBoundaries* can also be taken as *spaceBoundaries* of their own *Occurrences*, the *spaceInteriors* of which are identified as the *innerSpaceOccurrences* ("holes") of the *Occurrence* having the *spaceBoundary*. These two cases are covered by *SurroundedBy Links* between *Occurrences*.

MatesWith Links are *JustOutsideOf Links* between *Occurrences* indicating that they union (see below) to an *Occurrence* with a *spaceBoundary* but no *spaceInterior*. This means there is no possibility of other *Occurrences* happening or existing in the space between them. *JustOutsideOf Links* additionally include those between *Occurrences* where only some of their *spaceSlices* (of their *spaceBoundaries*) are linked by *MatesWith*.

9.2.4.2 Elements

9.2.4.2.1 Causation

Element

ConnectionDefinition

Description

A *Causation* is a binary *Multicausation* in which a single cause occurrence causes a single effect occurrence. (However, a single cause can separately have multiple effects, and a single effect can have separate *Causation* connections with multiple causes.)

General Types

Multicausation

Features

theCause : Occurrence [0..*] {redefines causes}

The single causing occurrence.

theEffect : Occurrence [0..*] {redefines effects}

The single effect occurrence resulting from the cause.

Constraints

None.

9.2.4.2.2 causations

Element

ConnectionUsage

Description

causations is the base feature for *Causation* ConnectionUsages.

General Types

Causation
multicausations

Features

[no name] : Occurrence

[no name] : Occurrence

Constraints

None.

9.2.4.2.3 HappensBefore

Element

Association

Description

HappensBefore is a Withoutassociation linking an *earlierOccurrence* to a *laterOccurrence*, indicating that the Occurrences do not overlap in time (not necessarily in space, see *OutsideOf*; none of their *snapshots* happen at the same time), and the *earlierOccurrence* happens first. This means *noOccurrence* HappensBefore itself. Every Occurrence that HappensDuring the *earlierOccurrence* (including itself) also HappensBefore every Occurrence that HappensDuring the *laterOccurrence* (including itself).

General Types

HappensLink
Without

Features

earlierOccurrence : Occurrence {redefines *separateOccurrenceToo*}

The participant that happens earlier than (before) the other participant.

laterOccurrence : Occurrence {redefines separateOccurrence}

The participant that happens later than (after) the other participant.

Constraints

None.

9.2.4.2.4 happensBeforeLinks

Element

Feature

Description

`happensBeforeLinks` is a specialization of `binaryLinks` restricted to type `HappensBefore`. It is the most general Succession (M1 instance of M2 Succession). All other Successions (in libraries or user models) specialize it (directly or indirectly).

General Types

HappensBefore
binaryLinks

Features

[no name] : Occurrence

[no name] : Occurrence

Constraints

None.

9.2.4.2.5 HappensDuring

Element

Association

Description

`HappensDuring` links its `shorterOccurrence` to its `longerOccurrence`, indicating that the `shorterOccurrence` completely overlaps the `longerOccurrence` in time (not necessarily in space, see `InsideOf`; all snapshots of the `shorterOccurrence` happen at the same time as some snapshot of the `longerOccurrence`). This means every Occurrence `HappensDuring` itself and that `HappensDuring` is transitive. Every Occurrence that `HappensBefore` the `longerOccurrence` also `HappensBefore` the `shorterOccurrence`. The `shorterOccurrence` also `HappensBefore` every Occurrence that the `longerOccurrence` does.

General Types

HappensLink

Features

`happensDuring` : Occurrence [1..*] {subsets happensTarget}

Occurrences that completely overlap this one in time (not necessarily in space, see `insideOf`; they start when this one does or earlier and end when this one does or later), including this one.

`longerOccurrence` : Occurrence {redefines targetOccurrence}

The participant in this HappensDuring Link that takes up more (or equal) time than the other.

`shorterOccurrence` : Occurrence {redefines sourceOccurrence}

The participant in this HappensDuring Link that takes up less (or equal) time than the other.

Constraints

None.

9.2.4.2.6 HappensJustBefore

Element

Association

Description

HappensJustBefore is HappensBefore asserting that there is no possibility of other Occurrences happening in the time between the `earlierOccurrence` and `laterOccurrence`.

General Types

HappensBefore

Features

None.

Constraints

None.

9.2.4.2.7 HappensLink

Element

Association

Description

General Types

BinaryLink

Features

happensSource : Occurrence [0..*] {subsets toSources}

happensTarget : Occurrence [0..*] {subsets toTargets}

sourceOccurrence : Occurrence {redefines source}

targetOccurrence : Occurrence {redefines target}

Constraints

None.

9.2.4.2.8 HappensWhile

Element

Association

Description

HappensWhile is a HappensDuring and its inverse. This means the linked Occurrences completely overlap each other in time (they happen at the same time) all `snapshots` of each Occurrence happen at the same time as one of the `snapshots` of other. This means every Occurrence HappensWhile itself and that HappensWhile is transitive.

General Types

HappensDuring

Features

happensWhile : Occurrence [1..*] {subsets happensDuring}

Occurrences that start and end at the same time as this one.

happensWhile¹ : Occurrence [1..*] {subsets timeEnclosedOccurrences}

Occurrences that `happenWhile` this one does (Occurrences that start and end at the same time as this one).

thatOccurrence : Occurrence {redefines longerOccurrence}

thisOccurrence : Occurrence {redefines shorterOccurrence}

Constraints

None.

9.2.4.2.9 IncomingTransferSort

Element

Predicate

Description

A predicate of two transfers that is true when the first should be accepted instead of the other.

General Types

BooleanEvaluation

Features

None.

Constraints

None.

9.2.4.2.10 InnerSpaceOf

Element

Description

General Types

None.

Features

innerSpace : Occurrence

innerSpaceOccurrenceOf : Occurrence {subsets separateSpaceToo}

outerSpace : Occurrence

Constraints

None.

9.2.4.2.11 InsideOf

Element

Association

Description

InsideOf is a BinaryLink between its smallerSpace and largerSpace, indicating that the largerSpace completely overlaps the smallerSpace in space (not necessarily in time, see HappensDuring; all four dimensional points of the smallerSpace are in the spatial extent of the largerSpace). This means every Occurrence/ is InsideOf itself and that InsideOf is transitive.

General Types

BinaryLink

Features

insideOf : Occurrence [1..*] {subsets toTargets}

Occurrences that completely overlap this one in space (not necessarily in time, see `happensDuring`), including this one.

`largerSpace` : Occurrence {redefines target}

The participant in this `InsideOf` Link that takes up more (or equal) space than the other.

`smallerSpace` : Occurrence {redefines source}

The participant in this `InsideOf` Link that takes up less (or equal) space than the other.

Constraints

None.

9.2.4.2.12 JustOutsideOf

Element

Description

General Types

None.

Features

`justOutsideOf` : Occurrence [0..*] {subsets outsideOf}

`justOutsideOfToo` : Occurrence [0..*] {subsets outsideOfToo}

Constraints

None.

9.2.4.2.13 Life

Element

Class

Description

Life is the class of Occurrences that are "maximal portions". That is, they are only portions of themselves.

General Types

Occurrence

Features

`portion` : Occurrence [1..*]

Occurrences that are portions of this Life, including at least this Life.

Constraints

None.

9.2.4.2.14 MatesWith

Element

Description

General Types

None.

Features

matesWith : Occurrence [0..*] {subsets justOutsideOf}

Constraints

None.

9.2.4.2.15 MessageTransfer

Element

Interaction

Description

General Types

Transfer

Features

[no name] : Occurrence

[no name] : Occurrence

Constraints

None.

9.2.4.2.16 Occurrence

Element

Class

Description

An Occurrence is Anything that happens over time and space (the four physical dimensions). Occurrences can be portions of another Occurrence within time and space, including slices in time, leading to snapshots that take zero time.

General Types

Anything

Features

difference : Occurrence [0..1]

A (nested) feature of `differencesOf` identifying an Occurrence that is the `intersectionsOf` of the Occurrences identified by `interdiff` (`minuend` and `interdiff.notSubtrahend`).

differencesOf : OrderedSet [0..*]

Ordered sets of Occurrences, where the time and space taken by first Occurrence in each set (`minuend`) that is not in the time and space taken by the remaining Occurrences (`subtrahend`, resulting in `difference`) is the same as taken by this Occurrence (all four dimensional points in the `minuend` that are not in any `subtrahend` are at the same time and space as those in this Occurrence).

dispatchScope : Occurrence

elements : Occurrence [0..*]

A nested feature of `unionsOf`, `intersectionsOf`, and `differencesOf` for the elements of each of their (Ordered)Sets separately.

endShot : Occurrence {subsets snapshots}

The snapshot of this Occurrence that happensAfter all its other snapshots.

immediatePredecessors : Occurrence [0..*] {subsets predecessors}

Occurrences that HappensJustBefore this one (Occurrences that HappensBefore this one, with no possibility of other Occurrences happening in the time between them).

immediateSuccessors : Occurrence [0..*] {subsets successors}

Occurrences that this one HappensJustBefore (Occurrences that this one HappensBefore, with no possibility of other Occurrences happening in the time between them).

incomingTransfer : Transfer [0..*]

incomingTransferSort : IncomingTransferSort [0..*]

Determines which transfers to accept when multiple are available and which of the unaccepted transfers are never to be accepted (dispatched), by comparing two transfers at a time. Defaults to

`earlierFirstIncomingTransferSort`, which is true if the first transfer ends (arrives) before the other.

incomingTransferToSelf : Transfer [0..*] {subsets incomingTransfer}

Transfers for which this Occurrence is the `targetParticipant`.

inner : Occurrence [0..*]

A `spaceSlice` of `spaceBoundary`, see `spaceBoundary`.

`innerSpaceDimension` : Natural

The number of variables needed to identify space points in this Occurrence, from 0 to 3, without regard to higher dimensional spaces it might be emedded in. For example, the `innerSpaceDimension` of a curve is 1, even if it twists in three dimensions, see `outerSpaceDimension`.

`innerSpaceOccurrences` : Occurrence {subsets `separateSpace`}

Occurrences that completely occupy the space `SurroundBy` an `inner spaceBoundary` of this Occurrence.

`interdiff` : Set [0..*]

A (nested) feature of `differencesOf` identifying a set that includes its `minuend` and all Occurrences that are not in its `subtrahend`.

`intersection` : Occurrence [0..1]

A (nested) feature of `intersectionsOf` identifying an Occurrence that a) is completely within (the space and time of) all `intersectionsOf elements`, and b) satisfies the conditions of the same `element's nonIntersection`.

`intersectionsOf` : Set [0..*]

Sets of Occurrences, where the time and space taken in common between the Occurrences in each set (`intersectionsOf::intersection`) is at the same as taken by this Occurrence (all four dimensional points common to the Occurrences in each set are at the same time and space as those in this Occurrence).

`/isClosed` : Boolean

True if this Occurrence has a `spaceBoundary`, false otherwise.

`isDispatch` : Boolean

Determines whether `StatePerformances` composed under this Occurrence can accept the same incoming transfer to `dispatchScope` more than once.

`isRunToCompletion` : Boolean

Determines whether `TransitionPerformances` composed under this Occurrence can happen during `StatePerformance entry Performances` that are composed under `runToCompletionScope`.

`localClock` : Clock

A local *Clock* to be used as the corresponding time reference for this *Occurrence* and, by default, all *ownedOccurrences*. By default this is the singleton `Clocks::universalClock`.

`matingOccurrences` : Occurrence [0..*] {subsets `justOutsideOfToo`}

Occurrences that have no space between them and this one.

`middleTimeSlice` : Occurrence [0..1] {subsets `timeSlices`}

`timeSlice` of this Occurrence that takes all of the time between its `startShot` and `endShot`. Occurrences do not have `middleTimeSlice` if their `startShot` is the same as their `endShot` (such as being a `snapshot` of another Occurrence), otherwise they do.

`minuend` : Occurrence [0..1] {subsets }

A (nested) feature of `differencesOf` that identifies the first Occurrence in its elements.

`nonIntersection` : Occurrence [0..*] {subsets `spaceTimeEnclosedPoints`}

A nested feature of `intersectionsOf.elements` identifying all the `spaceTimeEnclosedPoints` of each element that are not identified by `intersection`. These must be without (separate in space or time from) at least one other element.

`notSubtrahend` : Occurrence [0..*]

A (nested) feature of `differencesOf.interdiff` identifying all Occurrences that are not identified by the `subtrahend` in each value `differencesOf` separately.

`outer` : Occurrence [0..1]

A `spaceSlice` of `spaceBoundary`, see `spaceBoundary`.

`outerSpaceDimension` : Natural [0..1]

For Occurrences of `innerSpaceDimension` 1 or 2, the number of variables needed to identify their space points in higher dimensional spaces they might be embedded in, from the `innerSpaceDimension` to 3. For example , an `outerSpaceDimension` 3 for a curve indicates it twists in three dimensions. An `outerSpaceDimension` equal to `innerSpaceDimension` indicates the occurrence is spatially straight (`innerSpaceDimension` 1 embedded in 2 or 3 dimensions) or flat (`innerSpaceDimension` 2 embedded in 3 dimensions).

`outgoingTransfer` : Transfer [0..*]

`outgoingTransferFromSelf` : Transfer [0..*] {subsets `outgoingTransfer`}

Transfers for which this Occurrence is the `sourceParticipant`.

`portion` : Occurrence [1..*] {subsets `spaceTimeEnclosedOccurrences`}

All occurrences within this one that are considered the same thing occurring (same `portionOfLife`), including this one.

`portionOf` : Occurrence [1..*] {subsets within}

All occurrences that this one is within that are considered the same thing occurring (same `portionOfLife`), including this one.

`portionOfLife` : Life

The Life of which this Occurrence is a `portion`.

`predecessors` : Occurrence [0..*] {subsets withoutToo}

Occurrences that are completely separate from this one in time (not necessarily in space, see `outsideOfToo`) and that happen before this one (end earlier than this one starts).

`runToCompletionScope` : Occurrence

`self` : Occurrence {subsets `timeSlices`, `spaceSlices`, redefines `self`}

This Occurrence (related to itself via a `SelfLink`).

`snapshotOf` : Occurrence [0..*] {subsets `timeSliceOf`}

Occurrences of which this Occurrence is a `snapshot`.

`snapshots` : Occurrence [1..*] {subsets `timeSlices`}

All `timeSlices` of this Occurrence that happen at a single instant of time (zero duration).

`spaceBoundary` : Occurrence [0..1] {subsets `spaceShots`}

A `spaceShot` of this Occurrence that is not among those of its `spaceInterior`, which it must be `OutsideOf`. It must not have a `spaceBoundary` (`isClosed` = `true`). It can be divided into `spaceSlices` that also have no `spaceBoundary`, where the inner ones are `SurroundedBy` the outer one.

`spaceEnclosedOccurrences` : Occurrence [1..*] {subsets `toSources`}

Occurrences that this one completely overlaps in space (not necessarily in time, see `timeEnclosedOccurrences`), including this one.

`spaceInterior` : Occurrence [0..1] {subsets `spaceSlices`}

A `spaceSlice` of this Occurrence that includes all its `spaceShots` except the `spaceBoundary`, which must exist and be `outsideOf` it. The `spaceInterior` must be of the same `innerSpaceDimension` as this Occurrence, except if it is zero, whereupon there is no `spaceInterior`.

`spaceShots` : Occurrence [1..*] {subsets `spaceSlices`}

All `spaceSlices` of this Occurrence that are of a lower `innerSpaceDimension` than it.

`spaceSliceOf` : Occurrence [1..*] {subsets `portionOf`}

An Occurrence this one is a `spaceSlices` of.

`spaceSlices` : Occurrence [1..*] {subsets `portion`}

All `portions` of this Occurrence that extend for exactly the same time and some or all the space, relative to spatial location of this Occurrence. This means every Occurrence is a `spaceSlice` of itself.

`spaceTimeCoincidentOccurrences` : Occurrence [1..*] {subsets `spaceTimeEnclosedOccurrences`}

Occurrences that this one completely includes in both space and time, including this one.

`spaceTimeEnclosedOccurrences` : Occurrence [1..*] {subsets `spaceEnclosedOccurrences`, `timeEnclosedOccurrences`}

All `timeEnclosedOccurrences` of this one that are `insideOf` it, including itself.

`spaceTimeEnclosedPoints` : Occurrence [1..*] {subsets `spaceTimeEnclosedOccurrences`}

All `spaceTimeEnclosedOccurrences` of this one that take up no time or space (`innerSpaceDimension` 0 and `startShot` the same as `endShot`).

`startShot` : Occurrence {subsets `snapshots`}

The snapshot of this Occurrence that happensBefore all its other snapshots.

`suboccurrences` : Occurrence [0..*]

Composite *suboccurrences* of this Occurrence. The *localClock* of all *suboccurrences* defaults to the *localClock* of its containing Occurrence.

`subtrahend` : Occurrence [0..*] {subsets }

A (nested) feature of `differencesOf` that identifies all the Occurrences in its `elements` except the first one.

`successors` : Occurrence [0..*] {subsets without}

Occurrences that are completely separate from this one in time (not necessarily in space, see `outsideOf`) and that happen after this one (start later than this one ends).

`this` : Occurrence

The "context" Occurrence within which this Occurrence takes place. By default, it is this Occurrence itself. However, this is overridden for `ownedPerformances` of Objects and `subperformances` of Performances.

`timeEnclosedOccurrences` : Occurrence [1..*] {subsets `happensSource`}

Occurrences that this one completely overlaps in time (not necessarily in space, see `inside`; they start at the same time or later and end at the same time or earlier), including this one.

`timeSliceOf` : Occurrence [1..*] {subsets `portionOf`}

Occurrences of which this one is a `timeSlice`, including this one.

`timeSlices` : Occurrence [1..*] {subsets `portion`}

`portions` that extend for some or all the time of this Occurrence, but all its space during that time, including itself.

`union` : Occurrence [0..1]

A (nested) feature of `unionsOf` identifying an Occurrence with a) `spaceTimeEnclosedOccurrences` including all those identified by a `unionsOf` element, and b) all the Occurrence's `spaceTimeEnclosedPoints` within (the space and time of) at least one of the `elements`.

`unionsOf` : Set [0..*]

Sets of Occurrences, where the time and space taken by all the Occurrences in each set together (`unionsOf::union`) is the same as taken by this Occurrence (all four dimensional points in the Occurrences of each set are at the same time and space as those of this Occurrence).

Constraints

None.

9.2.4.2.17 occurrences

Element

Feature

Description

`occurrences` is a specialization of `things` restricted to type `Occurrence`. It is the most general feature typed by `Occurrence`. All other Features typed by `Occurrence` or its specializations (in libraries or user models) specialize it (directly or indirectly).

General Types

`things`
`Occurrence`

Features

None.

Constraints

None.

9.2.4.2.18 OutsideOf

Element

Association

Description

`OutsideOf` is a `Without` association linking its `separateSpaceToo` and its `separateOccurrence`, indicating that these `Occurrences` do not overlap in space (not necessarily in time, see `HappensBefore`; no four dimensional points of the `Occurrences` are in the spatial extent of both of them). This means no `Occurrence` is `OutsideOf` itself.

General Types

`Without`

Features

`outsideOf` : `Occurrence` [0..*] {subsets without}

`Occurrences` that are completely separate from this one in space (not necessarily in time, see `successors`).

`outsideOfToo` : `Occurrence` [0..*] {subsets withoutToo}

`Occurrences` that are completely separate from this one in space (not necessarily in time, see `predecessors`).

`separateSpace` : `Occurrence` {redefines `separateOccurrence`}

The second participant in this OutsideOf Link.

`separateSpaceToo : Occurrence {redefines separateOccurrenceToo}`

The first participant in this OutsideOf Link.

Constraints

None.

9.2.4.2.19 PortionOf

Element

Association

Description

PortionOf is a Within that links its `portionOccurrence` to its `portionedOccurrence`, indicating they are considered the same thing occurring (same `portionOfLife`), but with the `portionOccurrence` potentially taking up less time and space than the `portionedOccurrence`. This means every `Occurrence` is a `PortionOf` itself. The `innerSpaceDimension` of `portionOccurrence` is the same or lower than of the `portionedOccurrence`.

General Types

Within

Features

`portionedOccurrence : Occurrence {redefines largerOccurrence}`

The participant in this PortionOf Link that is the `largerOccurrence`.

`portionOccurrence : Occurrence {redefines smallerOccurrence}`

The participant in this PortionOf Link that is the `smallerOccurrence`.

Constraints

None.

9.2.4.2.20 SnapshotOf

Element

Association

Description

SnapshotOf is a TimeSliceOf that links its `snapshotOccurrence` to its `snapshottedOccurrence`, indicating that `snapshotOccurrence` takes not time (`startShot` and `endShot` are the same).

General Types

TimeSliceOf

Features

snapshotOccurrence : Occurrence {redefines timeSliceOccurrence}

The participant in this SnapshotOf Link that is the timeSliceOccurrence.

snapshottedOccurrence : Occurrence {redefines timeSlicedOccurrence}

The participant in this SnapshotOf Link that is the timeSlicedOccurrence.

Constraints

None.

9.2.4.2.21 SpaceShotOf

Element

Association

Description

SpaceShotOf is a SpaceSliceOf that links its spaceShotOccurrence to its spaceSnapshottedOccurrence, indicating the spaceShotOccurrence is of a lower innerSpaceDimension than the spaceShottedOccurrence.

General Types

SpaceSliceOf

Features

spaceShotOccurrence : Occurrence {redefines spaceSliceOccurrence}

The participant in this SpaceShotOf Link that is the spaceSliceOccurrence.

spaceShotOf : Occurrence [1..*] {subsets spaceSliceOf}

All spaceSlicesOf this Occurrence that are of a higher innerSpaceDimension than this Occurrence.

spaceShottedOccurrence : Occurrence {redefines spaceSlicedOccurrence}

The participant in this SpaceShotOf Link that is the spaceSliced Occurrence.

Constraints

None.

9.2.4.2.22 SpaceSliceOf

Element

Association

Description

SpaceSliceOf is a PortionOf that links its spaceSliceOccurrence to its spaceSlicedOccurrence, indicating the spaceSliceOccurrence extends for exactly the same time and some or all the space of the spaceSlicedOccurrence and that the spaceSliceOccurrence is of the same or lower innerSpaceDimension than the spaceSlicedOccurrence. This means every Occurrence/ is a SpaceSliceOf itself and SpaceSliceOf is transitive.

General Types

PortionOf

Features

spaceSlicedOccurrence : Occurrence {redefines portionedOccurrence}

The participant in this SpaceSliceOf Link that is the portionedOccurrence.

spaceSliceOccurrence : Occurrence {redefines portionOccurrence}

The participant in this SpaceSliceOf Link that is the portionOccurrence.

Constraints

None.

9.2.4.2.23 SurroundedBy

Element

Description

General Types

None.

Features

surroundedBy : Occurrence [0..*] {subsets outsideOfToo}

surroundedSpace : Occurrence

surroundingSpace : Occurrence

surrounds : Occurrence [0..*] {subsets outsideOf}

Constraints

None.

9.2.4.2.24 TimeSliceOf

Element

Association

Description

TimeSliceOf is a PortionOf that links its `timeSliceOccurrence` to its `timeSlicedOccurrence`, indicating that extend for exactly the same time and some or all the space of this Occurrence, including itself. This means every Occurrence/ is a PortionOf itself.

General Types

PortionOf

Features

`timeSlicedOccurrence` : Occurrence {redefines `portionedOccurrence`}

The participant in this TimeSliceOf Link that is the `portionedOccurrence`.

`timeSliceOccurrence` : Occurrence {redefines `portionOccurrence`}

The participant in this TimeSliceOf Link that is the `portionOccurrence`.

Constraints

None.

9.2.4.2.25 Within

Element

Association

Description

Within classifies all and only links that are HappensDuring and InsideOf. They link their `largerOccurrence` to their `smallerOccurrence`, indicating the `largerOccurrence` completely overlaps the `smallerOccurrence` in time and space (all four dimensional points of the `smallerOccurrence` HappensDuring and are InsideOf the `largerOccurrence`). This means every Occurrence is Within itself and Within is transitive.

General Types

HappensDuring
InsideOf

Features

`largerOccurrence` : Occurrence {redefines `largerSpace`, `longerOccurrence`}

The participant in this Within Link that is the `longerOccurrence` and `largerSpace`.

`smallerOccurrence` : Occurrence {redefines `shorterOccurrence`, `smallerSpace`}

The participant in this Within Link that is the `shorterOccurrence` and `smallerSpace`.

`within` : Occurrence [1..*] {subsets `insideOf`, `happensDuring`}

All Occurrences that this one `happensDuring` and is `insideOf`, including this one.

Constraints

None.

9.2.4.2.26 WithinBoth

Element

Association

Description

WithinEachOther is a Within and its inverse. This means the linked Occurrences completely overlap each other in space and time (they occupy the same four dimensional region). This means every Occurrence is WithinEachOther with itself and WithinEachOther is transitive.

General Types

Within

Features

thatOccurrence : Occurrence {redefines largerOccurrence}

thisOccurrence : Occurrence {redefines smallerOccurrence}

withinBoth : Occurrence [1..*] {subsets within}

Constraints

None.

9.2.4.2.27 Without

Element

Association

Description

Without classifies all links that are HappensDuring or InsideOf, or both. They link their `separateOccurrenceToo` to their `separateOccurrence`, indicating that the Occurrences do not overlap in time or space (no four dimensional point is in both Occurrences). This means no Occurrence is Without itself.

General Types

BinaryLink

Features

separateOccurrence : Occurrence {redefines target}

The second participant in this Without Link.

separateOccurrenceToo : Occurrence {redefines source}

The first participant in this Without Link.

without : Occurrence [0..*] {subsets toTargets}

All Occurrences that are successors of this one and are outsideOf it.

withoutToo : Occurrence [0..*] {subsets toSources}

All Occurrences that are predecessors of this one and are outsideOfToo it.

Constraints

None.

9.2.5 Objects

9.2.5.1 Objects Overview

Objects are *Occurrences* that take up a single region of time and space, even though they might be in multiple places over time. *Object* is the most general Structure, while *objects* is the most general Feature typed by Structures (see [Clause](#) and compare to *Performances* in [9.2.6.1](#)). *Objects* and *Performances* do not overlap, but *Performances* can Involve *Objects*, which can Perform *Performances* (see [9.2.6.1](#)).

LinkObjects are *Objects* that are also *Links*, and *linkObjects* is the most general Feature typed by *LinkObject*. *LinkObjects* occupy time and space, like other *Objects*, with potentially varying relationships to other things over time, except for which things are its *participants* (the things being linked), identified by its *associationEnd* Features (the "ends" of a link are permanent, though *participants* can be *Occurrences* with changing relationships to other things). The values of *LinkObject* Features that are not *associationEnds* can change over time. *LinkObjects* can exist between the same *Occurrences* for only some of the time those *Occurrences* exist, reflecting changing relationships of those *Occurrences*. *BinaryLinkObjects* are *BinaryLinks* that are also *LinkObjects*, and *binaryLinkObjects* is the most general Feature typed by *BinaryLinkObject*.

Body(s), *Surfaces*, *Curves*, and *Points* are *Objects* with *innerSpaceDimension* of 3, 2, 1, and 0, respectively.

Structured Space Objects

StructuredSpaceObjects are *Objects* with three Features Subsetting *spaceSlices*:

- *faces*, identifying *Surfaces*.
- *edges*, identifying *Curves*.
- *vertices*, identifying *Points*.

The above are collectively *structuredSpaceCells*, which are also *StructuredSpaceObjects*, enabling *faces* to identify *edges* and *vertices* among the *spaceSlices* of their *spaceBoundaries*, if any, and *edges* to identify *vertices* among theirs. Cells of closed *StructuredSpaceObjects* (*isClosed*=true) must be *JustOutside* others along their entire *spaceBoundary* (every cell's *spaceSlices* must *MateWith* some *spaceSlice* of another cell, see Space Boundaries and Interiors in [9.2.4.1](#)), which usually means all the *edges* and *vertices* of cells *MateWith* those of other cells, enabling the *StructuredSpaceObject* to be the *spaceBoundary* for other *Objects*. The *innerSpaceDimension* of a *StructuredSpaceObject* is the highest *innerSpaceDimension* of its *structuredSpaceCells*.

Models can specialize the three Features above for various kinds of *Objects*, for example, one for cylinders would include:

- Three Features Subsetting *faces* for the top, bottom, and middle *Surfaces* of a cylinder. The *edges* of these Features are *Curves* (circles) that are *spaceBoundaries* of the top and bottom *Surfaces* (discs), and *spaceSlices* of the *spaceBoundary* of the middle *Surface* (a rectangle joined at two opposite sides).
- Two Features Subsetting *edges* for the top and bottom of the cylinder. Each Feature identifies two *Curves* that are the *edges* of adjacent *faces*, specified by *BindingConnectors* between the Feature and required *edges*. These two *Curves* must mate, specified by a *MateWith* Connector between the Feature and itself.
- A Feature redefining *vertices* to multiplicity 0.

9.2.5.2 Elements

9.2.5.2.1 BinaryLinkObject

Element

AssociationStructure

Description

General Types

LinkObject

BinaryLink

Features

source : Anything [0..*]

target : Anything [0..*]

Constraints

None.

9.2.5.2.2 binaryLinkObjects

Element

Feature

Description

General Types

linkObjects

BinaryLinkObject

binaryLinks

Features

[no name] : Anything

[no name] : Anything

Constraints

None.

9.2.5.2.3 Body

Element

Structure

Description

Objects of `innerSpaceDimension 3`.

General Types

Object

Features

`innerSpaceDimension : Integer {redefines innerSpaceDimension}`

`volume`

Constraints

None.

9.2.5.2.4 Curve

Element

Structure

Description

Objects of `innerSpaceDimension 1`.

General Types

Object

Features

`innerSpaceDimension : Integer {redefines innerSpaceDimension}`

Constraints

None.

9.2.5.2.5 LinkObject

Element

AssociationStructure

Description

LinkObject is the most general AssociationStructure (M1 instance of M2 AssociationStructure). All other AssociationStructures (in libraries or user models) specialize it (directly or indirectly).

General Types

Object
Link

Features

None.

Constraints

None.

9.2.5.2.6 linkObjects

Element

Feature

Description

linkObjects is a specialization of links and objects restricted to type LinkObject. It is the most general feature typed by LinkObject. All other Features typed by LinkObject or its specializations (in libraries or user models) specialize it (directly or indirectly).

General Types

LinkObject
links
objects

Features

None.

Constraints

None.

9.2.5.2.7 Object

Element

Structure

Description

An *Object* is an *Occurrence* that is not a *Performance*. It is the most general *Structure*. All other *Structures* specialize it directly or indirectly.

General Types

Occurrence

Features

enactedPerformances : Performance [0..*] {subsets timeEnclosedOccurrences, involvingPerformances}

Performances that are enacted by this object.

involvingPerformances : Performance [0..*]

Performances in which this Object is involved.

ownedPerformances : Performance [0..*] {subsets timeEnclosedOccurrences, involvingPerformances, suboccurrences}

Performances that are owned by this Object. The owning Object is the default this reference for all ownedPerformances.

structuredSpaceBoundary : StructuredSpaceObject [0..1] {subsets spaceBoundary}

A spaceBoundary that is a StructuredSpaceObject.

subobjects : Object [0..*] {subsets suboccurrences}

The suboccurrences of this Object that are also Objects.

Constraints

None.

9.2.5.2.8 objects

Element

Feature

Description

objects is a specialization of occurrences restricted to type Object. It is the most general feature typed by Object. All other Features typed by Object or its specializations (in libraries or user models) specialize it (directly or indirectly).

General Types

occurrences

Object

Features

None.

Constraints

None.

9.2.5.2.9 Point

Element

Structure

Description

Objects of `innerSpaceDimension 0`.

General Types

Object

Features

`innerSpaceDimension` : Integer {redefines `innerSpaceDimension`}

Constraints

None.

9.2.5.2.10 StructuredSpaceObject

Element

Structure

Description

Objects that are broken up into smaller `structuredSpaceCells` of the same or lower `innerSpaceDimension`: faces of `innerSpaceDimension 2`, edges of `innerSpaceDimension 1`, and vertices of `innerSpaceDimension 0`, with the highest of these being the `innerSpaceDimension` of the `StructuredSpaceObject`. Boundaries of `structuredSpaceObjectCells` are the union of others of lower `innerSpaceDimension` (edges and vertices on the boundary of faces, and vertices on the boundary of edges), some of which meet when this `StructuredSpaceObject` is `isClosed` (faces meet at their edges and/or vertices, while edges meet at their vertices), as required to be a `spaceBoundary` of an `Object` .

General Types

Object

Features

`cellOrientation` : Integer [0..1]

A nested feature of `structuredSpaceObjectCell` that gives them a "direction" (1 or -1) or none (0). For example, the `cellOrientation` of a face indicates to which side the "positive" normal vector points, of an edge the positive direction along the edge, and of a vertex the positive direction "in or out" of it. When the `cellOrientation` of all edges and vertices are given, and the `StructuredSpaceObject` is `isClosed`, the `cellOrientations` of the (completely) overlapping ones sum to zero.

`edges` : Curve [0..*] {subsets `structuredSpaceObjectCells`, ordered}

The `structuredSpaceObjectCells` of `innerSpaceDimension 1` in this `StructuredSpaceObject`.

`faces : Surface [0..*]` {subsets `structuredSpaceObjectCells`, ordered}

The `structuredSpaceObjectCells` of `innerSpaceDimension 2` in this `StructuredSpaceObject`.

`/innerSpaceDimension : Integer` {redefines `innerSpaceDimension`}

Highest `innerSpaceDimension` of the `structuredSpaceObjectCells`.

`structuredSpaceObjectCells : StructuredSpaceObject [1..*]` {subsets `spaceSlices`}

All and only the `spaceSlices` of this `StructuredSpaceObject` that are its `faces`, `edges`, and `vertices`.

`vertices : Point [0..*]` {subsets `structuredSpaceObjectCells`, ordered}

The `structuredSpaceObjectCells` of `innerSpaceDimension 0` in this `StructuredSpaceObject`.

Constraints

None.

9.2.5.2.11 Surface

Element

Structure

Description

Objects of `innerSpaceDimension 2`.

General Types

Object

Features

`genus : Integer [0..1]`

The number of "holes" in this `Surface`, assuming it `isClosed`. For example, it is 0 for spheres and 1 for toruses, including one-handled coffee cups.

`innerSpaceDimension : Integer` {redefines `innerSpaceDimension`}

Constraints

None.

9.2.6 Performances

9.2.6.1 Performances Overview

Performances

Performances are *Occurrences* that can be spread out in disconnected portions of space and time. *Performance* is the most general Behavior, while *performances* is the most general Feature typed by Behaviors (see [Clause](#) and compare to *Objects* in [9.2.5.1](#)). *Performances* can coordinate others that *HappenDuring* them, identified as their *subperformances* (see Steps in [Clause](#)). *Performances* also coordinate and potentially affect other things, some of which might come into existence (start, be "created") or cease to exist (end, be "destroyed") during a Performance, and some that might be used without being affected at all ("catalysts"). Some of these other things might be *Objects*, identified as a *Performance's* *involvedObjects*, some of which might be "responsible" for (enact, *Perform*) a *Performance*, identified as its *performers*. *Performances* can also accept things as input or provide them as output (see Parameters paragraph in [Clause](#)).

Evaluations

Evaluations are *Performances* that produce at most one thing (value) identified by their *result* parameter. *Evaluation* is the most general Function, while *evaluations* is the most general Feature identifying them, typed by Functions (see [Clause](#)). In other respects *Evaluations* are like any other *Performance*.

LiteralEvaluations are *Evaluations* with exactly one *result*, specified as a constant in a model via classification by *LiteralExpression* (see [Clause](#) for this and the rest of the paragraph). *LiteralEvaluation* is the most general *LiteralExpression*, specialized in the same way, and *literalEvaluations* is the most general feature identifying them, also similarly specialized.

BooleanEvaluations are *Evaluations* (but not *LiteralEvaluations*) with exactly one *true* or *false* *result*. *BooleanEvaluation* is the most general Predicate, and *booleanEvaluations* is the most general feature identifying them, specialized (incompletely) into those that always have *true* or always *false* *results*, *trueEvaluations* and *falseEvaluations*, respectively. *LiteralBooleanEvaluations* are *LiteralEvaluations* and *BooleanEvaluations*, with *result* specified in a model, potentially identified by *trueEvaluations* or *falseEvaluations*, or one of their specializations.

NullEvaluations are *Evaluations* that produce no values for their *result*. *NullEvaluation* is the most general *NullExpression*, and *nullEvaluations* is the most general Feature typed by *NullExpression* (see [Clause](#)).

9.2.6.2 Elements

9.2.6.2.1 BooleanEvaluation

Element

Predicate

Description

BooleanEvaluation is a specialization of *Evaluation* that is the most general predicate that may be evaluated to produce a Boolean truth value.

General Types

Evaluation

Features

result : Boolean {redefines result}

The Boolean result of this BooleanExpression.

Constraints

None.

9.2.6.2.2 booleanEvaluations

Element

BooleanExpression

Description

`booleanEvaluations` is a specialization of `evaluations` restricted to type `BooleanEvaluation`.

General Types

BooleanEvaluation
evaluations

Features

None.

Constraints

None.

9.2.6.2.3 Evaluation

Element

Function

Description

An Evaluation is a Performance that ends with the production of a result.

General Types

Performance

Features

`result` : Anything [0..*] {nonunique}

The `result` is the outcome of the Evaluation.

Constraints

None.

9.2.6.2.4 evaluations

Element

Expression

Description

`evaluations` is a specialization of `performances` for Evaluations of functions.

General Types

`performances`
`Evaluation`

Features

None.

Constraints

None.

9.2.6.2.5 falseEvaluations

Element

`BooleanExpression`

Description

`booleanEvaluations` is a specialization of `evaluations` restricted to type `BooleanEvaluation`.

General Types

`booleanEvaluations`

Features

[no name] : `LiteralEvaluation`

Constraints

None.

9.2.6.2.6 Involves

Element

Association

Description

Involves classifies relationships between Performances and Objects.

General Types

None.

Features

None.

Constraints

None.

9.2.6.2.7 LiteralEvaluation**Element**

Function

Description

LiteralEvaluation is a specialization of Evaluation for the case of LiteralExpressions.

General Types

Evaluation

Features

result : DataValue {redefines result}

The result of this LiteralEvaluation, which is always a single DataValue.

Constraints

None.

9.2.6.2.8 literalEvaluations**Element**

Expression

Description

literalEvaluations is a specialization of evaluations restricted to type LiteralEvaluation.

General Types

LiteralEvaluation
evaluations

Features

None.

Constraints

None.

9.2.6.2.9 NullEvaluation

Element

Function

Description

NullEvaluation is a specialization of Evaluation for the case of null expressions.

General Types

Evaluation

Features

result : Anything {redefines result}

The result of this NullEvaluation, which always must be empty (i.e., "null").

Constraints

None.

9.2.6.2.10 nullEvaluations

Element

Expression

Description

evaluations is a specialization of performances for Evaluations of functions.

General Types

NullEvaluation
evaluations

Features

None.

Constraints

None.

9.2.6.2.11 Performance

Element

Behavior

Description

A *Performance* is an *Occurrence* that is not a *Object*. It is the most general *Behavior*. All other *Behaviors* specialize it directly or indirectly.

General Types

Occurrence

Features

enclosedPerformances : Performance [0..*] {subsets timeEnclosedOccurrences}

timeEnclosedOccurrences of this Performance that are also Performances.

involvedObjects : Object [0..*]

Objects that are involved in this Performance.

performers : Object [0..*] {subsets involvedObjects}

Objects that enact this performance.

subperformances : Performance [0..*] {subsets enclosedPerformances, suboccurrences}

enclosedPerformances that are composite. The default *this* context of a subperformance is by default the same as that of its owning Performance. This means that the context for any Performance that is in a composition tree rooted in a Performance that is not itself owned by an Object is the root Performance. If the root Performance is an *ownedPerformance* of an Object, then that Object is the context.

thisPerformance : Performance

The "context" Performance during which this Performance takes place. It defaults to the root of the *subperformances* composition tree.

Constraints

None.

9.2.6.2.12 performances

Element

Step

Description

performances is the most general feature for Performances of behaviors.

General Types

Performance
things

Features

None.

Constraints

None.

9.2.6.2.13 Performs**Element**

Association

Description

Performs is a specialization of Involves that asserts that the `performer` enacts the behavior carried out by the `enactedPerformance`.

General Types

Involves

Features

None.

Constraints

None.

9.2.6.2.14 trueEvaluations**Element**

BooleanExpression

Description

`booleanEvaluations` is a specialization of `evaluations` restricted to type `BooleanEvaluation`.

General Types

`booleanEvaluations`

Features

[no name] : `LiteralEvaluation`

Constraints

None.

9.2.7 Transfers

9.2.7.1 Transfers Overview

Transfers are *Performances* that are also *BinaryLinks*, defined to ensure the things provided by their *source Occurrence* (via output Features) are accepted by their *target Occurrence* (via input Features, see Feature Direction in [Clause](#)). They do this by specifying the existence of *Links* between their *source / target Occurrence* and values of the output / input Features of those *Occurrences*, as identified by *sourceOutputLink* and *targetOutputLink*, respectively. These two Connectors are typed by *BinaryLink*, and can be redefined to more specialized associations when *Transfer* is reused in models. The outputs of the *source Occurrence* (the things being "transferred") are identified as the *transferPayload* of *sourceOutputLinks* at the time a *Transfer* starts, also identified as the *sourceOutput* of the *Transfer source*, and as the *Transfer items*. The inputs of the *target Occurrence* (the things being "dropped of") are identified as the *transferPayload* of *targetInputLinks* at the time a *Transfer* ends, also identified as the *targetOutput* of the *Transfer target*, and as the *Transfer items*. Which things are being transferred does not change during a *Transfer*.

Three Boolean Features of *Transfers* affect their timing and of their *sourceOutputLinks* and *targetOutputLinks*:

- *isMove*: When true, the *sourceOutputLinks* end (cease to exist) when the *Transfer* starts, otherwise the *Transfer* has no effect on the *sourceOutputLinks*.
- *isPush*: When true, the *Transfer* starts when its *sourceOutputLinks* do (begin to exist), otherwise the *Transfer* can start anytime after the *sourceOutputLinks* do.
- *isInstant*: When true, the *Transfer* takes zero time (its *startShot* and *endShot* are the same, see Portions and Time Slices in [9.2.4.1](#)).

Transfer and its specializations are binary Interactions, while *transfers* is the most general Feature typed by *Transfer* or its specializations, and the most general ItemFlow (see [Clause](#)). *Transfer* is not the most general binary Interaction, and *transfers* is not the most general feature typed by binary Interactions, because binary Interactions can specify more than one *Transfer*.

ItemFlow *sourceOutputFeatures* and *targetInputFeatures* specify which Features of its connected Feature *Occurrences* identify outputs and inputs, respectively (most generally *sourceOutput* and *targetInput* above, respectively), as well as the kind of outputs and inputs, as its *itemType* (most generally the type of *item*, above).

9.2.7.2 Elements

9.2.7.2.1 AcceptPerformance

Element

Behavior

Description

AcceptPerformances are Performances that require an *incomingTransferToSelf* of a designated receiver Occurrence (defaulting to *this*), providing its *item* as output.

General Types

Performance

Features

acceptedItem : Anything [0..*]

acceptedTransfer : MessageTransfer [0..1] {subsets receiver.incomingTransfersToSelf}

receiver : Occurrence

receiver.incomingTransfersToSelf : Transfer [0..*]

Constraints

None.

9.2.7.2.2 FlowTransfer

Element

Interaction

Description

A FlowTransfer is a Transfer identifying an output feature of the source from which to pick up items and an input feature of the target to drop them off. They can start when items are available at the source and move or copy them to the target.

General Types

Transfer

Features

[no name] : Occurrence

[no name] : Occurrence

isMove : Boolean

isPush : Boolean

sourceOutputLink : BinaryLinkObject [1..*]

targetInputLink : BinaryLinkObject [1..*]

Constraints

None.

9.2.7.2.3 SendPerformance

Element

Behavior

Description

SendPerformances are Performances that require an outgoingTransferFromSelf from a designated sender Occurrence (defaulting to this), carrying a given item, optionally to a designated receiver.

General Types

Performance

Features

receiver : Occurrence [0..1]

receiver.incomingTransfersToSelf : Transfer [0..*]

sender : Occurrence

sender.outgoingTransfersToSelf : Transfer [0..*]

sentItem : Anything [0..*]

sentTransfer : MessageTransfer {subsets sender.outgoingTransfersToSelf}

Constraints

None.

9.2.7.2.4 Transfer

Element

Interaction

Description

General Types

Performance

BinaryLink

Features

isInstant : Boolean

item : Anything [1..*]

self : Transfer {redefines self}

source : Occurrence {redefines source}

sourceSendShot : Occurrence

target : Occurrence {redefines target}

targetReceiveShot : Occurrence

toTransferSources : Occurrence [0..*] {subsets toSources}

toTransferTargets : Occurrence [0..*] {subsets toTargets}

Occurrences whose input is the target of a Transfer of items from this Occurrence.

Constraints

None.

9.2.7.2.5 TransferBefore

Element

Interaction

Description

A MessageTransfer is a Transfer that does not specify where items are picked up and dropped off (see FlowTransfer). They are sent by SendPerformances and accepted by AcceptPerformances.

General Types

Transfer
HappensBefore

Features

source : Occurrence {redefines earlierOccurrence, source}

target : Occurrence {redefines laterOccurrence, target}

toTransferSources : Occurrence [0..*] {redefines predecessors, toTransferSources}

toTransferTargets : Occurrence [0..*] {redefines toTransferTargets, successors}

Occurrences whose input is the target of a TransferBefore of items from this Occurrence.

Constraints

None.

9.2.7.2.6 transfers

Element

Feature

Description

General Types

Transfer

Features

[no name] : Occurrence

[no name] : Occurrence

Constraints

None.

9.2.7.2.7 transfersBefore

Element

Feature

Description

General Types

TransferBefore
transfers

Features

[no name] : Occurrence

[no name] : Occurrence

Constraints

None.

9.2.8 Feature Referencing Performances

9.2.8.1 Feature Referencing Performances Overview

The *FeatureReferencingPerformances* package defines Behaviors used to read and write values of a referenced Feature of an Occurrence as of the time the Performance of the Behavior ends.

9.2.8.2 Elements

9.2.8.2.1 BooleanEvaluationResultMonitorPerformance

Element

Description

A BooleanEvaluationResultMonitorPerformance is a EvaluationResultMonitorPerformance that waits for changes in the `result` of a BooleanEvaluation identified by `onOccurrence`.

General Types

EvaluationResultMonitorPerformance

Features

afterValues : Boolean {redefines afterValues}

beforeValues : Boolean {redefines beforeValues}

monitoredOccurrence : BooleanEvaluation {subsets timeSlices, redefines monitoredOccurrence}

A `timeSlice` of `onOccurrence` during which its values for `result` change.

`onOccurrence` : `BooleanEvaluation` {redefines `onOccurrence`}

The `BooleanEvaluation` being monitored for changes in its `result` values.

`result` : `Boolean` {redefines `result`, nonunique}

Redefines `BooleanEvaluation::result` and `monitoredFeature`.

Constraints

None.

9.2.8.2.2 BooleanEvaluationResultToMonitorPerformance

Element

Description

A `BooleanEvaluationResultToMonitorPerformance` is a `FeatureReferencingPerformance` that waits for the `result` of a `BooleanEvaluation` (identified by `onOccurrence`) to change to either true or false, as indicated by `isToTrue` (defaulting to true). If the `result` is already true (or false), the performance waits for the `result` to become false (or true) before waiting again for it to change back.

General Types

`FeatureReferencingPerformance`

Features

`afterValues` : `Boolean` {redefines `values`, nonunique}

The values of `monitoredFeature` for `onOccurrence` immediately after they change. Always the same as `isToTrue`.

`endWhen` : `HappensJustBefore`

See `FeatureMonitorPerformance::endWhen`. It is restricted to `HappensJustBefore` in `monitor1` and `monitor2`.

`isToTrue` : `Boolean`

`monitor1` : `BooleanEvaluationResultMonitorPerformance`

Waits for the `result` of `onOccurrence` to change.

`monitor2` : `BooleanEvaluationResultMonitorPerformance` [0..1]

Waits for the `result` of `onOccurrence` to change again, only if the change detected by `monitor1` was not the same as `isToTrue`.

`onOccurrence` : `BooleanEvaluation` {redefines `onOccurrence`}

The `BooleanEvaluation` being monitored for changes in its `result` values.

Constraints

bertmpMonitor1ElseMonitor2

[no documentation]

```
isEmpty(monitor2) == (monitor1.afterValues == isToTrue)
```

9.2.8.2.3 EvaluationResultMonitorPerformance

Element

Behavior

Description

An EvaluationResultMonitorPerformance is a FeatureMonitorPerformance that waits for changes in `result` of an Evaluation identified by `onOccurrence`. The Predicate being evaluated must be able to produce multiple `results` over time, for example by only using Binding (SelfLink) Connectors between Steps, rather than Successions or ItemFlows, including in its Step behaviors.

General Types

FeatureMonitorPerformance

Features

`monitoredOccurrence` : Evaluation {subsets `timeSlices`, redefines `monitoredOccurrence`}

A `timeSlice` of `onOccurrence` during which its values for `result` change.

`onOccurrence` : Evaluation {redefines `onOccurrence`}

The Evaluation being monitored for changes in its `result` values.

`result` : Anything [0..*] {redefines `monitoredFeature`, nonunique}

Redefines Evaluation::`result` and `monitoredFeature`.

Constraints

None.

9.2.8.2.4 FeatureAccessPerformance

Element

Behavior

Description

A FeatureAccessPerformance is a FeatureReferencingPerformance where `values` are all the values of `accessedFeature` for `onOccurrence` at the time the Performance ends. Specializations or usages of this narrow `accessedFeature` to particular features.

General Types

FeatureReferencingPerformance

Features

accessedFeature : Anything [0..*] {nonunique}

Feature of onOccurrence that has values at the time this FeatureAccessPerformance ends.

startingAt : Occurrence {subsets timeSlices}

A timeslice of onOccurrence that starts when this FeatureAccessPerformance ends.

Constraints

None.

9.2.8.2.5 FeatureMonitorPerformance

Element

Behavior

Description

A FeatureMonitorPerformance is a FeatureReferencingPerformance that waits for values of monitoredFeature to change on onOccurrence from what they were when the performance started. The values before and after the change are given by beforeValues and afterValues

General Types

FeatureReferencingPerformance

Features

afterSnapshot : Occurrence {subsets snapshots}

A snapshot of monitoredOccurrence just after its values for monitoredFeature change.

afterValues : Anything [0..*] {redefines values}

The values of monitoredFeature for monitoredOccurrence immediately after they change

beforeTimeSlice : Occurrence {subsets timeSlices}

A timeSlice of monitoredOccurrence, starting at the same time, and ending just before its values for monitoredFeature change.

beforeValues : Anything [0..*]

The values of monitoredFeature for monitoredOccurrence before any change

endWhen : HappensBefore

Succession (Connector typed by HappensBefore) from `afterSnapshot` to the `endShot` of this `FeatureMonitorPerformance`. Can be specialized to specify how soon the performance should end after the change in `monitoredFeature`.

`monitoredFeature` : Anything [0..*] {nonunique}

The Feature being monitored for changes in values on `monitoredOccurrence`.

`monitoredOccurrence` : Occurrence {subsets timeSlices}

A `timeSlice` of `onOccurrence`, starting when this `FeatureMonitorPerformance` starts, during which the values of `monitoredFeature` change.

Constraints

`fmpBeforeAfterValuesNotSame`

[no documentation]

`not beforeValues == afterValues`

9.2.8.2.6 FeatureReadEvaluation

Element

Function

Description

A `FeatureReadEvaluation` is a `FeatureAccessPerformance` that is a Function providing as its result the values of `accessedFeature` of `onOccurrence` at the time the evaluation ends.

General Types

Evaluation

`FeatureAccessPerformance`

Features

`result` : Anything [0..*] {redefines result, values, nonunique}

Values of the Feature being accessed, as an `out` parameter.

Constraints

None.

9.2.8.2.7 FeatureReferencingPerformance

Element

Behavior

Description

A `FeatureReferencingPerformance` is a `Performance` generalizing other Behaviors relating to `values` of a `Feature` of `onOccurrence`, as specified in the specialized Behaviors.

General Types

`Performance`

Features

`onOccurrence` : `Occurrence`

An `Occurrence` that has `values` for a `Feature` determined in specializations of this behavior.

`values` : `Anything` `[0..*]` {nonunique}

Values of a `Feature` of `onOccurrence`, determined in specializations of this Behavior.

Constraints

None.

9.2.8.2.8 FeatureWritePerformance

Element

`Behavior`

Description

A `FeatureWritePerformance` is a `FeatureAccessPerformance` that ensures the values of `onOccurrence` are exactly the `replacementValues` at the time the performance ends.

General Types

`FeatureAccessPerformance`

Features

`replacementValues` : `Anything` `[0..*]` {redefines values, nonunique}

Values of the `Feature` being accessed, as an `inout` parameter to replace all the values.

Constraints

None.

9.2.9 Control Performances

9.2.9.1 Control Performances Overview

The *ControlPerformances* package defines Behaviors used to type Steps that control the sequencing of performance of other Steps, including the following.

DecisionPerformances are *Performances* used by ("decision") Steps to ensure that each *DecisionPerformance* (value) of the Step is the *earlierOccurrence* of exactly one *HappensBefore* link of the Successions going out of the Step. Successions going out of steps typed by *DecisionPerformance* or its specializations must:

- have connector end multiplicities of 1 towards the Step, and 0..1 away from it.
- subset a Feature of its *featuringBehavior* derived as a chain of the Step and *DecisionPerformance::outgoingHBLink* (see Feature Chaining in [Clause](#)).

MergePerformances are *Performances* used by ("merge") Steps to ensure that each *MergePerformance* (value) of the Step is the *laterOccurrence* of exactly one *HappensBefore* link of the Successions coming into the step. Successions coming into steps typed by *MergePerformance* or its specializations must:

- have connector end multiplicities of 1 towards the Step, and 0..1 away from it.
- subset a Feature of its *featuringBehavior* derived as a chain of the Step and *MergePerformance::incomingHBLink*.

IfPerformances are *Performances* that determine whether one or more clauses occur based on the value of a Boolean argument. The concrete specializations of *IfPerformance* are *IfThenPerformance*, *IfElsePerformance* and *IfThenElsePerformance*.

LoopPerformances are *Performances* that whose body occurs iteratively as determined by Boolean "while" and "until" conditions.

9.2.9.2 Elements

9.2.9.2.1 DecisionPerformance

Element

Behavior

Description

A *DecisionPerformance* is a *Performance* that represents the selection of one of the Successions that have the *DecisionPerformance* behavior as their source. All such Successions must subset the *outgoingHBLink* feature of the source *DecisionPerformance*. For each instance of *DecisionPerformance*, the *outgoingHBLink* is an instance of exactly one of the Successions, ordering the *DecisionPerformance* as happening before an instance of the target of that Succession.

General Types

Performance

Features

outgoingHBLink : *HappensBefore*

Constraints

None.

9.2.9.2.2 IfElsePerformance

Element

Behavior

Description

An IfElsePerformance is an IfPerformance where `else` occurs after and only after the `ifTest` Evaluation `result` is not true.

General Types

IfPerformance

Features

`elseClause` : Occurrence [0..1]

Constraints

None.

9.2.9.2.3 IfPerformance

Element

Behavior

Description

An IfPerformance is a Performance that determines whether the `if` Evaluation `result` is true (by whether the `ifTrue` connector has a value).

General Types

Performance

Features

`ifTest` : BooleanEvaluation

`trueLiteral` : LiteralEvaluation

Constraints

None.

9.2.9.2.4 IfThenElsePerformance

Element

Behavior

Description

An IfThenElsePerformance is an IfThenPerformance and an IfElsePerformance.

General Types

IfElsePerformance
IfThenPerformance

Features

None.

Constraints

None.

9.2.9.2.5 IfThenPerformance

Element

Behavior

Description

An IfThenPerformance is an IfPerformance where `then` occurs after and only after the `if` Evaluation result is true.

General Types

IfPerformance

Features

`thenClause` : Occurrence [0..1]

Constraints

None.

9.2.9.2.6 LoopPerformance

Element

Behavior

Description

A LoopPerformance is a Performance where `body` occurs repeatedly in sequence (iterates) as long as the `while` evaluation result is true before each iteration (and after the previous one, except the first time) and the `until` evaluation result is not true after each iteration and before the next one (except the last one).

General Types

Performance

Features

`body` : Occurrence [0..*]

`untilDecision` : IfElsePerformance [0..*]

untilTest : BooleanEvaluation [0..*]

whileDecision : IfThenPerformance [1..*]

whileTest : BooleanEvaluation [1..*]

Constraints

None.

9.2.9.2.7 MergePerformance

Element

Behavior

Description

A MergePerformance is a Performance that represents the merging of all Successions that target the MergePerformance behavior. All such Successions must subset the `incomingHBLink` feature of the target MergePerformance. For each instance of MergePerformance, the `incomingHBLink` is an instance of exactly one of the Successions, ordering the MergePerformance as happening after an instance of the source of that Succession.

General Types

Performance

Features

incomingHBLink : HappensBefore

Constraints

None.

9.2.10 State Performances

9.2.10.1 State Performances Overview

The *StatePerformance* package contains a library model of the semantics of state-based behavior, including *StatePerformances* and *StateTransitionPerformances*.

StatePerformances are *DecisionPerformances* (see [9.2.9.1](#)) that

- only have Steps defined in this library, or specialized from them.
- can identify *Transfers* that happen before the last *Performance* of the above Steps (see *exit* below).

Usages of *StatePerformance* can specialize the library Steps to specify how they are carried out, as well as specify how the *Transfer* above is identified. Additional modeler-defined Steps must subset the *middle* of the library Steps:

- *entry* [1]: happens before all *Performances* of *middle*.
- *middle* [1..*]: happen during the *Performance* of *do*.
- *do* [1]: one of the *Performances* of *middle* that starts before the others and ends after them.
- *exit* [1]: happens after all *Performances* of *middle* and the end of the *Transfers* identified by the *StatePerformance* (see *accepted* below).

StatePerformances identify *Transfers* that happen before the *Performance* of *exit*, as specified by usages of *StatePerformance* by redefining these library Steps:

- *acceptable* [*]: candidates for being identified as *accepted*.
- *accepted* [0..1]: one of the *acceptable* transfers. This must have a value if *acceptable* does.

If *isTriggerDuring* is *true* then *accepted* must end during the *StatePerformance*. If *isAcceptFirst* is *true*, *accepted* must end before the other *acceptable* ones.

Steps typed by *StatePerformances* can

- be *steps* of any Behavior (not only "state machines")
- employ any method of identifying *Transfers* needed to start ("trigger") their *exit*, including none at all, as well as requiring their *targets* to be, for example, the *StatePerformance* itself, or a *Performance* it is a *subperformance* of, or an *Object* enacts that *Performance*.
- have outgoing Successions constrained to have values (*HappensBefore* links) or not based on their *earlierOccurrences* (a *StatePerformance* of the step) and other conditions.
- be used in conjunction with other Steps typed by *TransitionPerformances* (see [9.2.11.1](#)) to determine which Succession going out of a Step "is chosen" (has a *HappenBeforeLink* value with a *StatePerformance* of that Step as its *earlierOccurrence*).

StateTransitionPerformances are *TransitionPerformances* (see [9.2.11.1](#)) that have a *StatePerformance* as their *transitionLinkSource*. *StateTransitionPerformance*

- *triggers* subset the *accepted Transfers* of its *transitionLinkSource*. If its *isTriggerDuring* is *true*, *triggers* must end during its *transitionLinkSource*.
- *guards* happen after the *middle* Step of its *transitionLinkSource* and before the *exit* Step.

9.2.10.2 Elements

9.2.10.2.1 StatePerformance

Element

Behavior

Description

General Types

DecisionPerformance

Features

acceptable : MessageTransfer [0..*] {union}

accepted : MessageTransfer [0..1] {subsets acceptable}

deferrable : MessageTransfer [0..*] {subsets acceptable}

do : Performance {subsets middle}

entry : Performance {subsets timeEnclosedOccurrences}

exit : Performance {subsets timeEnclosedOccurrences}

isTriggerDuring : Boolean

/middle : Performance [1..*] {subsets timeEnclosedOccurrences, union}

/nonDoMiddle : Performance [0..*] {subsets middle}

Constraints

None.

9.2.10.2.2 StateTransitionPerformance

Element

Behavior

Description

General Types

TransitionPerformance

Features

acceptable : MessageTransfer [0..*] {subsets triggerTarget.incomingTransfersToSelf, transitionLinkSource.acceptable}

isTriggerDuring : Boolean

transitionLinkSource : StatePerformance {redefines transitionLinkSource}

transitionLinkSource.acceptable : MessageTransfer [0..*]

transitionLinkSource.accepted : MessageTransfer [0..1]

trigger : MessageTransfer [0..1] {subsets acceptable, transitionLinkSource.accepted, redefines trigger}

triggerTarget.incomingTransfersToSelf : Transfer [0..*]

Constraints

None.

9.2.11 Transition Performances

9.2.11.1 Transition Performances Overview

The *TransitionPerformances* package contains a library model of the semantics of conditional transitions between *Occurrences*, including the performance of specified Behaviors when the transition occurs.

TransitionPerformances are *Performances* used to

- determine whether a Succession going out of an *Occurrence* Feature (Succession::sourceFeature) has values (*HappensBefore* links), based on values of sourceFeature (*Occurrences*) and other conditions, including ending of *Transfers*.

- perform specified Behaviors for each value of the Succession above.

The Succession constrained by a *TransitionPerformance* is specified by a Connector between the Succession and its *transitionStep* (see Successions in [Clause](#)), a unique Step typed by *TransitionPerformance* or a specialization of it, of the same Behavior as the Succession. This connector is

- typed by an Association defined to give a value to the *transitionLink* of *TransitionPerformances*,
- has connector end multiplicity 0.1 on the Succession end and 1 on the *TransitionPerformance* Step end.

The connector end multiplicities above ensure every *HappensBefore* link of the Succession is paired with a unique *TransitionPerformance* that has its conditions satisfied for that *Link*, while all the other *TransitionPerformances* of *transitionStep* fail their conditions and have no values for *transitionLink*.

The *transitionStep* above is also connected to the Succession's *sourceFeature*, because conditions on the Succession depend on each *Occurrence* of its *sourceFeature* separately, which *TransitionPerformances* identify as their *transitionLinkSource*. This connector is

- typed by an Association defined to give a value to the *transitionLinkSource* of *TransitionPerformances*.
- with connector end multiplicity 1 on both ends.

The connector end multiplicities above ensure every *Occurrence* of the Succession's *sourceFeature* is paired with a unique *TransitionPerformance*, and vice-versa, that determines whether the Succession has a value (*HappensBefore* link) for that *Occurrence*.

TransitionPerformances with a *transitionLink* must satisfy these conditions:

- identify at least one *Transfer* as *trigger*.
- all *Transfers* identified by *trigger* must happen before all *Evaluations* identified by *guard*.
- all *Evaluations* identified by *guard* must have *result* value *true*.

The *effect* of a *TransitionPerformance* can have values (*Performances*) only if the above conditions hold. The *effect Performances* must happen after the *guards* and before the *laterOccurrence* of *transitionLink*.

Usages of (Steps typed by) *TransitionPerformance* or its specializations can redefine or subset *guard* and *effect* to specify how they are carried out, as well as specify how *triggers* are identified. These usages can

- be steps of any Behavior (not only "state machines"), as well as constrain Successions going out of any kind of Step (not only those identifying *StatePerformances*, see [9.2.10.1](#)).
- employ any method of identifying *triggers*, including requiring none at all, as well as constraining *Transfer targets* to be, for example, the *StatePerformance* itself, or a *Performance* it is a *subperformance* of, or an *Object* enacting that *Performance*.

TransitionPerformances are either *StateTransitionPerformances* or *NonStateTransitionPerformances*, depending on whether the *transitionLinkSource* is a *StatePerformance* or not. Both ensure *guards* happen before the *laterOccurrence* of *transitionLink*, in case there are no *effects*, but do this in different ways (see [9.2.10.1](#) about *StateTransitionPerformances*).

9.2.11.2 Elements

9.2.11.2.1 NonStateTransitionPerformance

Element

Behavior

Description

General Types

TransitionPerformance

Features

isTriggerAfter : Boolean

Constraints

None.

9.2.11.2.2 TPCGuardConstraint

Element

Association

Description

General Types

BinaryLink

Features

constrainedGuard : Evaluation {redefines target}

constrainedHBLink : HappensBefore {redefines source}

guardedBy : Evaluation [0..*] {redefines toTargets}

guards : HappensBefore [0..1] {redefines toSources}

true : Boolean

Constraints

None.

9.2.11.2.3 TransitionPerformance

Element

Behavior

Description

General Types

Performance

Features

accept : AcceptPerformance [0..1] {subsets enclosedPerformances}

effect : Performance [0..*] {subsets enclosedPerformances}

guard : Evaluation [0..*] {subsets enclosedPerformances}

guardConstraint : TPCGuardConstraint [0..*]

transitionLink : HappensBefore [0..1]

transitionLinkSource : Performance

trigger : MessageTransfer [0..*]

triggerTarget : Occurrence

Constraints

None.

9.2.12 Clocks

9.2.12.1 Clocks Overview

This package models *Clocks* that provide an advancing numerical reference usable for quantifying the time of an *Occurrence*.

9.2.12.2 Elements

9.2.12.2.1 BasicClock

Element

Structure

Description

A *BasicClock* is a *Clock* whose *currentTime* is a *Real* number.

General Types

Clock

Features

currentTime : Real {redefines currentTime}

Constraints

None.

9.2.12.2.2 BasicDurationOf

Element

Function

Description

BasicDurationOf returns the *DurationOf* an *Occurrence* as a *Real* number relative to a *BasicClock*.

General Types

DurationOf

Features

clock : BasicClock {redefines clock}

Default is inherited *Occurrence::localClock*.

duration : Real {redefines duration}

o : Occurrence {redefines o}

Constraints

None.

9.2.12.2.3 BasicTimeOf

Element

Function

Description

BasicTimeOf returns the *TimeOf* an *Occurrence* as a *Real* number relative to a *BasicClock*.

General Types

TimeOf

Features

clock : BasicClock {redefines clock}

Default is inherited *Occurrence::localClock*.

o : Occurrence {redefines o}

timeValue : Real {redefines timeInstant}

Constraints

None.

9.2.12.2.4 Clock

Element

Structure

Description

A *Clock* provides a scalar *currentTime* that advances monotonically over its lifetime. *Clock* is an abstract base Structure that can be specialized for different kinds of time quantification (e.g., discrete time, continuous time, time with units, etc.).

General Types

Object

Features

currentTime : NumericalValue

A numerical time reference that advances over the lifetime of the *Clock*.

Constraints

timeFlowConstraint

The *currentTime* of a snapshot of a *Clock* is equal to the *TimeOf* the snapshot relative to that *Clock*.

9.2.12.2.5 DurationOf

Element

Function

Description

DurationOf returns the duration of a given *Occurrence* relative to a given *Clock*, which is equal to the *TimeOf* the end snapshot of the *Occurrence* minus the *TimeOf* its start snapshot.

General Types

Evaluation

Features

clock : Clock

Default is inherited *Occurrence::localClock*.

duration : NumericalValue

o : Occurrence

Constraints

None.

9.2.12.2.6 TimeOf

Element

Function

Description

TimeOf returns a scalar *timeValue* for a given *Occurrence* relative to a given *Clock*. The *timeValue* is the time of the start of the *Occurrence*, which is considered to be synchronized with the snapshot of the *Clock* with a *currentTimeValue*.

General Types

Evaluation

Features

clock : Clock

Default is inherited *Occurrence::localClock*.

o : Occurrence

timeInstant : NumericalValue

Constraints

timeContinuityConstraint

If one *Occurrence* happens immediately before another, then the *TimeOf* the end snapshot of the first *Occurrence* equals the *TimeOf* the second *Occurrence*.

startTimeConstraint

The *TimeOf* an *Occurrence* is equal to the time of its start snapshot.

timeOrderingConstraint

If one *Occurrence* happens before another, then the *TimeOf* the end snapshot of the first *Occurrence* is no greater than the *TimeOf* the second *Occurrence*.

9.2.12.2.7 universalClock

Element

Feature

Description

universalClock is a single *Clock* that can be used as a default universal time reference.

General Types

Clock

objects

Features

None.

Constraints

None.

9.2.13 Observation

9.2.13.1 Observation Overview

This package models a framework for monitoring *Boolean* conditions and notifying registered observers when they change from false to true.

9.2.13.2 Elements

9.2.13.2.1 CancelObservation

Element

Behavior

Description

Cancel all observations of a given *ChangeSignal* for a given *Occurrence*.

General Types

Performance

Features

observer : Occurrence

signal : ChangeSignal

Constraints

None.

9.2.13.2.2 changeCondition

Element

Expression

Description

General Types

None.

Features

None.

Constraints

None.

9.2.13.2.3 ChangeMonitor

Element

Structure

Description

A *ChangeMonitor* is a collection of ongoing *ChangeSignal* observations for various observer *Occurrences*. It provides convenient operations for starting and canceling the observations it manages.

General Types

Object

Features

cancelObservation : CancelObservation [0..*]

Cancel all observations of a given *ChangeSignal* for a given *Occurrence*.

observations : ObserveChange [0..*]

startObservation : StartObservation [0..*]

Start an observation of a given *ChangeSignal* for a given *Occurrence*.

Constraints

None.

9.2.13.2.4 ChangeSignal

Element

Structure

Description

A *ChangeSignal* is a signal to be sent when the *Boolean* result of its *changeCondition* Expression changes from false to true.

General Types

Object

Features

changeMonitor : ChangeMonitor

The *ChangeMonitor* responsible for monitoring the *signalCondition*.

signalCondition : BooleanEvaluation

A BooleanExpression whose result is being monitored.

Constraints

None.

9.2.13.2.5 defaultMonitor

Element

Feature

Description

defaultMonitor is a single *ChangeMonitor* that can be used as a default.

General Types

ChangeMonitor
objects

Features

None.

Constraints

None.

9.2.13.2.6 ObserveChange

Element

Behavior

Description

Each *Performance* of *ObserveChange* waits for the result of the *Boolean changeCondition* of a given *ChangeSignal* to change from false to true, and, when it does, sends the *ChangeSignal* to a given observer *Occurrence*.

General Types

Performance

Features

changeObserver : Occurrence

changeSignal : ChangeSignal

transfer : TransferBefore [0..1]

After waiting for the condition change (if necessary), then send *changeSignal* to *changeObserver*.

wait : IfThenPerformance

If the result of the *changeSignal.signalCondition* is false, then wait for it to become true:

```
in ifTest { not changeSignal.signalCondition() }
in thenClause : BooleanEvaluationResultToMonitorPerformance {
    in onOccurrence = changeSignal.signalCondition;
}
```

Constraints

None.

9.2.13.2.7 StartObservation

Element

Behavior

Description

Start an observation of a given *ChangeSignal* for a given *Occurrence*.

General Types

Performance

Features

observer : Occurrence

signal : ChangeSignal

Constraints

None.

9.2.14 Triggers

9.2.14.1 Triggers Overview

This package contains functions that return *ChangeSignals* for triggering when a *Boolean* condition changes from false to true, at a specific time or after a specific time delay.

9.2.14.2 Elements

9.2.14.2.1 TimeSignal

Element

Structure

Description

A *TimeSignal* is a *ChangeSignal* whose condition is the *currentTime* of a given *Clock* reaching a specific *signalTime*.

General Types

ChangeSignal

Features

signalClock : Clock

The *Clock* whose *currentTime* is being monitored.

signalCondition : BooleanEvaluation {redefines signalCondition}

The *Boolean* condition of the *currentTime* of the *signalClock* being equal to the *signalTime*.

signalTime : NumericalValue

The time at which the *TimeSignal* should be sent.

Constraints

None.

9.2.14.2.2 TriggerAfter

Element

Function

Description

TriggerAfter returns a monitored *TimeSignal* to be sent to a *receiver* after a certain time *delay* relative to a given *Clock*.

General Types

Evaluation

Features

clock : Clock

The *Clock* to be used as the reference for the time *delay*. The default is the *localClock*, which will be bound when the function is invoked.

delay : NumericalValue

The time duration, relative to the *clock*, after which the *TimeSignal* is sent.

monitor : ChangeMonitor

The *ChangeMonitor* to be used to monitor the *TimeSignal* condition. The default is the *Observation::defaultMonitor*.

receiver : Occurrence

The *Occurrence* to which the *TimeSignal* is to be sent.

signal : TimeSignal

Constraints

None.

9.2.14.2.3 TriggerAt

Element

Function

Description

TriggerAt returns a monitored *TimeSignal* to be sent to a *receiver* when the *currentTime* of a given *Clock* reaches a specific *time*.

General Types

Evaluation

Features

clock : Clock

The *Clock* to be used as the reference for the *timeInstant*. The default is the *localClock*, which will be bound when the function is invoked.

monitor : ChangeMonitor

The *ChangeMonitor* to be used to monitor the *TimeSignal* condition. The default is the *Observation::defaultMonitor*.

receiver : Occurrence

The *Occurrence* to which the *TimeSignal* is to be sent.

signal : TimeSignal

timeInstant : NumericalValue

The time instant, relative to the *clock*, at which the *TimeSignal* should be sent.

Constraints

None.

9.2.14.2.4 TriggerWhen

Element

Function

Description

TriggerWhen returns a monitored *ChangeSignal* for a given *condition*, to be sent to a given *receiver* when the *condition* occurs.

General Types

Evaluation

Features

condition : BooleanEvaluation

The BooleanExpression to be monitored for changing from false to true.

monitor : ChangeMonitor

The *ChangeMonitor* to be used to monitor the *ChangeSignal* condition. The default is the *Observation::defaultMonitor*.

receiver : Occurrence

The *Occurrence* to which the *ChangeSignal* is to be sent.

signal : ChangeSignal

Constraints

None.

9.2.15 SpatialFrames

9.2.15.1 SpatialFrames Overview

This package models spatial frames of reference for quantifying the position of points in a three-dimensional space.

9.2.15.2 Elements

9.2.15.2.1 CartesianCurrentDisplacementOf

Element

Function

Description

The *CurrentDisplacementOf* two Points relative to a *CartesianSpatialFrame* is a *CartesianThreeVectorValue*.

General Types

CurrentDisplacementOf

Features

clock : Clock {redefines clock}

displacementVector : CartesianThreeVectorValue {redefines displacementVector}

frame : CartesianSpatialFrame {redefines frame}

point1 : Point {redefines point1}

point2 : Point {redefines point2}

Constraints

None.

9.2.15.2.2 CartesianCurrentPositionOf

Element

Function

Description

The *CurrentPositionOf* a Point relative to a *CartesianSpatialFrame* is a *CartesianThreeVectorValue*.

General Types

CurrentPositionOf

Features

clock : Clock {redefines clock}

Defaults to the *localClock* of the *frame*.

frame : CartesianSpatialFrame {redefines frame}

point : Point {redefines point}

positionVector : CartesianThreeVectorValue {redefines positionVector}

Constraints

None.

9.2.15.2.3 CartesianDisplacementOf

Element

Function

Description

The *DisplacementOf* two Points relative to a *CartesianSpatialFrame* is a *CartesianThreeVectorValue*.

General Types

DisplacementOf

Features

clock : Clock {redefines clock}

Defaults to the *localClock* of the *frame*.

displacementVector : CartesianThreeVectorValue {redefines displacementVector}

frame : CartesianSpatialFrame {redefines frame}

point1 : Point {redefines point1}

point2 : Point {redefines point2}

time : NumericalValue {redefines time}

Constraints

None.

9.2.15.2.4 CartesianPositionOf

Element

Function

Description

The *PositionOf* a Point relative to a *CartesianSpatialFrame* is a *CartesianThreeVectorValue*.

General Types

PositionOf

Features

clock : Clock {redefines clock}

Defaults to the *localClock* of the *frame*.

frame : CartesianSpatialFrame {redefines frame}

point : Point {redefines point}

positionVector : CartesianThreeVectorValue {redefines positionVector}

time : NumericalValue {redefines time}

Constraints

None.

9.2.15.2.5 CartesianSpatialFrame

Element

Structure

Description

A *CartesianSpatialFrame* is a *SpatialFrame* relative to which all position and displacement vectors can be represented as *CartesianThreeVectorValues*.

General Types

SpatialFrame

Features

None.

Constraints

None.

9.2.15.2.6 CurrentDisplacementOf

Element

Function

Description

The *CurrentDisplacementOf* two *Points* relative to a *SpatialFrame* and *Clock* is the *DisplacementOf* the *Points* relative to the *SpacialFrame* at the *currentTime* of the *Clock*.

General Types

Evaluation

Features

clock : Clock

Defaults to the *localClock* of the *frame*.

displacementVector : ThreeVectorValue

frame : SpatialFrame

point1 : Point

point2 : Point

Constraints

None.

9.2.15.2.7 CurrentPositionOf

Element

Function

Description

The *CurrentPositionOf* a *Point* relative to a *SpatialFrame* and a *Clock* is the *PositionOf* the *Point* relative to the *SpatialFrame* at the *currentTime* of the *Clock*.

General Types

Evaluation

Features

clock : Clock

Defaults to the *localClock* of the *frame*.

frame : SpatialFrame

point : Point

positionVector : ThreeVectorValue

Constraints

None.

9.2.15.2.8 defaultFrame

Element

Feature

Description

defaultFrame is a fixed *SpatialFrame* used as a universal default.

General Types

SpatialFrame

Features

None.

Constraints

None.

9.2.15.2.9 DisplacementOf

Element

Function

Description

The *DisplacementOf* two *Points* relative to a *SpatialFrame*, at a specific *time* relative to a given *Clock*, is the *displacementVector* computed as the difference between the *PositionOf* the first *Point* and *PositionOf* the second *Point*, relative to that *SpatialFrame*, at that *time*.

General Types

Evaluation

Features

clock : Clock

Defaults to the *localClock* of the *frame*.

displacementVector : ThreeVectorValue

frame : SpatialFrame

point1 : Point

point2 : Point

time : NumericalValue

Constraints

zeroDisplacementConstraint

If either *point1* or *point2* occurs within the other, then the *displacementVector* is the zero vector.

```
(point1.spaceTimeEnclosedOccurrences->includes(point2) or  
point2.spaceTimeEnclosedOccurrences->includes(point1)) implies  
  isZeroVector(displacementVector)
```

9.2.15.2.10 PositionOf

Element

Function

Description

The *PositionOf* a *Point* relative to a *SpatialFrame*, at a specific *time* relative to a given *Clock*, as a *positionVector* that is a *ThreeVectorValue*.

General Types

Evaluation

Features

clock : Clock

Defaults to the *localClock* of the *frame*.

frame : SpatialFrame

point : Point

positionVector : ThreeVectorValue

time : NumericalValue

Constraints

positionTimePrecondition

The given *point* must exist at the given *time*.

`TimeOf(point.startShot) <= time and
time <= TimeOf(point.endShot)`

spacePositionConstraint

The result *positionVector* is equal to the *PositionOf* the *Point spaceShot* of the frame that encloses the given *point*, at the given *time*.

```
(frame.spaceShots as Point)->forall{in p : Point;  
  p.spaceTimeEnclosedOccurrences->includes(point) implies  
  positionVector == PositionOf(p, time, frame)  
}
```

9.2.15.2.11 SpatialFrame

Element

Structure

Description

General Types

Body

Features

None.

Constraints

None.

9.2.16 Metaobjects

9.2.16.1 Metaobjects Overview

This package defines Metaclasses and Features that are related to the typing of syntactic and semantic metadata.

9.2.16.2 Elements

9.2.16.2.1 Metaobject

Element

Metaclass

Description

A *Metaobject* contains syntactic or semantic information about one or more *annotatedElements*. It is the most general Metaclass. All other Metaclasses must subclassify it directly or indirectly.

General Types

Object

Features

annotatedElement : Element [1..*]

The Elements annotated by this *Metaobject*. This is set automatically when a *Metaobject* is instantiated as the value of a MetadataFeature.

Constraints

None.

9.2.16.2.2 metaobjects

Element

Feature

Description

metaobjects is a specialization of *objects* restricted to type *Metaobject*. It is the most general MetadataFeature. All other MetadataFeatures must subset it directly or indirectly.

General Types

objects

Metaobject

Features

None.

Constraints

None.

9.2.16.2.3 SemanticMetadata

Element

Metaclass

Description

SemanticMetadata is *Metadata* that requires its single *annotatedType* to directly or indirectly specialize a *baseType* that models the semantics for the *annotatedType*.

General Types

Metaobject

Features

`annotatedElement : Type {redefines annotatedElement}`

The single *annotatedElement* of this *SemanticMetadata*, which must be a *Type*.

`baseType : Type`

The required base *Type* for the *annotatedType*.

Constraints

None.

9.2.17 KerML

This package contains a reflective KerML model of the KerML abstract syntax. It is generated from the normative MOF abstract syntax model (see [8.3](#)) as follows.

1. The *KerML* model contains subpackages for *Root*, *Core*, and *Kernel*, but all elements are also imported into the top-level package, so they can be referenced directly from the *KerML* namespace.
2. A metaclass from the MOF model is mapped into a *Metaclass* in the KerML package.
 - The MOF metaclass name is mapped unchanged.
 - Generalizations of the MOF metaclass are mapped to *ownedSpecializations*.
 - All properties from the MOF metaclass are mapped to *features* of the corresponding KerML *Metaclass* (see below). All non-association-end properties are grouped before association-end properties.
3. A property from the MOF model is mapped into a *Feature*.
 - The following feature properties are set as appropriate:
 - `isAbstract = true` if the MOF property is a derived union
 - `isComposite = true` if the MOF property is composite.
 - `isReadonly = true` if the MOF property is read-only.
 - `isDerived = true` if the MOF property is derived.
 - The MOF property name is mapped unchanged.
 - The MOF property type is mapped to an *ownedTyping* relationship.
 - If the MOF property type is a primitive type, the relationship is to the corresponding type from the *ScalarValues* package (see [9.3.2](#)).

- If the MOF property type is a metaclass, the relationship is to the corresponding reflective `Metaclass`.
 - The MOF property multiplicity is mapped to an owned `MultiplicityRange` with bounds given by `LiteralExpressions`.
 - Subsetted properties from the MOF property are mapped to owned `Subsettings` of the corresponding reflective `Features`.
 - Redefined properties from the MOF property are mapped to owned `Redefinitions` of the corresponding reflective `Features`.
 - If the MOF property is `annotatedElement`, then `Metaobject::annotatedElement` is added to the list of redefined properties for the mapping.
4. An enumeration from the MOF model is mapped into a `DataType`.
- The MOF enumeration name is mapped unchanged.
 - Each enumeration literal from the MOF enumeration is mapped into a owned `Member Feature` (*not* and `ownedFeature`).
 - The MOF enumeration literal name is mapped unchanged.
 - The member `Feature` is given an owned `MultiplicityRange` of `1..1`.

Note that associations are not mapped from the MOF model and, hence, non-navigable association-owned end properties are not included in the reflective model.

9.3 Data Type Library

9.3.1 Data Types Library Overview

The Data Types Library provides a standard set of commonly used `DataTypes` for scalar, vector and collection values.

9.3.2 Scalar Values

9.3.2.1 Scalar Values Overview

This package contains a basic set of primitive scalar (non-collection) data types. These include *Boolean* and *String* types and a hierarchy of concrete *Number* types, from the most general type of *Complex* numbers to the most specific type of *Positive* integers.

9.3.2.2 Elements

9.3.2.2.1 Boolean

Element

`DataType`

Description

`Boolean` is a `ScalarValue` type whose instances are `true` and `false`.

General Types

`ScalarValue`

Features

`None`.

Constraints

None.

9.3.2.2.2 Complex**Element**

DataType

Description

Complex is the type of complex numbers.

General Types

Number

Features

None.

Constraints

None.

9.3.2.2.3 Integer**Element**

DataType

Description

Integer is the type of mathematical integers, extended with values for positive and negative infinity.

General Types

Rational

Features

None.

Constraints

None.

9.3.2.2.4 Natural**Element**

DataType

Description

Natural is the type of non-negative integers, extended with a value for positive infinity.

General Types

DataValue
Integer

Features

None.

Constraints

None.

9.3.2.2.5 Number

Element

DataType

Description

Number is the base type for all NumericalValue types that represent numbers.

General Types

NumericalValue

Features

None.

Constraints

None.

9.3.2.2.6 NumericalValue

Element

DataType

Description

NumericalValue is the base type for all ScalarValue types that represent numerical values.

General Types

ScalarValue

Features

None.

Constraints

None.

9.3.2.2.7 Positive**Element**

DataType

Description

Positive is the type of positive integers (not including zero), extended with a value for positive infinity.

General Types

Natural

Features

None.

Constraints

None.

9.3.2.2.8 Rational**Element**

DataType

Description

Rational is the type of rational numbers, extended with values for positive and negative infinity.

General Types

Real

Features

None.

Constraints

None.

9.3.2.2.9 Real**Element**

DataType

Description

Real is the type of mathematical (extended) real numbers. This includes both rational and irrational numbers, and values for positive and negative infinity.

General Types

Complex

Features

None.

Constraints

None.

9.3.2.2.10 ScalarValue

Element

DataType

Description

A ScalarValue is a DataValue whose instances are considered to be primitive, not collections or structures of other values.

General Types

DataValue

Features

None.

Constraints

None.

9.3.2.2.11 String

Element

DataType

Description

String is a ScalarValue type whose instances are strings of characters.

General Types

ScalarValue

Features

None.

Constraints

None.

9.3.3 Collections

9.3.3.1 Collections Overview

This package defines a standard set of *Collection* data types. Unlike sequences of values defined directly using multiplicity, these data types allow for the possibility of collections as elements of collections.

9.3.3.2 Elements

9.3.3.2.1 Array

Element

DataType

Description

An Array is a fixed size, multi-dimensional Collection of which the `elements` are nonunique and ordered. Its `dimensions` specify how many dimensions the array has, and how many elements there are in each dimension. The `rank` is equal to the number of `dimensions`. The `flattenedSize` is equal to the total number of `elements` in the array.

Feature `elements` is a flattened sequence of all elements of an Array and can be accessed by a tuple of indices. The number of indices is equal to `rank`. The `elements` are packed according to row-major convention, as in the C programming language.

Note 1. Feature `dimensions` may be empty, which denotes a zero dimensional array, allowing an Array to collapse to a single element. This is useful to allow for specialization of an Array into a type restricted to represent a scalar. The `flattenedSize` of a zero dimensional array is 1.

Note 2. An Array can also represent the generalized concept of a mathematical matrix of any rank, i.e. not limited to rank two.

General Types

OrderedCollection

Features

`dimensions` : Positive [0..*] {ordered, nonunique}

`flattenedSize` : Positive

`rank` : Natural

Constraints

`sizeConstraint`

[no documentation]

```
flattenedSize == size(elements)
```

9.3.3.2.2 Bag

Element

DataType

Description

A Bag is a variable size Collection of which the `elements` are unordered and nonunique.

General Types

Collection

Features

None.

Constraints

None.

9.3.3.2.3 Collection

Element

DataType

Description

A Collection is an abstract DataType that represents a collection of elements of a given type.

A Collection is either mutable or immutable, or mutability is unspecified.

TODO: Decide on whether to add Mutability, and if so, how.

General Types

Anything

Features

`elements` : Anything [0..*] {nonunique}

Constraints

None.

9.3.3.2.4 KeyValuePair

Element

DataType

Description

A `KeyValuePair` is an abstract `DataType` that represents a tuple of a `key` and an associated value `val`.

General Types

`DataValue`

Features

`key` : `Anything`

`val` : `Anything`

Constraints

None.

9.3.3.2.5 List

Element

`DataType`

Description

A `Sequence` is a variable size `Collection` of which the `elements` are nonunique and ordered.

General Types

`OrderedCollection`

Features

None.

Constraints

None.

9.3.3.2.6 Map

Element

`DataType`

Description

A `Map` is a variable size `Collection` of which the `elements` are `KeyValuePairs`. The keys must be unique within in the `Map`. The values need not be unique.

General Types

`UniqueCollection`

Features

elements : KeyValuePair [0..*] {redefines elements}

Constraints

None.

9.3.3.2.7 OrderedCollection

Element

DataType

Description

An OrderedCollection is a Collection of which the elements are ordered, and not necessarily unique).

General Types

Collection

Features

elements : Anything [0..*] {redefines elements, ordered, nonunique}

Constraints

None.

9.3.3.2.8 OrderedMap

Element

DataType

Description

An OrderedMap is a variable size Map that maintains ordering of its elements.

The ordering may be by key of the KeyValuePair elements, or by order of construction, or any other method. The essential aspect is that ordering is maintained and guaranteed across accesses to the OrderedMap.

General Types

Map

OrderedCollection

Features

elements : KeyValuePair [0..*] {redefines elements, ordered}

Constraints

None.

9.3.3.2.9 OrderedSet

Element

DataType

Description

An OrderedSet is a variable size Collection of which the `elements` are unique and ordered.

General Types

OrderedCollection

UniqueCollection

Features

`elements` : Anything [0..*] {redefines `elements`, ordered}

Constraints

None.

9.3.3.2.10 Set

Element

DataType

Description

A Set is a variable size Collection of which the `elements` are unique and unordered.

General Types

UniqueCollection

Features

None.

Constraints

None.

9.3.3.2.11 UniqueCollection

Element

DataType

Description

A UniqueCollection is a Collection of which the `elements` are unique, and not necessarily ordered).

General Types

Collection

Features

elements : Anything [0..*] {redefines elements}

Constraints

None.

9.3.4 Vector Values

9.3.4.1 Vector Values Overview

9.3.4.2 Elements

9.3.4.2.1 CartesianThreeVectorValue

Element

DataType

Description

A *CartesianThreeVectorValue* is a *NumericalVectorValue* that is both Cartesian and has dimension 3.

General Types

ThreeVectorValue
CartesianVectorValue

Features

None.

Constraints

None.

9.3.4.2.2 CartesianVectorValue

Element

DataType

Description

A *CartesianVectorValue* is a *NumericalVectorValue* for which there are specific implementations in *VectorFunctions* of the abstract vector-space functions.

Note: The restriction of the element type to *Real* is to facilitate the complete definition of these functions.

General Types

NumericalVectorValue

Features

elements : Real [0..*] {redefines elements}

Constraints

None.

9.3.4.2.3 NumericalVectorValue

Element

DataType

Description

A *NumericalVectorValue* is a kind of *VectorValue* that is specifically represented as a one-dimensional *Array* of *NumericalValues*. The dimension is allowed to be empty, permitting a *NumericalVectorValue* of rank 0, which is essentially isomorphic to a scalar *NumericalValue*.

General Types

Array

VectorValue

Features

dimension : Positive [0..1] {redefines dimensions}

elements : NumericalValue [0..*] {redefines elements}

Constraints

None.

9.3.4.2.4 ThreeVectorValue

Element

DataType

Description

A *ThreeVectorValue* is a *NumericalVectorValue* that has dimension 3.

General Types

NumericalVectorValue

Features

dimension : Positive [0..*] {redefines elements}

Constraints

None.

9.3.4.2.5 VectorValue

Element

DataType

Description

A *VectorValue* is an abstract data type whose values may be operated on using *VectorFunctions*.

General Types

None.

Features

None.

Constraints

None.

9.4 Function Library

The Function Library includes library models of basic *Functions* that operate on *DataTypes* from the Data Type Library (see [9.3](#)). The KerML operator expression notation translates to invocations of some of these library *Functions*. It is expected that other languages built on KerML will provide additional domain models as needed by their applications, which can include specializations of the library *Functions* for domain-specific *DataTypes*. The same KerML concrete syntax for *Expressions* can be used with these specialized *Functions* and *DataTypes*, extended with domain-specific semantics.

9.4.1 Function Library Overview

The Function Library includes library models of basic *Functions* that operate on *DataTypes* from the Data Type Library (see [9.3](#)). The KerML operator expression notation translates to invocations of some of these library *Functions*. It is expected that other languages built on KerML will provide additional domain models as needed by their applications, which can include specializations of the library *Functions* for domain-specific *DataTypes*. The same KerML concrete syntax for *Expressions* can be used with these specialized *Functions* and *DataTypes*, extended with domain-specific semantics.

9.4.2 Base Functions

9.4.2.1 Base Functions Overview

This package defines a basic set of *Functions* defined on all kinds of values. Most correspond to similarly named operators in the KerML expression notation.

9.4.2.2 Elements

```
abstract function '=='{  
  in x: Anything[0..1];
```

```

        in y: Anything[0..1];
        return : Boolean[1];
    }
function '!='{
    in x: Anything[0..1];
    in y: Anything[0..1];
    return : Boolean[1] = not (x == y);
}

function ToString{
    in x: Anything[0..1];
    return : String;
}

function '['{
    in seq: Anything[0..*] ordered nonunique;
    in index: Anything[0..*] ordered nonunique;
    return : Anything[0..1];
}
function ', '{
    in seq1: Anything[0..*] ordered nonunique;
    seq2: Anything[0..*] ordered nonunique;
    return : Anything[0..*] ordered nonunique;
}

abstract function 'all'{
    abstract feature all 'type': Object;
    return : Object[0..*];
}

abstract function 'istype'{
    in x: Anything[1];
    abstract feature 'type': Anything;
    return : Boolean[1];
}

abstract function '@'{
    in x: Anything[1];
    abstract feature 'type': Anything;
    return : Boolean[1];
}

abstract function 'hastype'{
    in x: Anything[1];
    abstract feature 'type': Anything[1];
    return : Boolean;
}

abstract function 'as'{
    in seq: Anything[0..*] ordered nonunique;
    abstract feature 'type': Anything[1];
    return : Anything[0..*] ordered nonunique;
}

```

9.4.3 Data Functions

9.4.3.1 Data Functions Overview

This package defines the abstract base Functions corresponding to all the unary and binary operators in the KerML expression notation that might be defined on various kinds of DataValues.

9.4.3.2 Elements

```
abstract function '+'
  { in x: DataValue[1]; in y: DataValue[0..1]; return : DataValue[1]; }
abstract function '-'
  { in x: DataValue[1]; in y: DataValue[0..1]; return : DataValue[1]; }
abstract function '*'
  { in x: DataValue[1]; in y: DataValue[1]; return : DataValue[1]; }
abstract function '/'
  { in x: DataValue[1]; in y: DataValue[1]; return : DataValue[1]; }
abstract function '**'
  { in x: DataValue[1]; in y: DataValue[1]; return : DataValue[1]; }
abstract function '^'
  { in x: DataValue[1]; in y: DataValue[1]; return : DataValue[1]; }
abstract function '%'
  { in x: DataValue[1]; in y: DataValue[1]; return : DataValue[1]; }

abstract function 'not'
  { in x: DataValue[1]; return : DataValue[1]; }
abstract function 'xor'
  { in x: DataValue[1]; in y: DataValue[1]; return : DataValue[1]; }

abstract function '~'
  { in x: DataValue[1]; return : DataValue[1]; }
abstract function '|'
  { in x: DataValue[1]; in y: DataValue[1]; return : DataValue[1]; }
abstract function '&'
  { in x: DataValue[1]; in y: DataValue[1]; return : DataValue[1]; }

abstract function '<'
  { in x: DataValue[1]; in y: DataValue[1]; return : Boolean[1]; }
abstract function '>'
  { in x: DataValue[1]; in y: DataValue[1]; return : Boolean[1]; }
abstract function '<='
  { in x: DataValue[1]; in y: DataValue[1]; return : Boolean[1]; }
abstract function '>='
  { in x: DataValue[1]; in y: DataValue[1]; return : Boolean[1]; }

abstract function Max
  { in x: DataValue[1]; in y: DataValue[1]; return : DataValue[1]; }
abstract function Min
  { in x: DataValue[1]; in y: DataValue[1]; return : DataValue[1]; }

abstract function '==' specializes BaseFunctions::'=='
  { in x: DataValue[0..1]; in y: DataValue[0..1]; return : Boolean[1]; }

abstract function '...'
  { in lower: DataValue[1]; in upper: DataValue[1]; return : DataValue[0..*] ordered; }
```

9.4.4 Scalar Functions

9.4.4.1 Scalar Functions Overview

This package defines abstract Functions that specialize the DataFunctions for use with ScalarValues.

9.4.4.2 Elements

```
abstract function '+' specializes DataFunctions::'+'
  { in x: ScalarValue[1]; in y: ScalarValue[0..1]; return : ScalarValue[1]; }
abstract function '-' specializes DataFunctions::'-'
  { in x: ScalarValue[1]; in y: ScalarValue[0..1]; return : ScalarValue[1]; }
abstract function '*' specializes DataFunctions::'*'
  { in x: ScalarValue[1]; in y: ScalarValue[1]; return : ScalarValue[1]; }
abstract function '/' specializes DataFunctions::'/'
  { in x: ScalarValue[1]; in y: ScalarValue[1]; return : ScalarValue[1]; }
abstract function '**' specializes DataFunctions::'**'
  { in x: ScalarValue[1]; in y: ScalarValue[1]; return : ScalarValue[1]; }
abstract function '^' specializes DataFunctions::'^'
  { in x: ScalarValue[1]; in y: ScalarValue[1]; return : ScalarValue[1]; }
abstract function '%' specializes DataFunctions::'%'
  { in x: ScalarValue[1]; in y: ScalarValue[1]; return : ScalarValue[1]; }

abstract function 'not' specializes DataFunctions::'not'
  { in x: ScalarValue[1]; return : ScalarValue[1]; }
abstract function 'xor' specializes DataFunctions::'xor'
  { in x: ScalarValue[1]; in y: ScalarValue[1]; return : ScalarValue[1]; }

abstract function '~' specializes DataFunctions::~~'
  { in x: ScalarValue[1]; return : ScalarValue[1]; }
abstract function '|' specializes DataFunctions::'|'
  { in x: ScalarValue[1]; in y: ScalarValue[1]; return : ScalarValue[1]; }
abstract function '&' specializes DataFunctions::'&'
  { in x: ScalarValue[1]; in y: ScalarValue[1]; return : ScalarValue[1]; }

abstract function '<' specializes DataFunctions::'<'
  { in x: ScalarValue[1]; in y: ScalarValue[1]; return : Boolean[1]; }
abstract function '>' specializes DataFunctions::'>'
  { in x: ScalarValue[1]; in y: ScalarValue[1]; return : Boolean[1]; }
abstract function '<=' specializes DataFunctions::'<='
  { in x: ScalarValue[1]; in y: ScalarValue[1]; return : Boolean[1]; }
abstract function '>=' specializes DataFunctions::'>='
  { in x: ScalarValue[1]; in y: ScalarValue[1]; return : Boolean[1]; }

abstract function max specializes DataFunctions::Max { in x: ScalarValue[1]; in y: ScalarValue[1]; r
abstract function min specializes DataFunctions::Min { in x: ScalarValue[1]; in y: ScalarValue[1]; r

abstract function '...' specializes DataFunctions::'...' { in lower: ScalarValue[1]; in upper: ScalarV
```

9.4.5 Boolean Functions

9.4.5.1 Boolean Functions Overview

This package defines Functions on Boolean values, including those corresponding to (non-conditional) logical operators in the KerML expression notation.

9.4.5.2 Elements

```
function 'not' specializes ScalarFunctions::'not'
  { in x: Boolean[1]; return : Boolean[1]; }
function 'xor' specializes ScalarFunctions::'xor'
  { in x: Boolean[1]; in y: Boolean[1]; return : Boolean[1]; }

function '|' specializes ScalarFunctions::'|'
  { in x: Boolean[1]; in y: Boolean[1]; return : Boolean[1]; }
```

```

function '&' specializes ScalarFunctions::'&'
  { in x: Boolean[1]; in y: Boolean[1]; return : Boolean[1]; }

function '==' specializes DataFunctions::'=='
  { in x: Boolean[0..1]; in y: Boolean[0..1]; return : Boolean[1]; }

function ToString specializes BaseFunctions::ToString
  { in x: Boolean[1]; return : String[1]; }
function ToBoolean
  { in x: String[1]; return : Boolean[1]; }

```

9.4.6 String Functions

9.4.6.1 String Functions Overview

This package defines Functions on String values, including those corresponding to string concatenation and comparison operators in the KerML expression notation.

9.4.6.2 Elements

```

function '+' specializes ScalarFunctions::'+'
  { in x: String[1]; in y: String[1]; return : String[1]; }

function Length
  { in x: String[1]; return : Natural[1]; }
function Substring
  { in x: String[1]; in lower: Integer[1]; in upper: Integer[1];
    return : String[1]; }

function '<' specializes ScalarFunctions::'<'
  { in x: String[1]; in y: String[1]; return : Boolean[1]; }
function '>' specializes ScalarFunctions::'>'
  { in x: String[1]; in y: String[1]; return : Boolean[1]; }
function '<=' specializes ScalarFunctions::'<='
  { in x: String[1]; in y: String[1]; return : Boolean[1]; }
function '>=' specializes ScalarFunctions::'>='
  { in x: String[1]; in y: String[1]; return : Boolean[1]; }

function '==' specializes DataFunctions::'=='
  { in x: String[0..1]; in y: String[0..1]; return : Boolean[1]; }

function ToString specializes BaseFunctions::ToString
  { in x: String[1]; }

```

9.4.7 Numerical Functions

9.4.7.1 Numerical Functions Overview

This package defines abstract Functions on Numerical values for general arithmetic and comparison operations.

9.4.7.2 Elements

```

abstract function isZero
  { in x: NumericalValue[1]; return : Boolean; }
abstract function isUnit
  { in x : NumericalValue[1]; return : Boolean; }

abstract function abs
  { in x: NumericalValue[1]; return : NumericalValue[1]; }

```

```

abstract function '+' specializes ScalarFunctions::'+'
  { in x: NumericalValue[1]; in y: NumericalValue[0..1];
    return : NumericalValue[1]; }
abstract function '-' specializes ScalarFunctions::'-'
  { in x: NumericalValue[1]; in y: NumericalValue[0..1];
    return : NumericalValue[1]; }
abstract function '*' specializes ScalarFunctions::'*'
  { in x: NumericalValue[1]; in y: NumericalValue[1];
    return : NumericalValue[1]; }
abstract function '/' specializes ScalarFunctions::'/'
  { in x: NumericalValue[1]; in y: NumericalValue[1];
    return : NumericalValue[1]; }
abstract function '**' specializes ScalarFunctions::'**'
  { in x: NumericalValue[1]; in y: NumericalValue[1];
    return : NumericalValue[1]; }
abstract function '^' specializes ScalarFunctions::'^'
  { in x: NumericalValue[1]; in y: NumericalValue[1];
    return : NumericalValue[1]; }
abstract function '%' specializes ScalarFunctions::'%'
  { in x: NumericalValue[1]; in y: NumericalValue[1];
    return : NumericalValue[1]; }

abstract function '<' specializes ScalarFunctions::'<'
  { in x: NumericalValue[1]; in y: NumericalValue[1]; return : Boolean[1]; }
abstract function '>' specializes ScalarFunctions::'>'
  { in x: NumericalValue[1]; in y: NumericalValue[1]; return : Boolean[1]; }
abstract function '<=' specializes ScalarFunctions::'<='
  { in x: NumericalValue[1]; in y: NumericalValue[1]; return : Boolean[1]; }
abstract function '>=' specializes ScalarFunctions::'>='
  { in x: NumericalValue[1]; in y: NumericalValue[1]; return : Boolean[1]; }

abstract function max specializes ScalarFunctions::max
  { in x: NumericalValue[1]; in y: NumericalValue[1];
    return : NumericalValue[1]; }
abstract function min specializes ScalarFunctions::min
  { in x: NumericalValue[1]; in y: NumericalValue[1];
    return : NumericalValue[1]; }

abstract function sum
  { in collection: ScalarValue[0..*]; return : ScalarValue[1]; }
abstract function product
  { in collection: ScalarValue[0..*]; return : ScalarValue[1]; }

```

9.4.8 Complex Functions

9.4.8.1 Complex Functions Overview

This package defines Functions on Complex values, including concrete specializations of the general arithmetic and comparison operations.

9.4.8.2 Elements

```

feature i: Complex[1] = rect(0.0, 1.0);

function rect
  { in re: Real[1]; in im: Real[1]; return : Complex[1]; }
function polar
  { in abs: Real[1]; in arg: Real[1]; return : Complex[1]; }

```

```

function re
  { in x: Complex[1]; return : Real[1]; }
function im
  { in x: Complex[1]; return : Real[1]; }

function isZero specializes NumericalFunctions::isZero
  { in x: Complex[1]; return : Boolean[1]; }
function isUnit specializes NumericalFunctions::isUnit
  { in x: Complex[1]; return : Boolean[1]; }

function abs specializes NumericalFunctions::abs
  { in x: Complex[1]; return : Real[1]; }
function arg
  { in x: Complex[1]; return : Real[1]; }

function '+' specializes NumericalFunctions::'+'
  { in x: Complex[1]; in y: Complex[0..1]; return : Complex[1]; }
function '-' specializes NumericalFunctions::'-'
  { in x: Complex[1]; in y: Complex[0..1]; return : Complex[1]; }
function '*' specializes NumericalFunctions::'*'
  { in x: Complex[1]; in y: Complex[1]; return : Complex[1]; }
function '/' specializes NumericalFunctions::'/'
  { in x: Complex[1]; in y: Complex[1]; return : Complex[1]; }
function '**' specializes NumericalFunctions::'**'
  { in x: Complex[1]; in y: Complex[1]; return : Complex[1]; }
function '^' specializes NumericalFunctions::'^'
  { in x: Complex[1]; in y: Complex[1]; return : Complex[1]; }

function '==' specializes DataFunctions::'=='
  { in x: Complex[0..1]; in y: Complex[0..1]; return : Boolean[1]; }

function ToString specializes BaseFunctions::ToString
  { in x: Complex[1]; return : String[1]; }
function ToComplex
  { in x: String[1]; return : Complex[1]; }

function sum specializes NumericalFunctions::sum
  { in collection: Complex[0..*]; return : Complex[1]; }

function product specializes NumericalFunctions::product
  { in collection: Complex[0..*]; return : Complex[1]; }

```

9.4.9 Real Functions

9.4.9.1 Real Functions Overview

This package defines Functions on Real values, including concrete specializations of the general arithmetic and comparison operations.

9.4.9.2 Elements

```

function re :> ComplexFunctions::re
  { in x: Real[1]; return : Real[1] = x; }
function im :> ComplexFunctions::im
  { in x: Real[1]; return : Real[1] = 0.0; }

function abs specializes ComplexFunctions::abs
  { in x: Real[1]; return : Real[1]; }
function arg specializes ComplexFunctions::arg
  { in x: Real[1]; return : Real[1] = 0.0; }

```

```

function '+' specializes ComplexFunctions::'+'
  { in x: Real[1]; in y: Real[0..1]; return : Real[1]; }
function '-' specializes ComplexFunctions::'-'
  { in x: Real[1]; in y: Real[0..1]; return : Real[1]; }
function '*' specializes ComplexFunctions::'*'
  { in x: Real[1]; in y: Real[1]; return : Real[1]; }
function '/' specializes ComplexFunctions::'/'
  { in x: Real[1]; in y: Real[1]; return : Real[1]; }
function '**' specializes ComplexFunctions::'**'
  { in x: Real[1]; in y: Real[1]; return : Real[1]; }
function '^' specializes ComplexFunctions::'^'
  { in x: Real[1]; in y: Real[1]; return : Real[1]; }

function '<' specializes NumericalFunctions::'<'
  { in x: Real[1]; in y: Real[1]; return : Boolean[1]; }
function '>' specializes NumericalFunctions::'>'
  { in x: Real[1]; in y: Real[1]; return : Boolean[1]; }
function '<=' specializes NumericalFunctions::'<='
  { in x: Real[1]; in y: Real[1]; return : Boolean[1]; }
function '>=' specializes NumericalFunctions::'>='
  { in x: Real[1]; in y: Real[1]; return : Boolean[1]; }

function max specializes NumericalFunctions::max
  { in x: Real[1]; in y: Real[1]; return : Real[1]; }
function min specializes NumericalFunctions::min
  { in x: Real[1]; in y: Real[1]; return : Real[1]; }

function '==' specializes ComplexFunctions::'=='
  { in x: Real[0..1]; in y: Real[0..1]; return : Boolean[1]; }

function sqrt
  { in x: Real[1]; return : Real[1]; }

function floor
  { in x: Real[1]; return : Integer[1]; }
function round
  { in x: Real[1]; return : Integer[1]; }

function ToString specializes ComplexFunctions::ToString
  { in x: Real[1]; return : String[1]; }
function ToInteger
  { in x: Real[1]; return : Integer[1]; }
function ToRational
  { in x: Real[1]; return : Rational[1]; }
function ToReal
  { in x: String[1]; return : Real[1]; }

function sum specializes ComplexFunctions::sum
  { in collection: Real[0..*]; return : Real; }

function product specializes ComplexFunctions::product
  { in collection: Real[0..*]; return : Real; }

```

9.4.10 Rational Functions

9.4.10.1 Rational Functions Overview

This package defines Functions on Rational values, including concrete specializations of the general arithmetic and comparison operations.

9.4.10.2 Elements

```
function rat
  { in numer: Integer[1]; in denum: Integer[1]; return : Rational[1]; }
function number
  { in rat: Rational[1]; return : Integer[1]; }
function denom
  { in rat: Rational[1]; return : Integer[1]; }

function abs specializes RealFunctions::abs
  { in x: Rational[1]; return : Rational[1]; }

function '+' specializes RealFunctions::'+'
  { in x: Rational[1]; in y: Rational[0..1]; return : Rational[1]; }
function '-' specializes RealFunctions::'-'
  { in x: Rational[1]; in y: Rational[0..1]; return : Rational[1]; }
function '*' specializes RealFunctions::'*'
  { in x: Rational[1]; in y: Rational[1]; return : Rational[1]; }
function '/' specializes RealFunctions::'/'
  { in x: Rational[1]; in y: Rational[1]; return : Rational[1]; }
function '**' specializes RealFunctions::'**'
  { in x: Rational[1]; in y: Rational[1]; return : Rational[1]; }
function '^' specializes RealFunctions::'^'
  { in x: Rational[1]; in y: Rational[1]; return : Rational[1]; }

function '<' specializes RealFunctions::'<'
  { in x: Rational[1]; in y: Rational[1]; return : Boolean[1]; }
function '>' specializes RealFunctions::'>'
  { in x: Rational[1]; in y: Rational[1]; return : Boolean[1]; }
function '<=' specializes RealFunctions::'<='
  { in x: Rational[1]; in y: Rational[1]; return : Boolean[1]; }
function '>=' specializes RealFunctions::'>='
  { in x: Rational[1]; in y: Rational[1]; return : Boolean[1]; }

function max specializes RealFunctions::max
  { in x: Rational[1]; in y: Rational[1]; return : Rational[1]; }
function min specializes RealFunctions::min
  { in x: Rational[1]; in y: Rational[1]; return : Rational[1]; }

function '==' specializes RealFunctions::'=='
  { in x: Rational[0..1]; in y: Rational[0..1]; return : Boolean[1]; }

function gcd
  { in x: Rational[1]; in y: Rational[1]; return : Integer[1]; }

function floor specializes RealFunctions::floor
  { in x: Rational[1]; return : Integer[1]; }
function round specializes RealFunctions::round
  { in x: Rational[1]; return : Integer[1]; }

function ToString specializes RealFunctions::ToString
  { in x: Rational[1]; return : String[1]; }
function ToInteger
  { in x: Rational[1]; return : Integer[1]; }
function ToRational
  { in x: String[1]; return : Rational[1]; }

function sum specializes RealFunctions::sum
  { in collection: Rational[0..*]; return : Rational[1]; }
```

```
function product specializes RealFunctions::product
  { in collection: Rational[0..*]; return : Rational[1]; }
```

9.4.11 Integer Functions

9.4.11.1 Integer Functions Overview

This package defines Functions on Integer values, including concrete specializations of the general arithmetic and comparison operations.

9.4.11.2 Elements

```
function abs specializes RationalFunctions::abs
  { in x: Integer[1]; return : Natural[1]; }

function '+' specializes RationalFunctions::'+'
  { in x: Integer[1]; in y: Integer[0..1]; return : Integer[1]; }
function '-' specializes RationalFunctions::'-'
  { in x: Integer[1]; in y: Integer[0..1]; return : Integer[1]; }
function '*' specializes RationalFunctions::'*'
  { in x: Integer[1]; in y: Integer[1]; return : Integer[1]; }
function '/' specializes RationalFunctions::'/'
  { in x: Integer[1]; in y: Integer[1]; return : Rational[1]; }
function '**' specializes RationalFunctions::'**'
  { in x: Integer[1]; in y: Natural[1]; return : Integer[1]; }
function '^' specializes RationalFunctions::'^'
  { in x: Integer[1]; in y: Natural[1]; return : Integer[1]; }
function '%' specializes NumericalFunctions::'%'
  { in x: Integer[1]; in y: Integer[1]; return : Integer[1]; }

function '<' specializes RationalFunctions::'<'
  { in x: Integer[1]; in y: Integer[1]; return : Boolean[1]; }
function '>' specializes RationalFunctions::'>'
  { in x: Integer[1]; in y: Integer[1]; return : Boolean[1]; }
function '<=' specializes RationalFunctions::'<='
  { in x: Integer[1]; in y: Integer[1]; return : Boolean[1]; }
function '>=' specializes RationalFunctions::'>='
  { in x: Integer[1]; in y: Integer[1]; return : Boolean[1]; }

function max specializes RationalFunctions::max
  { in x: Integer[1]; in y: Integer[1]; return : Integer[1]; }
function min specializes RationalFunctions::min
  { in x: Integer[1]; in y: Integer[1]; return : Integer[1]; }

function '==' specializes DataFunctions::'=='
  { in x: Integer[0..1]; in y: Integer[0..1]; return : Boolean[1]; }

function '...' specializes ScalarFunctions::'...'
  { in lower: Integer[1]; in upper: Integer[1]; return : Integer[0..*]; }

function ToString specializes RationalFunctions::ToString
  { in x: Integer[1]; return : String[1]; }
function ToNatural
  { in x: Integer[1]; return : Natural[1]; }
function ToInteger
  { in x: String[1]; return : Integer[1]; }

function sum specializes RationalFunctions::sum
  { in collection: Integer[0..*]; return : Integer[1]; }
```

```
function product specializes RationalFunctions::product
  { in collection: Integer[0..*]; return : Integer[1]; }
```

9.4.12 Natural Functions

9.4.12.1 Natural Functions Overview

This package defines Functions on Natural values, including concrete specializations of the general arithmetic and comparison operations.

9.4.12.2 Elements

```
function '+' specializes IntegerFunctions::'+'
  { in x: Natural[1]; in y: Natural[0..1]; return : Natural[1]; }
function '*' specializes IntegerFunctions::'*'
  { in x: Natural[1]; in y: Natural[1]; return : Natural[1]; }
function '/' specializes IntegerFunctions::'/'
  { in x: Natural[1]; in y: Natural[1]; return : Natural[1]; }
function '%' specializes IntegerFunctions::'%'
  { in x: Natural[1]; in y: Natural[1]; return : Natural[1]; }

function '<' specializes IntegerFunctions::'<'
  { in x: Natural[1]; in y: Natural[1]; return : Boolean[1]; }
function '>' specializes IntegerFunctions::'>'
  { in x: Natural[1]; in y: Natural[1]; return : Boolean[1]; }
function '<=' specializes IntegerFunctions::'<='
  { in x: Natural[1]; in y: Natural[1]; return : Boolean[1]; }
function '>=' specializes IntegerFunctions::'>='
  { in x: Natural[1]; in y: Natural[1]; return : Boolean[1]; }

function max specializes IntegerFunctions::max
  { in x: Natural[1]; in y: Natural[1]; return : Natural[1]; }
function min specializes IntegerFunctions::min
  { in x: Natural[1]; in y: Natural[1]; return : Natural[1]; }

function '==' specializes IntegerFunctions::'=='
  { in x: Natural[0..1]; in y: Natural[0..1]; return : Boolean[1]; }

function ToString specializes IntegerFunctions::ToString
  { in x: Natural[1]; return : String[1]; }
function ToNatural
  { in x: String[1]; return : Natural[1]; }
```

9.4.13 Trig Functions

9.4.13.1 Trig Functions Overview

This package defines basic trigonometric functions on real numbers.

9.4.13.2 Elements

```
feature pi : Real;
inv piPrecision { RealFunctions::round(pi * 1E20) == 314159265358979323846.0 }

function deg {
  in theta_rad : Real[1];
  return : Real[1] = theta_rad * 180 / pi;
}
```

```

function rad {
  in theta_deg : Real;
  return : Real[1] = theta_deg * pi / 180;
}

datatype UnitBoundedReal :> Real {
  inv unitBound { -1.0 <= that & that <= 1.0 }
}

function sin {
  in theta : Real[1];
  return : UnitBoundedReal[1];
}
function cos {
  in theta : Real[1];
  return : UnitBoundedReal[1];
}
function tan {
  in theta : Real[1];
  return : Real = sin(theta) / cos(theta);
}
function cot {
  in theta : Real;
  return : Real = cos(theta) / sin(theta);
}

function arcsin {
  in x : UnitBoundedReal[1];
  return : Real[1];
}
function arccos {
  in x : UnitBoundedReal[1];
  return : Real[1];
}
function arctan {
  in x : Real[1];
  return : Real[1];
}

```

9.4.14 Sequence Functions

9.4.14.1 Sequence Functions Overview

This package defines Functions that operate on general sequences of values. (For Functions that operate on Collection values, see CollectionFunctions.)

9.4.14.2 Elements

```

function equals{
  in x: Anything[0..*] ordered nonunique;
  in y: Anything[0..*] ordered nonunique;
  return : Boolean[1];
}

function size{
  in seq: Anything[0..*] nonunique;
  return : Natural[1];
}
function isEmpty{
  in seq: Anything[0..*] nonunique;

```

```

    return : Boolean[1];
}
function notEmpty{
    in seq: Anything[0..*] nonunique;
    return : Boolean[1];
}
function includes{
    in seq1: Anything[0..*] nonunique;
    in seq2: Anything[0..*] nonunique;
    return : Boolean[1];
}
function includesOnly{
    in seq1: Anything[0..*] nonunique;
    in seq2: Anything[0..*] nonunique;
    return : Boolean[1];
}
function excludes{
    in seq1: Anything[0..*] nonunique;
    in seq2: Anything[0..*] nonunique;
    return : Boolean[1];
}

function union{
    in seq1: Anything[0..*] ordered nonunique;
    in seq2: Anything[0..*] ordered nonunique;
    return : Anything[0..*] ordered nonunique;
}
function intersection{
    in seq1: Anything[0..*] ordered nonunique;
    in seq2: Anything[0..*] ordered nonunique;
    return : Anything[0..*] ordered nonunique;
}
function including{
    in seq1: Anything[0..*] ordered nonunique;
    in seq2: Anything[0..*] ordered nonunique;
    return : Anything[0..*] ordered nonunique;
}
function excluding{
    in seq1: Anything[0..*] ordered nonunique;
    in seq2: Anything[0..*] ordered nonunique;
    return : Anything[0..*] ordered nonunique;
}

function subsequence{
    in seq: Anything[0..*] ordered nonunique;
    in startIndex: Positive[1];
    in endIndex: Positive[1];
    return : Anything[0..*];
}
function head{
    in seq: Anything[0..*] ordered nonunique;
    return : Anything[0..1] = seq[1];
}
function tail{
    in seq: Anything[0..*] ordered nonunique;
    return : Anything[0..*] ordered nonunique;
}
function last{
    in seq: Anything[0..*] ordered nonunique;
    return : Anything[0..1];
}

```

```

}

function '[' specializes BaseFunctions::'[' {
  in seq: Anything[0..*] ordered nonunique;
  in index: Positive[1];
  return : Anything[0..1];
}

```

9.4.15 Collection Functions

9.4.15.1 Collection Functions Overview

This package defines Functions on Collections (as defined in the Collections package). For Functions on general sequences of values, see the SequenceFunctions package.

9.4.15.2 Elements

```

function '==' specializes BaseFunctions::'==' {
  in col1: Collection[0..1];
  in col2: Collection[0..1];
  return : Boolean[1];
}

function size {
  in col: Collection[1];
  return : Natural[1];
}

function isEmpty {
  in col: Collection[1];
  return : Boolean[1];
}

function notEmpty {
  in col: Collection[1];
  return : Boolean[1];
}

function contains {
  in col: Collection[1];
  in values: Anything[*];
  return : Boolean[1];
}

function containsAll {
  in col1: Collection[1];
  in col2: Collection[2];
  return : Boolean[1];
}

function head {
  in col: OrderedCollection[1];
  return : Anything[0..1];
}

function tail {
  in col: OrderedCollection[1];
  return : Anything[0..*] ordered nonunique;
}

```

```

function last {
  in col: OrderedCollection[1];
  return : Anything[0..1];
}

function '[' specializes BaseFunctions::'[' {
  in col: OrderedCollection[1];
  in index: Positive[1];
  return : Anything[0..1];
}

function 'array[' specializes BaseFunctions::'[' {
  in arr: Array[1];
  in indexes: Positive[n] ordered nonunique;
  return : Anything[0..1];
}

```

9.4.16 Vector Functions

9.4.16.1 Vector Functions Overview

This package defines abstract functions on *VectorValues* corresponding to the algebraic operations provided by a vector space with inner product. It also includes concrete implementations of these functions specifically for *CartesianVectorValues*.

9.4.16.2 Elements

```

abstract function isZeroVector {
  doc
  /*
   * Return whether a VectorValue is a zero vector.
   */

  in v: VectorValue[1];
  return : Boolean[1];
}

abstract function '+' specializes DataFunctions::'+' {
  doc
  /*
   * With two arguments, returns the sum of two VectorValues.
   * With one argument, returns that VectorValue.
   */

  in v: VectorValue[1];
  in w: VectorValue[0..1];
  return u: VectorValue[1];
  inv zeroAddition { w == null or isZeroVector(w) implies u == w }
  inv commutivity { w != null implies u == w + v }
}

abstract function '-' specializes DataFunctions::-'-' {
  doc
  /*
   * With two arguments, returns the difference of two VectorValues.
   * With one arguments, returns the inverse
   * of the given VectorValue, that is, the VectorValue that,
   * when added to the original VectorValue, results in
   * the zeroVector.
   */

```

```

    */

    in v: VectorValue[1];
    in w: VectorValue[0..1];
    return u: VectorValue[1];
    inv negation { w == null implies isZeroVector(v + u) }
    inv difference { w != null implies v + u == w }
}

abstract function sum0 {
  doc
  /*
   * Return the sum of a collection of VectorValues.
   * If the collection is empty, return a given zero vector.
   */

  in coll: VectorValue[*] nonunique;
  in zero: VectorValue[1];
  inv precondition { isZeroVector(zero) }
  return s: VectorValue[1] = coll->reduce '+' ?? zero;
}

/* Functions specific to NumericalVectorValues. */

function VectorOf {
  doc
  /*
   * Construct a NumericalVectorValue whose elements are a
   * non-empty list of component NumericalValues.
   * The dimension of the NumericalVectorValue is equal to
   * the number of components.
   */

  in components: NumericalValue[1..*] ordered nonunique;
  return : NumericalVectorValue[1] {
    :>> dimension = size(components);
    :>> elements = components;
  }
}

abstract function scalarVectorMult specializes DataFunctions::'*' {
  doc
  /*
   * Scalar product of a NumericalValue and a NumericalVectorValue.
   */

  in x: NumericalValue[1];
  in v: NumericalVectorValue[1];
  return w: NumericalVectorValue[1];
  inv scaling { norm(w) == x * norm(v) }
  inv zeroLength { isZeroVector(w) implies isZero(norm(w)) }
}
alias '*' for scalarVectorMult;

abstract function vectorScalarMult specializes DataFunctions::'*' {
  doc
  /*
   * Scalar product of a NumericalVectorValue and a NumericalValue,
   * which has the same value as the scalar product of the
   * NumericalValue and the NumericalVectorValue.

```



```

    */

    in v: NumericalVectorValue[1];
    in x: NumericalValue[1];
    return w: NumericalVectorValue[1] = scalarVectorMult(x, v);
}

abstract function vectorScalarDiv specializes DataFunctions::'/' {
  doc
  /*
   * Scalar quotient of a NumericalVectorValue and a NumericalValue,
   * defined as the scalar product of the inverse of the
   * NumericalValue and the NumericalVectorValue.
   */

  in v: NumericalVectorValue[1];
  in x: NumericalValue[1];
  return w: NumericalVectorValue[1] = scalarVectorMult(1.0 / x, v);
}

abstract function inner specializes DataFunctions::'*' {
  doc
  /*
   * Inner product of two NumericalVectorValues.
   */

  in v: NumericalVectorValue[1];
  in w: NumericalVectorValue[1];
  return x: NumericalValue[1];
  inv commutivity { x == inner(w, v) }
  inv zeroInner { isZeroVector(v) or isZeroVector(w) implies isZero(x) }
}

abstract function norm {
  doc
  /*
   * The norm (magnitude) of a NumericalVectorValue, as a NumericalValue.
   */

  in v: NumericalVectorValue[1];
  return l : NumericalValue[1];
  inv squareNorm { l * l == inner(v,v) }
  inv lengthZero { isZero(l) == isZeroVector(v) }
}

abstract function angle {
  doc
  /*
   * The angle between two NumericalVectorValues, as a NumericalValue.
   */

  in v: NumericalVectorValue[1];
  in w: NumericalVectorValue[1];
  return theta: NumericalValue[1];
  inv commutivity { theta == angle(w, v) }
  inv lengthInsensitive { theta == angle(w / norm(w), v / norm(v)) }
}

/* Specialized functions with concrete definitions for CartesianVectorValues. */

```

```

function CartesianVectorOf {
  doc
  /*
   * Construct a CartesianVectorValue whose elements are
   * a non-empty list of Real components.
   * The dimension of the NumericalVectorValue is equal
   * to the number of components.
   */

  in components: Real[*] ordered nonunique;
  return : CartesianVectorValue[1] {
    :>> dimension = size(components);
    :>> elements = components;
  }
}

function CartesianThreeVectorOf specializes CartesianVectorOf {
  in components: Real[3] ordered nonunique;
  return : CartesianThreeVectorValue[1];
}

feature cartesianZeroVector: CartesianVectorValue[3] =
  (
    CartesianVectorOf(0.0),
    CartesianVectorOf((0.0, 0.0)),
    CartesianThreeVectorOf((0.0, 0.0, 0.0))
  ) {
  doc
  /*
   * Cartesian zero vectors of 1, 2 and 3 dimensions.
   */
}

feature cartesian3DZeroVector: CartesianThreeVectorValue[1] =
  cartesianZeroVector[3];

function isCartesianZeroVector specializes isZeroVector {
  doc
  /*
   * A CartesianVectorValue is a zero vector if all its elements are zero.
   */

  in v: CartesianVectorValue[1];
  return : Boolean[1] = v.elements->forall{in x; x == 0.0};
}

function 'cartesian+' specializes '+' {
  in v: CartesianVectorValue[1];
  in w: CartesianVectorValue[0..1];
  inv precondition { w != null implies v.dimension == w.dimension }
  return u: CartesianVectorValue[1] =
    if w == null? v
    else CartesianVectorOf(
      (1..w.dimension)->collect{in i : Positive; v[i] + w[i]}
    );
}

function 'cartesian-' specializes '-' {
  in v: CartesianVectorValue[1];
  in w: CartesianVectorValue[0..1];
  inv precondition { w != null implies v.dimension == w.dimension }
  return u: CartesianVectorValue[1] =

```

```

    CartesianVectorOf(
      if w == null?
        CartesianVectorOf(v.elements->collect{in x : Real; -x})
      else CartesianVectorOf(
        (1..v.dimension)->collect{in i : Positive; v[i] - w[i]}
      )
    );
  };
}

function cartesianScalarVectorMult specializes scalarVectorMult {
  in x: Real[1];
  in v: CartesianVectorValue[1];
  return w: CartesianVectorValue[1] =
    CartesianVectorOf(
      v.elements->collect{in y : Real; x * y}
    );
}

function cartesianVectorScalarMult specializes vectorScalarMult {
  in v: CartesianVectorValue[1];
  in x: Real[1];
  return w: CartesianVectorValue[1] = cartesianScalarVectorMult(x, v);
}

function cartesianInner specializes inner {
  in v: CartesianVectorValue[1];
  in w : CartesianVectorValue[1];
  inv precondition { v.dimension == w.dimension }
  return x: Real[1] =
    (1..v.dimension)->collect{in i : Positive; v[i] * w[i]}->reduce RealFunctions::'+';
}

function cartesianNorm specializes norm {
  in v: CartesianVectorValue[1];
  return l : NumericalValue[1] = sqrt(cartesianInner(v, v));
}

function cartesianAngle specializes angle {
  in v: CartesianVectorValue[1]; in w: CartesianVectorValue[1];
  inv precondition { v.dimension == w.dimension }
  return theta: Real[1] = arccos(cartesianInner(v, w) / (norm(v) * norm(w)));
}

function sum {
  in coll: CartesianThreeVectorValue[*];
  return : CartesianThreeVectorValue[1] = sum0(coll, cartesian3DZeroVector);
}

```

9.4.17 Control Functions

9.4.17.1 Control Functions Overview

This package defines Functions that correspond to operators in the KerML expression notation for which one or more operands are Expressions whose evaluation is determined by another operand.

9.4.17.2 Elements

```

abstract function '.' {
  in feature source : Anything[0..*] nonunique {
    abstract feature target : Anything[0..*] nonunique;
  }
}

```

```

    private feature chain chains source.target;
    chain
}

abstract function 'if' {
    in test: Boolean[1];
    in expr thenValue[0..1] { return : Anything[0..*] ordered nonunique; }
    in expr elseValue[0..1] { return : Anything[0..*] ordered nonunique; }
    return : Anything[0..*] ordered nonunique;
}

abstract function '??' {
    in firstValue: Anything[0..*] ordered nonunique;
    in expr secondValue[0..1] { return : Anything[0..*] ordered nonunique; }
    return : Anything[0..*] ordered nonunique;
}

function 'and' {
    in firstValue: Boolean[1];
    in expr secondValue[0..1] { return : Boolean[1]; }
    return : Boolean[1];
}

function 'or'{
    in firstValue: Boolean[1];
    in expr secondValue[0..1] { return : Boolean[1]; }
    return : Boolean[1];
}

function 'implies'{
    in firstValue: Boolean[1];
    in expr secondValue[0..1] { return : Boolean[1]; }
    return : Boolean[1];
}

abstract function collect {
    in collection: Anything[0..*] ordered nonunique;
    in expr mapper[0..*] {
        in argument: Anything[1];
        return : Anything[0..*] ordered nonunique;
    }
    return : Anything[0..*] ordered nonunique;
}

abstract function select {
    in collection: Anything[0..*] ordered nonunique;
    in expr selector[0..*] {
        in argument: Anything[1];
        return : Boolean[1];
    }
    return : Anything[0..*] ordered nonunique;
}

function selectOne {
    in collection: Anything[0..*] ordered nonunique;
    in expr selector1[0..*] {
        in argument: Anything[1];
        return : Boolean[1]; }
    return : Anything[0..1] =
        collection->select {in x; selector1(x)}[1];
}

```

```

}

abstract function reject{
  in collection: Anything[0..*] ordered nonunique;
  in expr rejector[0..*] {
    in argument: Anything[1];
    return : Boolean[1];
  }
  return : Anything[0..*] ordered nonunique;
}

abstract function reduce {
  in collection: Anything[0..*] ordered nonunique;
  in expr reducer[0..*] {
    in firstArg: Anything[1];
    in secondArg: Anything[1];
    return : Anything[1];
  }
  return : Anything[0..*] ordered nonunique;
}

abstract function forAll {
  in collection: Anything[0..*] ordered nonunique;
  in expr test[0..*] {
    in argument: Anything[1];
    return : Boolean[1];
  }
  return : Boolean[1];
}

abstract function exists {
  in collection: Anything[0..*] ordered nonunique;
  in expr test[0..*] {
    in argument: Anything[1];
    return : Boolean[1];
  }
  return : Boolean[1];
}

function allTrue {
  in collection: Boolean[0..*];
  return : Boolean[1] = collection->forAll {in x; x};
}

function anyTrue {
  in collection: Boolean[0..*];
  return : Boolean[1] = collection->exists {in x; x};
}

function minimize {
  in collection: ScalarValue[1..*];
  in expr fn[0..*] {
    in argument: ScalarValue[1];
    return : ScalarValue[1];
  }
  return : ScalarValue[1] =
    collection->collect {in x; fn(x)}->reduce min;
}

function maximize {

```

```

in collection: ScalarValue[1..*];
in expr fn[0..*] {
  in argument: ScalarValue[1];
  return : ScalarValue[1];
}
return : ScalarValue =
  collection->collect {in x; fn(x)}->reduce max;
}

```

9.4.18 Occurrence Functions

9.4.18.1 Occurrence Functions Overview

This package defines utility functions that operate on occurrences, primarily related to the time during which those occurrences exist.

9.4.18.2 Elements

```

function '===' specializes BaseFunctions::'===' {
  doc
  /*
   * Test whether two occurrences are portions of the same life. That is, whether they
   * represent different portions of the same entity (colloquially, whether they have
   * the same "identity").
   */

  in x: Occurrence[0..1];
  in y: Occurrence[0..1];

  return : Boolean[1] = x.portionOfLife == y.portionOfLife;
}

function isDuring {
  doc
  /*
   * Test whether a performance of this function happens during the input occurrence.
   */

  in occ: Occurrence[1];

  private connector all during: HappensDuring[0..1] from self to occ;

  return : Boolean[1] = notEmpty(during);
}

function create {
  doc
  /*
   * Ensure that the start of a given occurrence happens during a performance of this
   * function. The occurrence is also returned from the function.
   */

  inout occ: Occurrence[1];

  private connector : HappensDuring from occ.startShot to self;

  return : Occurrence[1] = occ;
}

```

```

function destroy {
  doc
  /*
   * Ensure that the end of a given occurrence happens during a performance of this
   * function. The occurrence is also returned from the function.
   */

  inout occ: Occurrence[0..1];

  private connector : HappensDuring from occ.endShot[0..1] to self;

  return : Occurrence[0..1] = occ;
}

function addNew {
  doc
  /*
   * Add a newly created occurrence to the given group of occurrences and return the
   * new occurrence.
   */

  inout group: Occurrence[0..*] nonunique;
  inout occ: Occurrence[1];

  private composite step : add {
    inout seq1 = group;
    in seq2 = create(occ);
  }

  return : Occurrence[1] = occ;
}

function addNewAt {
  doc
  /*
   * Add a newly created occurrence to the given ordered group of occurrences at the given
   * index and return the new occurrence.
   */

  inout group: Occurrence[0..*] ordered nonunique;
  inout occ: Occurrence[1];
  in index: Positive[1];

  private composite step : addAt {
    inout seq = group;
    in values = create(occ);
    in startIndex = index;
  }

  return : Occurrence[1] = occ;
}

behavior removeOld {
  doc
  /*
   * Remove a given occurrence from a group of occurrences and destroy it.
   */

  inout group: Occurrence[0..*] nonunique;
  inout occ: Occurrence[0..1];

```

```

    private composite step removeStep : remove {
        inout seq = group;
        in values = occ;
    }
    private succession removeStep then destroyStep;
    private composite step destroyStep : destroy {
        inout occ = removeOld::occ;
    }
}

behavior removeOldAt {
    doc
    /*
    * Removes the occurrence at a given index in an ordered group of occurrences
    * and destroy it.
    */
    inout group: Occurrence[0..*] ordered nonunique;
    in index: Positive[1];

    private feature oldOcc = group[index];

    private composite step removeStep : remove {
        inout seq = group;
        in index = removeOldAt::index;
    }
    private succession removeStep then destroyStep;
    private composite step destroyStep : destroy {
        inout occ = oldOcc;
    }
}

```


10 Model Interchange

10.1 Model Interchange Overview

Model interchange is the capability to interchange models between tools using file-base resources (see [Clause 2](#)). The unit of interchange is the *project*, which is defined as follows:

A project is a set of root namespaces (see [7.2.4.3](#) and [8.2.3.3.1](#)), including all elements in the ownership trees of those namespaces, and a set of references to *used projects*, such that every cross reference from an element in the project is to another element in that project or to an element in one of the used projects.

The root namespaces in a project may be *serialized* into *model interchange files*, using any of the formats given in [10.2](#). A *project interchange file* is then a compressed archive of model interchange files and additional required metadata, as described in [10.3](#).

10.2 Model Interchange Formats

A *model interchange file* contains a textual representation (known as a *serialization*) of a single root namespace (see [7.2.4.3](#) and [8.2.3.3.1](#)) and all the elements in the ownership tree root in that namespace. A model interchange file shall have one of the following formats:

1. *Textual notation*, using the textual concrete syntax defined in this specification. Note that in certain limited cases, models conformant with the KerML syntax, but prepared by a means other than using the KerML textual concrete syntax, may not be fully serializable into the standard textual notation. In this case, a tool may either not export such model at all using the textual notation, or export the model as closely as possible, informing the user of any changes from the original model. A model interchange file in this format shall have the file extension `.kerml`.
2. *JSON*, using a format according to the JSON serialization mapping defined in [10.4](#). A model interchange file in this format shall have the file extension `.json`.
3. *XML*, using the XML Metadata Interchange [XMI] format based on the MOF-conformant abstract syntax metamodel for KerML. A model interchange file in this format shall have the file extension `.xmi`.

Every conformant KerML modeling tool shall provide the ability to import and/or export (as appropriate) models in at least one of the first two formats.

10.3 Model Interchange Projects

Release Note. This subclause will be completed for the final submission.

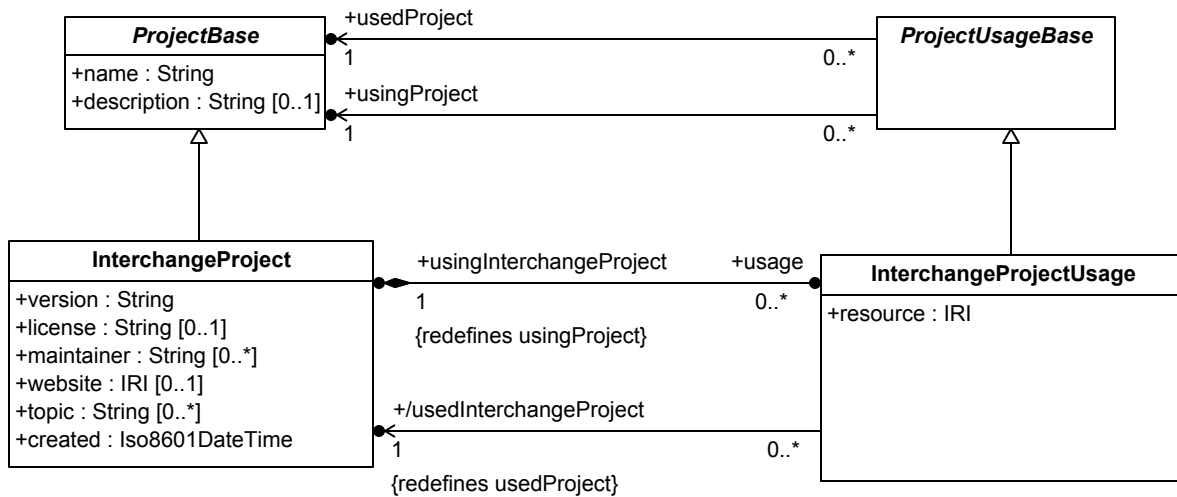


Figure 41. Interchange Projects

10.4 JSON Serialization

10.4.1 Serialization Overview

The JSON serialization format can be used to interchange any model conformant with the KerML abstract syntax. Each root namespace shall correspond with a model interchange file with the file extension `.json` and contain serializations of all model elements in the ownership tree root in that namespace. The contents of this file shall be in the JSON (JavaScript Object Notation) format and conform to the JSON Schema definition <http://www.omg.org/spec/SysML/2.0/Project> accompanying this document.

The following subclauses describe the serialization strategy, consistent with the normative JSON Schema definition.

10.4.2 Primitive Type Serialization

The UML primitive types used in the KerML abstract syntax map directly to core JSON Schema types, as shown in [Table 8](#).

Table 8. UML Primitive Type Serialization

UML Primitive Type	JSON Schema Type
Boolean	boolean
Integer	integer
Real	number
String	string

10.4.3 Enumeration Serialization

Enumeration values map to a JSON Schema `string` with a value that is the name of the enumeration literal, with the same capitalization as defined for the literal in the abstract syntax. For example, `VisibilityKind::public` maps to the string `"public"`.

10.4.4 Element Reference Serialization

Values of abstract syntax properties typed by a metaclass (that is, `Element` or one of its subclasses) map to a JSON Schema object with a single field `@id`. The value of `@id` is a JSON Schema string with a value equal to the value of the `elementId` of the `Element`. For example:

```
{
  "@id": "15fe7607-ceb8-38bb-bd04-dde8ca657cec"
}
```

10.4.5 Element Serialization

A model element maps to a JSON Schema object with fields `@id`, `@type`, and a set of its attributes. The field `@id` has a string value equal to the value of `Element::elementId`. The field `@type` has a string value equal to the name of the specific MOF type of the element, e.g. "Structure".

The remaining JSON Schema fields are mapped from the set of MOF properties specified as attributes of the MOF type of the element. This shall include all owned and inherited properties. In addition, while redefined properties are *not* inherited under MOF/UML rules, they *shall* be included in the set of properties serialized for the element if they have a different name than the redefining property.

Each of these maps to a JSON Schema field, where the name of the field is equal to the name of the attribute and the value is equal to the serialization of the attribute value as described in the preceding subclauses. The value must adhere to the allowed multiplicity of the MOF attribute:

- A multiplicity of `[1..1]` requires a non-null value.
- A multiplicity of `[0..1]` allows a value or null
- A multiplicity with an upper bound greater than 1 maps to a JSON Schema array with values equal to the serialization of the attribute values described in the preceding subclauses.

10.4.6 Model Serialization

A root namespace maps to a JSON Schema array with values equal to the serialization, as described in the preceding subclauses, of all model elements in the ownership tree rooted in that namespace.

A Annex: Conformance Test Suite

Release Note. The conformance test suite will be provided in the final submission.